

TRAVEL & TOUR ASSISTANT

NSQF LEVEL - 3

TRADE THEORY

SECTOR: TOURISM & HOSPITALITY

(As per revised syllabus July 2022 - 1200 Hrs)



Directorate General of Training

DIRECTORATE GENERAL OF TRAINING
MINISTRY OF SKILL DEVELOPMENT & ENTREPRENEURSHIP
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA



**NATIONAL INSTRUCTIONAL
MEDIA INSTITUTE, CHENNAI**

Post Box No. 3142, CTI Campus, Guindy, Chennai - 600 032

Sector : Tourism & Hospitality

Duration : 1 Year

**Trades : Travel & Tour Assistant - 1 Year Trade Theory - NSQF Level - 3
(Revised 2022)**

Developed & Published by



National Instructional Media Institute

Post Box No.3142

Guindy, chennai-600 032

INDIA

Email: chennai-nimi@nic.in

Website: www.nimi.gov.in

Copyright © 2023 National Instructional Media Institute, Chennai

First Edition :

January 2023

Copies : 500

Rs.265/-

All rights reserved.

No part of this publication can be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the National Instructional Media Institute, Chennai.

FOREWORD

The Government of India has set an ambitious target of imparting skills to 30 crores people, one out of every four Indians, by to help them secure jobs as part of the National Skills Development Policy. Industrial Training Institutes (ITIs) play a vital role in this process especially in terms of providing skilled manpower. Keeping this in mind, and for providing the current industry relevant skill training to Trainees, ITI syllabus has been recently updated with the help of Media Development Committee members of various stakeholders viz. Industries, Entrepreneurs, Academicians and representatives from ITIs.

The National Instructional Media Institute (NIMI), Chennai, has now come up with instructional

material to suit the revised curriculum for **Travel & Tour Assistant Trade Theory 1 Year** in **Tourism and Hospitality Sector under Yearly Pattern**. The NSQF Level - 3 (Revised 2022) Trade Practical will help the trainees to get an international equivalency standard where their skill proficiency and competency will be duly recognized across the globe and this will also increase the scope of recognition of prior learning. NSQF Level - 3 (Revised 2022) trainees will also get the opportunities to promote life long learning and skill development. I have no doubt that with NSQF Level - 3 (Revised 2022) the trainers and trainees of ITIs, and all stakeholders will derive maximum benefits from these Instructional Media Packages IMPs and that NIMI's effort will go a long way in improving the quality of Vocational training in the country.

The Executive Director & Staff of NIMI and members of Media Development Committee deserve appreciation for their contribution in bringing out this publication.

Jai Hind

Directorate General of Training
Ministry of Skill Development & Entrepreneurship,
Government of India.

New Delhi - 110 001

PREFACE

The National Instructional Media Institute (NIMI) was established in 1986 at Chennai by then Directorate General of Employment and Training (D.G.E & T), Ministry of Labour and Employment, (now under Directorate General of Training, Ministry of Skill Development and Entrepreneurship) Government of India, with technical assistance from the Govt. of Federal Republic of Germany. The prime objective of this Institute is to develop and provide instructional materials for various trades as per the prescribed syllabi under the Craftsman and Apprenticeship Training Schemes.

The instructional materials are created keeping in mind, the main objective of Vocational Training under NCVT/NAC in India, which is to help an individual to master skills to do a job. The instructional materials are generated in the form of Instructional Media Packages (IMPs). An IMP consists of Theory book, Practical book, Test and Assignment book, Instructor Guide, Audio Visual Aid (Wall charts and Transparencies) and other support materials.

The trade practical book consists of series of exercises to be completed by the trainees in the workshop. These exercises are designed to ensure that all the skills in the prescribed syllabus are covered. The trade theory book provides related theoretical knowledge required to enable the trainee to do a job. The test and assignments will enable the instructor to give assignments for the evaluation of the performance of a trainee. The wall charts and transparencies are unique, as they not only help the instructor to effectively present a topic but also help him to assess the trainee's understanding. The instructor guide enables the instructor to plan his schedule of instruction, plan the raw material requirements, day to day lessons and demonstrations.

IMPs also deals with the complex skills required to be developed for effective team work. Necessary care has also been taken to include important skill areas of allied trades as prescribed in the syllabus.

The availability of a complete Instructional Media Package in an institute helps both the trainer and management to impart effective training.

The IMPs are the outcome of collective efforts of the staff members of NIMI and the members of the Media Development Committees specially drawn from Public and Private sector industries, various training institutes under the Directorate General of Training (DGT), Government and Private ITIs.

NIMI would like to take this opportunity to convey sincere thanks to the Directors of Employment & Training of various State Governments, Training Departments of Industries both in the Public and Private sectors, Officers of DGT and DGT field institutes, proof readers, individual media developers and coordinators, but for whose active support NIMI would not have been able to bring out this materials.

Chennai - 600 032

EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

National Instructional Media Institute (NIMI) sincerely acknowledges with thanks for the co-operation and contribution extended by the following Media Developers and their sponsoring organisation to bring out this IMP for the trade of **Travel & Tour Assistant 1 Year Trade Theory - NSQF LEVEL - 3 (Revised 2022)** under the **Tourism and Hospitality** Sector for ITIs.

MEDIA DEVELOPMENT COMMITTEE MEMBERS

Shri. J. Eugene	–	Faculty, IHM, Tharamani, CIT Campus, Chennai - 6000113.
Shri. Jitendra Das	–	Faculty, IHM, Tharamani, CIT Campus, Chennai - 6000113.
Shri. R.M. Perumal	–	Faculty, IHM, Tharamani, CIT Campus, Chennai - 6000113.
Shri. K.G.Yegana Muruthy	–	MTM, DHMCT, Regional Manager, TTDC,LTD (Rtd), Chennai - 6000 002

NIMI - COORDINATORS

Shri. Nirmalya Nath	–	Deputy Director, NIMI, Chennai - 32.
Shri. N. Ashfaq Ahmed	–	Assistant Manager NIMI, Chennai - 32.

NIMI records its appreciation of the Data Entry, CAD, DTP Operators for their excellent and devoted services in the process of development of this Instructional Material.

NIMI also acknowledges with thanks, the invaluable efforts rendered by all other staff who have contributed for the development of this Instructional Material.

NIMI is grateful to all others who have directly or indirectly helped in developing this IMP.

INTRODUCTION

TRADE PRACTICAL

The trade practical manual is intended to be used in workshop . It consists of a series of practical exercises to be completed by the trainees during the one year course of the **Travel & Tour Assistant** under **Tourism and Hospitality** sector. Trade supplemented and supported by instructions/ informations to assist in performing the exercises. These exercises are designed to ensure that all the skills in compliance with NSQF LEVEL - 3 (Revised 2022) . The manual is divided into Five modules..

- Module 1 - Introduction to Tourism & Transport & Accomodation Aspects**
- Module 2 - Travel & Tourism Destination**
- Module 3 - Heritage and Cultural Tourism of India**
- Module 4 - Tourism Promotional Activities and Travel Circuits**
- Module 5 - Marketing, Computer Application in Tourism**

The skill training in the shop floor is planned through a series of practical exercises centred around one practical project. However, there are few instances where the individual exercise does not form a part of project.

While developing the practical manual a sincere effort was made to prepare each exercise which will be easy to understand and carry out even by below average trainee. However the development team accept that there is a scope for further improvement. NIMI, looks forward to the suggestions from the experienced training faculty for improving the manual.

TRADE THEORY

The manual of trade theory consists of theoretical information for the one year course of the **Travel & Tour Assistant** Trade. The contents are sequenced according to the practical exercise contained in the manual on Trade Theoryl. Attempt has been made to relate the theoretical aspects with the skill covered in each exercise to the extent possible. This co-relation is maintained to help the trainees to develop the perceptual capabilities for performing the skills.

The Trade theory has to be taught and learnt along with the corresponding exercise contained in the manual on trade practical. The indicating about the corresponding practical exercise are given in every sheet of this manual.

It will be preferable to teach/learn the trade theory connected to each exercise atleast one class before performing the related skills in the shop floor. The trade theory is to be treated as an integrated part of each exercise.

The material is not the purpose of self learning and should be considered as supplementary to class room instruction.

CONTENTS

Lesson No.	Title of the Lesson	Learning Outcome	Page No.
	Module 1 : Introduction to Tourism & Transport & Accommodation Aspects		
1.1.01-02	Introduction to travel and tourism industry		1
1.1.03-04	Tourism - Definition, Meaning, Nature and Scope		7
1.1.05-07	Tourism motivation	1-5	12
1.1.08-09	Tourism infrastructure types, forms and significance		15
1.1.10	Social cultural impacts of tourism		24
1.1.11-13	Organisation and functions of UNWTO, TAAI, IATO, IATA and PATA		27
	Module 2 : Travel & Tourism Destination		
1.2.14-16	Travel formalities - Passport, Visa, Visa formalities		36
1.2.17-18	Linkages and arrangement with hotels airlines and transport agencies and other segments of tourism		41
1.2.19-21	Travel Information	6-7	53
1.2.22-23	Source of Income - commission service charge, Travel terminology - Current a popular travel trade abbreviations		63
1.2.24-25	Market research and tour package formulation, assembling, processing and disseminating information in destination		73
	Module 3 : Heritage and Cultural Tourism of India		
1.3.26-27	Indian History in Ancient, Medieval and Modern time and growth of travel and tourism		78
1.3.28-30	Art and architecture of tourism significance	8-9	80
1.3.31-33	Study of national Parks and wildlife sanctuaries, Bird sanctuaries, Tiger and crocodile project sites of India		106
	Module 4 : Tourism Promotional Activities and Travel Circuits		
1.4.34-35	Adventure Sports - Existing trends and places		132
1.4.36-37	Tourism promotional festivals of India		139
1.4.38	Tourist Trains in India - Place on wheels, Heritage on wheels, Royal Orient Express, Deccan. Odyssey, fairy Queen, Metro trains & Hill trains of India	9-10	152
1.4.39-40	Important Tourism circuits - Golden Triangle, Southern triangle, Buddhist Circuit and Green Triangle		172
1.4.41-43	Fundamental of geography		181
	Module 5 : Marketing, Computer Application in Tourism		
1.5.44-47	Political and Physical feature of world geography		195
1.5.48-51	Aviation Geography - Time differences, Flight time, elapse time, Booking Familiarization	11-14	199
1.5.52-55	Introduction of computer, definition and generation of computers		203

LEARNING / ASSESSABLE OUTCOME

On completion of this book you shall be able to

S.No.	Learning Outcome	Ref. Ex.No.
1	Perform duties and responsibilities of Travel & Tour service personnel. (Mapped NOS: THC/Q4404)	1.1.01 - 1.1.02
2	Work with different hotels & Travel agencies at different tourist Zones in National & International levels.(Mapped NOS: THC/N4410)	1.1.03 - 1.1.04
3	Communicate with the guests; collect information on tourist places, different types of accommodation & different modes of Transport available for the tourists. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4410)	1.1.05 - 1.1.08
4	Exhibit right attitude, politeness & body language during interaction with the guest. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4410)	1.1.09 - 1.1.10
5	Arrange & setup linkages with hotels, transport agencies & other segments of tourism Industries. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4419)	1.1.11 - 1.1.13
6	Collect information from the concerned tourism authorities and perform travel formalities. (Mapped NOS: THC/N9401)	1.2.14 - 1.2.18
7	Plan and arrange Tour programmes. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4421)	1.2.19 - 1.2.25
8	Promote Tourism in India. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4421)	1.3.26 - 1.3.27
9	Collect information regarding heritage, classical, religious & other attractive tourism resources & facilities available for tourists. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4421)	1.3.28 - 1.4.35
10	Prepare calendars, maps etc. on tourism festivals, Museum & art galleries, Important Tourism circuits etc. by collecting information. (Mapped NOS: THC/N9402)	1.4.36 - 1.5.43
11	Promote tourism marketing and sales activities by applying STP (Segmentation, Targeting & Positioning). (Mapped NOS: THC/N9403)	1.5.44 - 1.5.47
12	Manage travel office, sell the packages by explaining the features & facilities. (Mapped NOS: THC/N9404)	1.5.48 - 1.5.51
13	Plan tour programmes using costing concept, software packages, websites related to the tourism. (Mapped NOS: THC/N9405)	1.5.52 - 1.5.53
14	Handle different safety equipment, identify different sources of accidents & take necessary precautions on tour. (Mapped NOS: THC/N9406)	1.5.54 - 1.5.55

SYLLABUS

Duration	Reference Learning Outcome	Professional Skills (Trade Practical) with Indicative hours	Professional Knowledge (Trade Theory)
Professional Skill 42 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 12 Hrs	Perform duties and responsibilities of Travel & Tour service personnel. (Mapped NOS: THC/Q4404)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Familiarization with the Significance of Training in the travel & tour assistant field. (22 hrs.) 2 Setting up of tables-handling of service equipment. (20 hrs.) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a Introduction to Travel & Tourism Industry. b Career opportunities in Travel & Tourism Industry. c Different types of Travel & Tourism Establishments. d Organizational hierarchy of Travel & Tourism Department. e Attributes of Travel & Tour services personnel. f Duties and responsibilities of Travel & Tour service personnel. (12 hrs.)
Professional Skill 42 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 12 Hrs	Work with different hotels & Travel agencies at different tourist Zones in National & International levels. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4410)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3 Video show of the different hotels & Travel agencies to understand their working. (22 hrs.) 4 Study the Arts & Maps of different tourist Zone in National & International levels. (20 hrs.) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a Tourism: Definition, Meaning, Nature & Scope. b Definition & differentiation of Tourist, Travelers, Visitor and excursionist. c Inter relation between Leisure, recreation and Tourism. d Components and element of Tourism. e Type & Typologies of Tourism. (12 hrs.)
Professional Skill 84 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 24 Hrs	Communicate with the guests; collect information on tourist places, different types of accommodation & different modes of Transport available for the tourists. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4410)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5 Practice on communication skills specifically on how to interact with the guest. (12 hrs.) 6 Prepare a small questionnaire for the tourist to understand the motivation of their travel. (12 hrs.) 7 Collect the pictures & information on popular tourist places. (20 hrs.) 8 Collect the information on different categories of accommodation & modes of Transport available for the tourists. (40 hrs.) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a Understanding Tourism motivation. b Factors affecting growth and development of International a national Tourism. c Impact of Industrialization & Technological advancement on Tourism Industry. (12 hrs.) a Tourism Infrastructure: Types, forms & Significance. b Accommodation: Forms and Types. c Transport Sector: Modes & relative significance. d Other supporting Infrastructure required for Tourism. (12 hrs.)
Professional Skill 84 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 24 Hrs	Exhibit right attitude, politeness & body language during interaction with the guest. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4410)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9 Visit hotels & travel agencies to understand the employees' interaction with the guest with special reference to their attitude, politeness & body language. (20 hrs.) 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a Economic Impact of Tourism: Income and employment multipliers of Tourism, balance of payment foreign exchange etc. b ocio cultural Impacts of Tourism. c Impacts of Tourism on ecology & environment. (12 hrs.)

Duration	Reference Learning Outcome	Professional Skills (Trade Practical) with Indicative hours	Professional Knowledge (Trade Theory)
	Arrange & setup linkages with hotels, transport agencies & other segments of tourism Industries. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4419)	10 Organizational setup linkages and arrangements with hotels, Airline, transport agencies & other segments of tourism Industries. (20hrs.)	
		11 Interact with different transportation agency like airline, railways, taxis etc. to find out their routes, timings of flights and trains, fares of airlines, Trains & rental taxis including radio cabs. (15 hrs.)	a Organization and functions of NWIO, TAAI, IATO, IATA AND PATA. (12 hrs.)
		12 Visit the surrounding areas to find alternative accommodation available (other than hotel), holiday homes, guest houses and motels' etc. (15 hrs.) 13 Enquire about their tariff, types of rooms available & other facilities. (14hrs)	
Professional Skill 84 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 24 Hrs	Collect information from the concerned tourism authorities and perform travel formalities. (Mapped NOS: THC/N9401)	14 Collect the information from the State Tourism board regarding the policy of state Govt. for the development of Tourism in the State and upcoming projects. (15 hrs.) 15 Collect the information from the foreign regional registration offices regarding the stay formalities for the foreign nationals of different nationalities. (15 hrs.) 16 Make a case study of Thomas cook as well as develop a case study of any successful travel agency of your city. (15 hrs.)	a Travel formalities - Passport, Visa, Visa formalities, Health requirements, taxes, customs, currency, travel Insurance, baggage and airport Information. (12 hrs.)
		17 Develop Questionnaires for the tourist & try to find out the impact of Tourism on the environments. (14 hrs.) 18 Collect the different forms a formats a learn to fill those forms a formats regarding registration with hotel, "C" Form, Booking of baggage with Airlines / Railways & taxes applicable. (25 hrs.)	a Linkages and arrangement with Hotels airlines & transport agencies & other segments of Tourism Sector. b Case study of Travel agency Tour operators e.g. Thomas cook SITA, TCI etc. (12 hrs.)
Professional Skill 63 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 18 Hrs	Plan and arrange Tour programmes. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4421)	19 Make a report on the capitals of the countries, their currencies, National Airlines & their Airports. (9 hrs.) 20 Make the survey of a particular tourist destination with total arrangement of local tourist guide. (9 hrs.)	a Travel Information & cancellation of the Tourism reservation. b Ticketing preparation & marking of tour package, handing business corporate Clint including conference and conventions. (06 hrs.)

Duration	Reference Learning Outcome	Professional Skills (Trade Practical) with Indicative hours	Professional Knowledge (Trade Theory)
		<p>21 Tour planning & programming for Inbound & Outbound for national & international, taking into consideration factors such as food habit, sensitivity, interpreter, caterer etc. (9 hrs.)</p> <p>22 Procedure for booking Cancellation /changing of Concession given in different respects. (9 hrs.)</p> <p>23 Follow-up terms of conditions to become travel & Tour assistant of sub agents/ agents of IATA approval agencies, capital investment & risk market potential. (9 hrs.)</p> <p>24`Visit to passport office and procedures to get passport for a tourist, explaining the features of Visa & embassy guide. (9 hrs.)</p> <p>25`To visit the Office of regional transport office to learn registration procedure of different types of vehicles and the formalities involved for registration of the vehicle. (9 hrs.)</p>	<p>a Source of Income - commission service charge, Travel terminology - Current a popular travel trade abbreviations; Itinerary preparation & other terms used in preparing itinerary.</p> <p>b Basic of Amadeus or Galileo CRS system.</p> <p>c E-ticketing solutions and Meta search option. (06 hrs.)</p> <p>a Market research & tour package formulation, assembling, processing & disseminating information in destination. Preparation of Itinerary & post tour managements. (06 hrs.)</p>
Professional Skill 42 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 12 Hrs	Promote Tourism in India. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4421)	<p>26 Make a project report on the development of Travel from ancient, medieval & modern time. (20 hrs.)</p> <p>27 Collect the information regarding places of Art & architecture of tourism significant & also find out how to reach that places & other facilities available there for the tourists. (22 hrs.)</p>	<p>a Brief outline of Indian History in ancient, medieval and modern time.</p> <p>b Growth and development of travel related activity.</p> <p>c British rule & genesis of modern Tourism in India. (12 hrs.)</p>
Professional Skill 147 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 42 Hrs	Collect information regarding heritage, classical, religious & other attractive tourism resources & facilities available for tourists. (Mapped NOS: THC/N4421)	<p>28 Collect the information regarding world heritage monuments & other prominent monument of India, how to reach & other facilities available for a tourist. (20 hrs.)</p> <p>29 Collect the Information regarding Indian classical dance, folk dances, Music & musical instruments, art and handicraft, fairs & festivals in one calendar year & their Significance in the promotion of tourism. (20 hrs.)</p> <p>30 Collect the detailed information regarding religious tourism resource such as important shrines & centers of the major religions of India & what is the best time to travel & other facilities available for the tourism. (25 hrs.)</p>	<p>a Art & architecture of Tourism Significance.</p> <p>b World heritage monuments & other prominent monuments of India.</p> <p>c Cultural Tourism resources: Indian classical and folk dance, Music & Musical Instruments, art & handicraft, fair & festivals.</p> <p>d Religious Tourism Recourses – Major religions of India: Hinduism, Islam, Christian, Buddhism, Sikhism & Jainism & Study of the famous shrine /centres of the major religion of India. (18 hrs.)</p>

Duration	Reference Learning Outcome	Professional Skills (Trade Practical) with Indicative hours	Professional Knowledge (Trade Theory)
		<p>31 Collect the detailed information about national Parks, Wildlife sanctuaries, Bird Sanctuaries, Tiger a Crocodile projects in India, Best time to travel mode of travel & other facilities available for the tourism. (17 hrs.)</p> <p>32 Collect the detailed information regarding major hill stations, Islands, Rivers & river Islands of India, Mode of travel and other facilities</p> <p>33 Collect the detailed information on sea beaches of India mode of travel & other facilities available for the Tourism. (15 hrs.)</p> <p>34 Collect the detailed information on aero sports, water based sports, land based sports. (15 hrs.)</p> <p>35 Best time to visit such places & also learn about the companies organizing such sports activities. (15 hrs.) available for the Tourism. (20 hrs.)</p>	<p>a Brief study of national Parks & wildlife sanctuaries, Bird Sanctuaries, Tiger & crocodile project sites of India.</p> <p>b Major Hill Stations, Islands, rivers & river Islands of India.</p> <p>c Important Sea Beaches of India- Mumbai, Puri, Goa, Chennai, Trivandrum & Kerala. (12 hrs.)</p> <p>a Adventure Sports^Existing trends & places of Importance for Land based, water based & aero based adventure sports of India. (12 hrs.)</p>
Professional Skill 105 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 30 Hrs	Prepare calendars, maps etc. on tourism festivals, Museum & art galleries, Important Tourism circuits etc. by collecting information. (Mapped NOS: THC/N9402)	<p>36 Make a calendar of tourism promotional festivals of India Significance of festivals, time to visit such festivals, mode of transportation and staying facilities. (12 hrs.)</p> <p>37 Collect the detailed information of museum and art galleries of India & their significance in the promotion of tourism. (13 hrs.)</p> <p>38 Do a map work & find out the train routes, especially for palace on wheel, Heritage on wheel and Royal ancient express, Deccan odyssey fairy queen, Metro trains and hill trains of India. (15 hrs.)</p> <p>39 Learn reading of railway time table, E^reservation & cancelation and package tours organized by Indian Railway. (13 hrs.)</p> <p>40 Plan on Itineraries for important circuits specially for golden Triangle, Buddhist circuit, Southern Triangle & Green triangle etc. (13 hrs.)</p> <p>41 Try to fetch information regarding chain hotels of India and facilities available for tourist, Tariff etc. (13 hrs.)</p> <p>42 Make a Project on Regional festive cuisines of India. (13 hrs.)</p>	<p>a Tourism promotional festivals of India.</p> <p>b Museum & art galleries of India.</p> <p>c Tourist Trains in India: Place on wheels, Heritage on wheels, Royal Orient Express, Deccan. Odyssey, fairy Queen, Metro trains & Hill trains of India.</p> <p>d Important Tourism circuits: Golden Triangle, Southern triangle, Buddhist Circuit & Green Triangle.</p> <p>e Important Hotels Chains in India.</p> <p>f Regional festive Cuisines of India. (24 hrs.)</p> <p>a Fundamental of Geography,</p> <p>b Importance of geography in Tourism.</p> <p>c Climate Variations, climatic regions of world, study of maps,</p>

Duration	Reference Learning Outcome	Professional Skills (Trade Practical) with Indicative hours	Professional Knowledge (Trade Theory)
		43 Study of maps, longitude & latitude, International date time, variations, time difference. (13 hrs.)	longitude and latitude, time international date line difference. (06 hrs.)
Professional Skill 63 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 18 Hrs	Promote tourism marketing and sales activities by applying STP (Segmentation, Targeting & Positioning). (Mapped NOS: THC/N9403)	44 Study & prepare of brochures for the different tourist destinations to draw chart on tourism systems interacting tourism markets, transportation destination & their marketing. (15 hrs.) 45 Basis of segmentation identifying target market, types of tourism project of tourism, establishing a product, creating a position statement. (15 hrs.) 46 Collection of advertisement from newspapers, magazines & making an analysis of the some. (15 hrs.) 47 Collection of brochures from tourist office & hotels etc. to understand tour promotion of tourist activities to being done. (18 hrs.)	a Political & Physical feature of world geography. Destination in USA, Europe, UK, France, Spain, Italy, Russia, German, Austria, Greece & Switzerland. (18 hrs.)
Professional Skill 42 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 12 Hrs	Manage travel office, sell the packages by explaining the features & facilities. (Mapped NOS: THC/N9404)	48 Maintaining & compilation of different records used in travel office. (06 hrs.) 49 Procedure of travel office management. (06 hrs.) 50 Procedure of opening a travel office. (15 hrs.) 51 Demonstration on selling the package by explaining the features facilities in polite way Accommodation budget, site & preparation of budget & currency exchange. (15 hrs.)	a Aviation Geography Time differences, Flight time, elapse time, Booking Familiarization, Important Airlines, Airport of India, coding & decoding of country domestic ticketing. (12 hrs.)
Professional Skill 42 Hrs; Professional Knowledge 12 Hrs	Plan tour programmes using costing concept, software packages, websites related to the tourism. (Mapped NOS: THC/N9405) Handle different safety equipment, identify different sources of accidents & take necessary precautions on tour. (Mapped NOS: THC/N9406)	52 Practice in computer using MS office, Internet & other software packages related to the tourism. (10 hrs.) 53 Accessing websites, e-mail, sending & receiving mails, search engines, Access to sites, online message etc. (12 hrs.) 54 Planning & Programming tour for Inbound & outbound in India & abroad- costing concept, various tour suppliers & also estimate the different tour packages. (10 hrs.) 55 Identify different sources of accidents & precaution to be considered on tour, handling the different safety equipment; practice the use of first aid specially in reference to heart attacks, strokes, Major loss of blood etc. (10 hrs.)	a Introduction of Computer, Definition & generation of Computers. b Basic Understanding of Hardware & Software devices including Input devices, Output device operating systems, database, word Processor spread, Sheet etc. c Introduction to Internet - Accessing Web- sites, e-mail sending & Receiving emails, search engines, Searching through various, Search engines chatting, Access to sites, online message etc. (12 hrs.)

Introduction to travel and tourism industry

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- **state the concepts of travel**
- **state the concepts of tourism**
- **explain importance of hygiene awareness.**

Travel Concept: Travel started in the early days. Land travel advanced with the coming of the stage coach which had first developed in Hungary in 15th Century. The coach was a closed carriage hung on leather straps between four wheels.

Mode of travel: The invention of wheel, railways, airlines etc. and network or routes, vehicles, cost of travel, documentation and safe passage, wayside facilities and conveniences all have been instrumental in the growth.

Education: Education has always been great motivators for travelers. There have been great universities in India. Such as 'Taxila' and 'Nalanda' which remained centres for education for students from far and near. Accommodation sector such as dormitories, youth centres and youth hostels etc are benefited mainly.

Health: Visit to health 'spas', natural springs (for skin ailments and arthritis etc.) sanatoria, hill resorts and seresorts etc. also have been the promoters of tourism.

Religion: All over the world people traveled for religion. Particularly in India where travel for dip in holy rivers, visit to cities of temples such as Kashi, Madurai, Mahabalipuram, and Ajmer, Vaishno Devi, Amarnath in Kashmir and "CharDham" Yatra pilgrims travelled.

Visiting Friends and Relatives: This has also been an important reason for travel. Since people travel by their own conveyance these days, mainly roadside catering establishment and motels etc. are benefited by this.

Visits to Historical Places: Also an important reason for travel promotion.

Adventure: The thrill always lies in new and unexplored, like voyages undertaken by famous voyageurs and navigators such as MarcoPolo, Christopher Columbus and Vasco da Gama etc.

Culture and heritage: This factor also has played a great role in enhancing tourism activities.

Philosophical Discourses: India and Greece have always been considered great centres for philosophical discourses and philosophers have been traveling from far and near.

Sports: Right from the times of first Olympics in 776BC to the present day sports and athletic meets such as Asian games, and Grand prix races, the participants and spectators have been traveling.

Fairs and festivals: National and international fairs such as Pushkar Mela, Suraj.

Travel agent: A person who books space & facilities for clients in hotels & public carriers & receives commission for placing the business.

Travel agency: It's an agency which arranges controlled services needed by a traveler during the course of his journey.

Tourism Concept

Origin of tourism: To establish any specific period or era for the origin of tourism is a very difficult task. As tourism is involved with the movement so it can be said that tourism activities started with the development of mankind. In ancient and prehistoric period people used to move in search of food and for shelter from climatic conditions such as rainy season, winters and summer season and also for protection from other people. Nomads moves from one place to another.

The origin of tourism can be attributed to this period. Tourism, the act of paying money to go from one place to another to see different and unique sights, has been a fact of civilized life since approximately the 12th century. Of course, back in those days it was basically the upper, upper classes that had the time, the money, and the interest in travelling from one spot to another.

The word "travel" by the way comes from the medieval English word "travail" which means suffering great hardship, and that is a very good description of travel in its earliest days. Much has been written about the journeys of Marco Polo, who until recently was considered the world's first tourist.

Factors that promoted Tourism: It is important to study the concept factors commonly used which promoted tourism during all periods.

Motivation: The value of new experience and the transformation of travel from survival to an improvement in the quality of life. This includes the following;

- a The curiosity of a person of moving
 - i from known areas and people to unknown areas and people
 - ii from known culture to unknown culture.
- b What a person hopes to find; see and do of the new area and place. To look for something and evaluate

every new experience which he gets at the new place and area?

Holiday: The word holiday seems to have been made from Holy and Days that is to say that the word holiday.

Religions: In Europe in olden days, a day was set at the end of a work cycle for religions ritual and this day was called as holiday. Later on saint's day and other observances days were also added to these holidays.

No work was done on these days and people enjoyed on these days. These days later on were called holidays. No work was done and people participated in fasting and fun. Games and sports were the highlight of such occasions.

Business: The movement of people for business reasons has been a great motivator for people to travel from the beginning merchants travelled with their merchandise from one city to another city for trading. Today 85% of air travel is business related and this helps in the development of new hotels with business centers.

Career opportunities in travel and tourism industry

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- thoroughly understand the various opportunities that are available for a tourism personnel.

Careers in Travel and Tourism: Travel and Tourism one of the world's largest foreign exchange earner among industries, provides employment directly to millions of people worldwide and indirectly through many associated service industries.

A very wide industry, it includes Government tourism departments, Immigration and customs services, travel agencies, airlines, tour operators, hotels etc and many associated service industries such as airline catering or laundry services, Guides, Interpreters, Tourism promotion and sales etc.

Airlines: Working in an airline, whether on the ground staff or in flight is an exciting option for many people these days. In the airlines, one can work as Traffic Assistance, Reservation and Counter Staff, Airhostess and flight pursers, Sales and Marketing staff and customer services. A course in travel and tourism or a qualification on Hotel management helps to get in.

Tour Operators: Tour operators organise conducted tours to the various tourist spots and manage the travel and stay of the tourists. There are many companies operating tours for the domestic as well as the international tourist. Some may be for the usual destinations like hill stations but others are for unusual activities like river rafting, hang gliding, rock climbing and camping.

Tour operators need people for selling the concept and then to accompany the groups to the destinations. For foreign groups, the agencies prefer girls, who are friendly and helpful. For domestic groups, males are preferred. Again, the qualities required are a pleasing and outgoing personality, knowledge of the activities and often participating in them with the tourists. A person hoping to work with a tour operator must be able to travel with

Car rentals business also flourished. Business man can hire a car right at the airport when he lands. The demand in this group is generally inelastic increase in airfares; room tariff and the cost of the meal in restaurant do not change their demand.

Tourist: People who travel for a variety of reasons & are out of their area for more than 24 hours for various pleasure/ leisure, cultural activities, visit to historical places, business, conferences, studies, religion, to peruse some hobby & pilgrimage etc.

Various categories of tourists are

- Domestic:** Tourists coming from various states & other parts of the same country.
- International:** Tourists coming from other countries.
- Inbound:** Tourists coming from other areas/ countries to your area/country.
- Outbound:** Tourists going from their local areas/ country to other areas/country.

the groups and know people at the destinations to make the tours pleasant for the client.

Though one may do a course of tourist guide for this purpose, people with a knowledge of the activities can easily join as tour operators. The jobs could be seasonal in some cases.

Hotels: The hotel Industry is basically a service industry providing food and accommodation to the Visitors. It is one which requires a large amount of manpower, with a wide variety of skills. In India alone, about 1, 00,000 vacancies are expected to be filled within the next decade. An hotel offers career opportunities in its various departments such as Operations, Front office, House keeping, Food and Beverages, Accounting, Engineering/ Maintenance, Sales, Computer System Operator.

Public relations and Security etc. One can enter this field through direct entry in some departments or through hotel management institutes. There are many Institutes that offer hotel management courses. Many hotels also offer overseas training opportunities, which allow young people to gain promotions rapidly.

Transport: Besides airlines, Travel facilities include rail services, coach operators, car hire Companies, etc. Whatever that takes Tourists from one place to another - by air, road, railway, sea etc. comes under Travel and tourism. Tourist use almost all these travel facilities.

Remuneration jobs in the travel and tourism industry offer good remuneration and perquisites, which include free travel for employees and their families. Salaries may vary within the industry and are higher in foreign airlines and agencies.

Basic Pay scales at different levels are approximately:*
Counter Clerk Rs. 1,000-1,500 * Assistant Rs. 20,000-

25,000 * Junior Executive Rs. 30,000-50,000 Regional Manager, General Manager, Air Hostess- Rs 6,000 basic salary for domestic to Rs 60,000 in international airlines Regional guides: Their charges may range from

Rs 1000 and above for an eight hour day. They may earn between or more in the three to four months of the tourist peak season.

Different types of travel and tourism establishment

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- explain the tour operators and tour agent.

Tour operators and Tour Agent: A tour takes in several places and to travel is the journey getting there. Tour Operators plan, arrange and execute tours or packages, and advertise it. Travel agencies (Tour agencies) act as middle man between the public and the tour operators.

They make bookings with the tours operators on behalf of the public and collect payment and give vouchers. Then they deduct commission from the payment and pay the tour operator.

Travel agency: A travel agency is a retail business, that sells travel related products and services to customers,

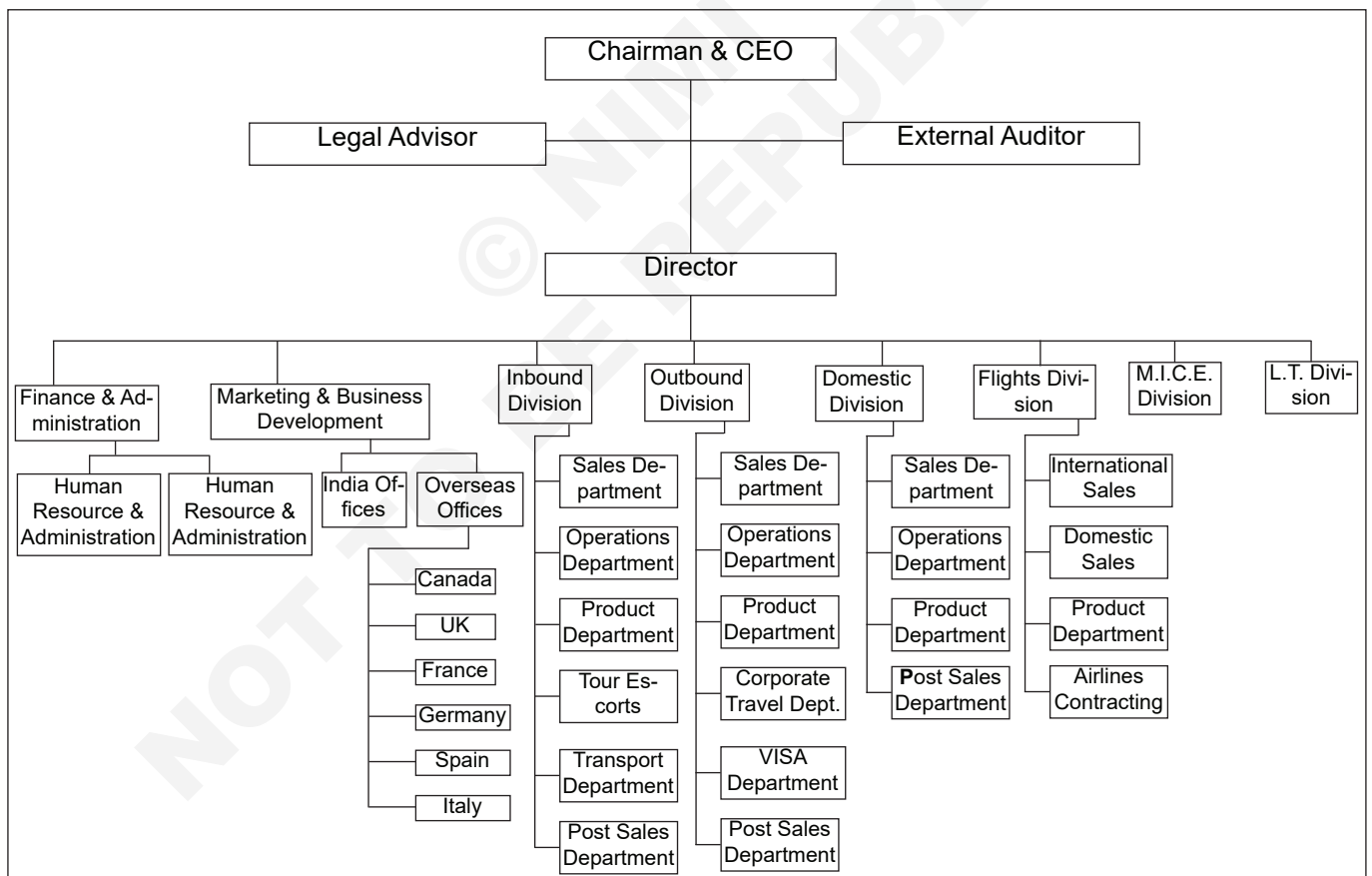
on behalf of suppliers, such as airlines, car rentals, cruise lines, hotels, railways, sightseeing tours and package holidays that combine several products.

In addition to dealing with ordinary tourists, most travel agencies have a separate department devoted to making travel arrangements for business travellers and some travel agencies specialize in commercial and business travel only. There are also travel agencies that serve as general sales agents for foreign travel companies, allowing them to have offices in countries other than where their headquarters and located.

Organizational hierarchy of travel and tourism department

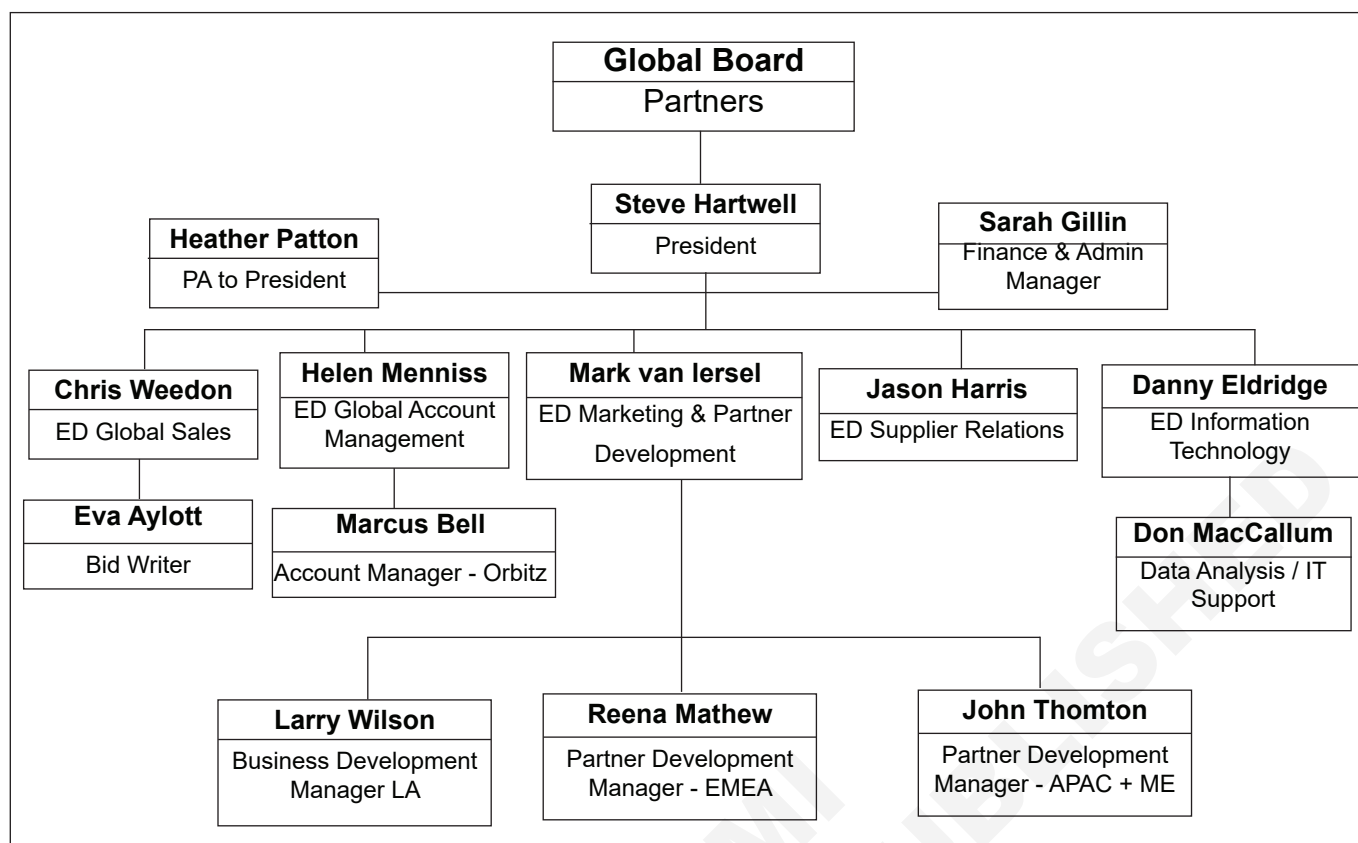
Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- understand the various positions available in the travel industry.



CASE STUDY ON ORGANIZATIONAL STRUCTURE - Global Star Travel agency

Organization Chart



Attributes of Travel and Tour services personnel

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- illustrate interpersonal skills.

Inter personal skills: In order to improve the inter personnel skill of the individual. The following tips are necessary to cultivate positive cut look.

- Control your emotions
- Acknowledge other feelings
- Active participation in discussion
- Be assertive
- Practice empire
- Clear communication of manage without jogan.
- Rise upto accession in dawye continue situation etc.

Aggression Replacement Training (ART) : Aggression Replacement Training (ART) is cognitive behavioral intervention focused on adolescents, training them to cope with their aggressive and violent behaviors. It is a multimodal program that is has three components; Social skills, Anger Control Training and Moral Reasoning.

ART was developed in the US during in 1981 and is now used in human services systems including, but not limited to juvenile justice systems, human services schools and adult corrections throughout North America as well as Europe, South America, and Australia.

Anger Control Training: Anger Anger control training is the effective component of ART. This moves from the teaching of social skills, to losing anti-social skills and replacing them with pro-social skills. The anger control training uses the anger control chain. This is a process taught to the youth to deal with situations that cause them to get angry. Once again, one segment of the anger control chain is taught each week and the both the facilitators and the youth practice the new skills with relevant life activities. The anger control chain is as follows;

- Triggers (external and internal) - The situation that starts the slide into anger and the self talk that perpetuates it.
- Cues-physical signs of becoming angry.
- Anger reducers-three (deep breathing, counting backwards, and pleasant imagery) to help reduce or take our mind off of the situation.
- Reminders-short positive statements that we say to ourselves to further reduce the angry impulses.
- Thinking ahead-Identifying the consequences of our behaviors.
- Social Skill-Implementing a pro-social skill into the situation.

- Evaluation-Looking back over the use of the anger control chain and evaluating how was implemented.

Moral reasoning: Moral reasoning is the cognitive component of ART. This component provides adolescents opportunities to take other perspectives other than their own thereby learning to view their world in a more fair and equitable way. Group Facilitators also identify four thinking errors to facilitate perspective taking and remediate moral developmental delay. The thinking errors that are identified are:

- Self-centered thinking “if s all about me”
- Assuming the worst-“it would happen anyways” or “they would do it to me”
- Blaming others - “it’s their fault”
- Mislabeling / minimizing - “it’s not stealing, I’m only borrowing it...” or “everybody else does if

The Moral Reasoning component of ART is based upon Kohlberg’s stages of moral development. According to Kohlberg there are six stages of moral development that are grouped into three levels. Kohlberg suggests that progress through the stages is linear and invariantly sequential. Stage one thinkers subscribe to the motto of “might makes right”.

Stage two thinkers adopt the “gotta get mine, before they get theirs” line of reasoning. Stage three thinkers are willing to engage in pro-social decision toting if there is something in it for them. They align with a distorted version of the “golden rule”. Stage four thinkers begin to consider the greater community in their decision making. Most members of society remain at stage four.

Duties and responsibilities of travel and tour service personel

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- explain the duty of tour operator
- explain E&O Insurance
- organise and manage the tour.

Duty of tour operator: Court decisions over the last 20 years favor the consumer quite heavily and put a serious responsibility on the travel consultant to inform and disclose. Primary duties identified by court decisions and state statutes are:

- 1 Duty to disclose vendor identity
- 2 Duty to warn & inform
- 3 Duty to investigate
- 4 Duty to confirm
- 5 Duty not to over promise or misrepresent
- 6 Duty to protect client funds

1 Disclose vendor identity: Court decisions and state statutes are quite clear. If you fail to disclose to your client who your wholesaler or tour operator is, or through whom you are booking your package, you may be liable for accidents, failures, default etc.

2 Duty to warn and inform: Here we will discuss to issues. First issue deals with things you must tell your client if you are aware of them or if you SHOULD BE aware of them.

For example, if you know that a cruise line or other provider has problems in cleanliness, customer service, has safety issues or many complaints against it, you may be held liable for failure to disclose.

3 Duty to investigate and warn: Courts ruled that a travel professional has a duty to check into her client’s vacation to make sure that whatever is booked is up to what was presented and expected.

4 Duty to confirm: There are dozens of cases where the agent booked tickets from wrong airport, failed to

confirm transfers, airline reservations, failed to confirm that payments were received etc.

5 Duty not to overpromise or misrepresent: Have you ever told a client “Don’t worry, it perfectly safe there?” Or did you promise a client that he will have the best vacation of his life? And, a case we’ve all heard about, did you say that tour operators chosen by a cruise ship are inspected by the ship, adhere to safety standards and are very safe?

6 Duty to protect client’s money: Whenever you take money from a client for a vacation or cruise package there is only one destination that you can apply that money to: Your CLIENT’S TRIP. You can’t use that money for operational expenses, you can’t use that money to pay an employee, and you can’t use that money to cover someone else’s reservation. Fiduciary statutes and travel of seller laws make it a felony to use client moneys for any purpose other than what it was specifically designed for.

Agents get themselves in trouble by taking client payments, using the money to pay current expenses believing they will be able to cover those deposits or final payments in the future. That is a felony in many states.

If you are not paying the vendor immediately you should have a separate bank trust account or host trust account where you park those funds and DO NOT use them for anything. Do not be tempted. It is a quick route to an arrest warrant.

E&O Insurance (Errors and Omission Insurance): If you are serious about this business you should look into Errors and Omissions insurance. Most host agencies can now offer E&O insurance again. You can be covered under their umbrella. But remember, there is a deductible

and there are all kinds of exclusions for your negligence. The tour rennet should attribute the following basic task to have smooth travel customer safety action.

- a We should describe the tour plan and the daily itinery to the guert.
- b Great the tourist on arrival.
- c Providing safety devices.
- d Provide directions to the tourist.
- e Escorting the tourist.

And he should develop skills fro operating the tour is a successful manner.

- a Being flexible and pro active.
- b Having good verbal clear communication skills.
- c Able to interact with the different types of people.
- d Have time management skills.
- e Good knowledge of the tourist spot.
- f Have multiple language skill.

© NIMI
NOT TO BE REPUBLISHED

Tourism - Definition, Meaning, Nature and Scope

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- thoroughly understand the meaning, nature and scope of for a tourism personnel.
-

Nature and scope of tourism: Travel and Tourism enterprises include major internationals with a workforce of thousands, to the small private travel agent with a handful of employees.

Work in the travel and tourism industry is essentially concerned with providing services for people who are away from home, on business or holiday. Travel can be leisure travel involving package tours, pilgrim travel, adventure travel etc or purely business. Work at every functional level in the industry involves dealing directly with people.

Tourism industry: Another good prospectus for qualified tourism professionals are in the private sector with travel agencies, tour operators, airlines, hotels, transport and cargo companies etc.

The opening up of the skies to private airlines and their emerging tie-ups with foreign airlines has removed bottlenecks in the transport and communication network resulting in easy flow of domestic and foreign tourists in the country. Since this is a new area of employment, not many qualified and experienced people are available and the promotion prospectus are also very bright and rapid.

Travel Agencies: Travel agents assess the needs of tourists and businessmen and help them make the best

possible travel arrangements from the many travel options available. Many resorts, travel groups use travel agents to promote their tour packages to travelers.

They deal with almost everything connected with travel including the shortest route to the destination, travel mode, the important documents that will be required (visa, passport, vaccination certificates etc.), suitable places to stay, current exchange rates, tourist attractions to visit, climate and they will plan the trip keeping in mind the clients' preferences, budgets and special needs. In travel agencies there are openings for reservation and counter staff, Sales and Marketing staff, Tour escorts and tour operators, cargo and courier agencies etc.

Hotels: The hotel industry is basically a service industry providing food and accommodation to the Visitors. There are many Institutes that offer hotel management courses. Many hotels also offer overseas training opportunities, which allow young people to gain promotions rapidly.

Transport: Besides airlines, Travel facilities include rail services, coach operators, car hire Companies, etc. Whatever that takes Tourists from one place to another - by air, road, railway, sea etc. comes under Travel and tourism. Tourist use almost all these travel facilities.

Definition and differentiation of tourist, travellers, visitor and excursionist

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- define the term Tourist
 - describe the Traveller
 - explain the Excursionists
 - explore the meaning of visitor.
-

Tourist: The word 'tourist' originated in 1292AD, Concise Oxford Dictionary (2000) defines this word as follows;

- A person who travels for pleasure.
- A member of a touring sports team.

Man has been travelling as a tourist since times immemorial. Today, he mixes business with pleasure and still, he is known as a tourist. Let us give a more rational definition of a tourist.

A tourist is a temporary visitor who stays for at least twenty-four hours in the country visited and the purpose of whose journey can be any one of the following;

- a Leisure (recreation, holiday, health and sports)
- b Business
- c Family

- d Religious obligations
- e Studies or Training

The following persons are tourists

- a Persons traveling for fun to another country.
- b Persons visiting another country for a family assembly or function.
- c Patients visiting another country for health check-ups or surgical treatments.
- d Patients visiting a hill spot in another country for the purpose of improving their health conditions.
- e Persons travelling to another country on business trips.
- f Delegates visiting another country for attending conferences, seminars etc.

The following persons are not tourists

- a Persons arriving in a country to take up jobs.
- b Persons migrating from rural to urban areas.
- c Students in boardings.
- d Persons domiciled in one country but working in a neighbouring country
- e Persons passing through a country without stopping.
- f Persons stopping for a few hours at the connecting stops while they move from one country to another.

Traveller: A person, who covers a reasonably large distance within or outside the country of his residence, is called Traveller. Normally, a tourist is a person who visits a country other than his own. So, a traveller may not be a tourist.

Further, a traveller may touch many transit stops while he leaves his starting point of his destination after a long journey. But he is only a traveller for those stops who

halts for brief periods. He is not a tourist, at those stops, in the strict sense of the word.

Excursionist: He is a temporary visitor who stays for less than twenty-four hours in the country visited. Thus, excursionist is not a tourist because he does not stay for more than 24 hours at the point/station on excursion. Further, an excursionist is a traveler. Finally, an excursionist is a temporary visitor. Note that excursionists include travellers on cruises.

Visitor: The UN conference on International Travel and Tourism was held in the year 1963 in Rome. It considered a definition of the term Visitor. It recommended that this definition be studied by the UN Statistical Commission.

Thus, a revised definition was made and adopted. So, a visitor has been defined as, "any person visiting a country other than that in which, he has his usual place of residence, for any reason other than following an occupation remunerated from within the country visited."

Inter relation between leisure recreation and tourism

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- differentiate between recreation and leisure.

Tourism, recreation and leisure: At this stage, we must learn the meanings of these three terms because we shall use them quite often in this volume. Our valued readers must know these tenets to fully comprehend the concepts of tourism administration.

Defining tourism: Tourism is the practice of touring and/or travelling for getting pleasure or for recreation. The art and science of managing the factors, resources, equipment and human beings related to tourism is called Tourism Management. Further, tourism administration and tourism management are synonyms in this volume.

Recreation: According to Concise Oxford Dictionary (2000), recreation refers to "an enjoyable leisure activity." Its origin is in the word recreare, which means "create again." All the human beings indulge in recreation. It is required to renew their vigour and give comfort to their tired minds. Note that recreation is an activity.

Leisure: According to Concise Oxford Dictionary (2000), leisure refers to "the time spent in or free for relaxation or enjoyment." It has been derived from a phrase *l'ere*, which means "be allowed." It also has a connotation that is similar to the word 'recreation.' However, it is the time spent or available for enjoyment.

Interrelationship of tourism, recreation and leisure

Tourism is an activity through which, a tourist gets enjoyment during the free time at his disposal. He can undertake a tour in his own country (which means that he is a domestic tourist). He can also undertake a tour in another country or a group of countries (which means that he is an international tourist).

He travels to a distance that is away from his place of residence; that is why, he is called 'Tourist.' He must have

a passion for enjoying an activity that could give him pleasure. He must also have free time to do so. He must also have adequate resources to become a tourist. He has some basic needs physiological, security and affiliation.

He has some higher order needs-esteem and self-actualization. His profession, work environment, family background and curiosity motivate him to explore the world. But such motivating factors are different for different people. He also has some perceptions, which become a part, of his habits and lifestyle over a period of years.

Finally, some persons have curious minds to the extent that they start undertaking various research projects to know the unknown in this world. For example, Magellan and Hiuen T'sang had the urge to carry out research in other worlds, which were far away from their respective countries; the former wanted to conduct business or geographical research activities while the latter was a religious research scholar. Note that research and curiosity are related to each other. In modern-day tourism* people go to other countries to look for data related to particular topics.

Many scholars and researchers undertake tours to complete their research projects or collect data related to the topics of their interest. For example, if an anthropologist wishes to study the Aborigines of Australia, he ought to visit Australia to meet those people and collect data related to the research project taken up by him. He would become a tourist and his aim would not be leisure but research.

All these factors groom an individual. So, he makes up his mind to explore the unknown parts of the world. Any one of the factors described earlier could be prepotent. This prepotent factor as well as its degree of prepotence could vary from individual to individual.

Now, the individual is mentally ready to the tour a distant place. He needs time, an interest in the targeted place (where he wants to go) and resources. These resources could be various forms of money, land cruiser, car, van, carty-away home (with an attached automobile, as in the cases of tourists who move in the USA), clothes, baggage and accessories, medicines, personal effects and so on.

- a Starts the process of tourism only when he leaves his usual place of residence;
- b Becomes a domestic tourist if he goes anywhere within die country of his usual residence;

- c Becomes an international tourist if he leaves the boundaries of his country by any mode of transport;
- d Uses free time at his disposal to enjoy the trip; this free time is called leisure time and. Is synonymous with leisure; and enjoys the trip during his leisure time to travel to far off places preferably visits the places of his interest (for leisure or research) and also, buys food, gifts, wine etc.

Components and elements of tourism

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- state the procedure of selecting the spot for site seeing.
-

The basic 5 A's essential for a successful destination are:

- a Accommodation
- b Accessibility
- c Activities
- d Amenities
- e Attractions

There has to be a good balance between the 5A's to make a successful destination, as different types of people from different backgrounds and cultures, different likes and dislikes and different but gets travel for different reasons. A destination has to cater to all these diverse needs.

- a Accommodation:** This is the place where the people stay. Accommodation does not necessarily mean only hotels, it now includes a wider range like hostels, inns, lodges, camper vans, etc. Now a days, people can even stay at other people's homes called home stays, which brings the traveler in direct contact with the local people and get to know their way of the, cultures and customs and eat home cooked local food.
- b Accessibility:** ft is one of the most important 5 A's, as no destination can be successful if there are no proper means of getting there. There should be air link and or railway line, bus services or port connecting the destinations to the outside world. Lack of proper transportation is one of the major drawbacks fora destination.

c Activities: Destinations have to constantly update and widen the range of activities available to attract people and get them to stay there for s longer period of time. People with different ' interests visit places and the destination must be in a position to cater to their needs, may it be like golf, trekking. Amusement park. This will mean that travel agents have more opportunities to sell new products.

d Amenities: People who visit destinations want to savor local flavor of the place like customs, habits, cuisine, arts and crafts, flora and fauna, etc. destinations must ensure that they have a fair share of local restaurants, designer bars, shopping plazas, local cultural activities and active nightspots. Travel agents must constantly update themselves as to the amenities available in destinations sold by them.

e Attractions: Sight seeing attractions are a must for any destination. Some prefer to visit historical monuments, some others museums, art galleries and some others would like to spend time with the thrill of the amunment park. This is one of the fastest growing segment of the tourism Disneyland for example. If the agent specializes in meetings, conferences, he will be to focus on the facilities available in the hotels to ensure that they meet the client's requirements and needs.

Types and typologies of tourism

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- explain the types of tourism
 - define typologies of tourism.
-

Types and typologies of tourism: Tourism can be classified according to certain well-defined criteria. We have used 4 major criteria to classify the gamut of tourism. The classification, according to these criteria is as follows.

Classification according to the general broad category

If we consider the criterion of the region covered by tourists, we can classify tourism into 4 broad categories, as follows:-

Regional tourism: In this category of tourism, tourists travel in a region in the broad vicinity of their usual places

of residence. Example : A resident of New Delhi can visit Matura and Agra.

National tourism: In this category of tourism, tourists travel to the remote corners of the country of their residence. They are far away from places of their normal residences.

Example: A resident of Coimbatore may visit Manali and other areas near it like Rohtang Pass Hidimba Devi's Temple and Botanical Garden. All these places are located in Himachal Pradesh, which is far away from his native state, Tamil Nadu.

Global or international tourism: In this category of tourism, tourists travel to such countries as are different from the countries of their residence. They become international tourists and may visit more than one nation on a single trip.

Example : A resident of Portugal may visit India and see popular tourist spots of India. He is deemed an international tourist.

Intra-regional tourism: It refers to tourism activities undertaken by tourists in the countries of the same region. It has a great influence on world tourism, though we can visualize it as a part of global/international tourism. In Africa, nearly 40 per cent of tourist inflows are inter-regional. This figure is 74 per cent in both Europe and North America.

Example: A resident of Portugal may visit the popular tourist spots of Spain. He is an intra-regional tourist because Spain and Portugal are located in Europe.

Classification according to economic category

If we consider the criterion of the economic levels of tourists, we can divide tourism into 4 broad categories, as follows.

Low-budget tourism: The operative staff, workers and people from the lower economic strata of the society travel and undertake tours. They travel within their regions or nations. They hardly go abroad. They choose cheap hotels, restaurants, sarais and dharamshalas to stay. They do not continue their tour programmes beyond a period of 5-30 days.

Middle-budget tourism: Such type of tourism activities are undertaken by middle-income people. They use two-star or three-star hotels for the purpose of staying. They travel by road or rail. Some of them muster enough of resources to travel by air conditioned coaches or trains. They do so because they travel rarely due to their busy office/business schedules and do not want to miss the luxuries of life that are available during the course of a tour. Many of them use private taxis and coaches while they travel to foreign countries.

High-budget tourism: Effluent businessmen, owners of shopping plazas, general managers of large corporate groups, senior managers, business-women, spoiled children of rich families, senior government officials and students belonging to rich families undertake such tours. They stay in four-star or five-star hotels.

Extra high-budget tourism: Presidents, CVPs and owners of large firms and MNCs undertake such types of tours. Further, the chairmen of public sector firms, senior government officials (of Joint Secretary level and above), owners of global shopping chains, industrialists, politicians and former maharajas, kings, queens and families thereof also indulge in such types of excursions.

Classification according to objective: If we consider the criteria of the objective (of a tourist), we can divide tourism into 11 broad categories as follows.

Cultural tourism: Tourists learn about food habits, lifestyles, dresses, festivals, social ceremonies and religious-rituals of the peoples of such countries. These

tours inculcate a feeling of brotherhood or universal fraternity among the people of the world.

Religious tourism: Such tourism activities are undertaken by religious pilgrims. Devout Hindus, Muslims, Christians, Sikhs and Jews go to their respective religious places in search of peace of mind and salvation.

Educational tourism: In this type of tourism, tourists go to educate themselves about the land, geography, people, weather, eco-system, economy, demography or general conditions of living of a foreign country. They may visit two or more countries in one itinerary. They do not, however, take up educational courses in the academic institutes of those countries because they are tourists (and not students).

Exploratory tourism: 'This type of tourism activity is undertaken by those tourists who want to explore new countries for the purpose of carrying out business transactions with the peoples of those countries.

It is better to explore such new places before applying for permanent immigration. Finally, some tourists go to visit such places as are vital for their friends, relatives and business associates (and not important for them).

Collect vital data related to business, geography, climate, tourist spots, people, hotels etc and then, come back. Later, they inform their friends, relatives and business associates who need such data. Much later, these friends, relatives and business associates travel to such places and the data so gathered are quite useful for them. Example: A friend may collect the details of tour programmes (for his friends) of Malaysia when he visits that country.

Commercial tourism: Several tourists visit other places and countries to conduct business transactions or sign business deals with their prospective partners in foreign countries. When they finish their work, their business associates take them to popular tourist spots or resorts. So, business is invariably mixed with pleasure.

This trend has become a norm in the modern era as people do not find time to undertake tourist activities. So, they take their families along with them. After completing their tasks during the day, they join their families in the hotel, or enjoy the luxury of tourist spots located in or around the city. They may even go to far off places, if time is not a deterring factor.

Adventure tourism: Now a days, several adventurous activities can be undertaken and enjoyed under the gamut of tourism. These include : scuba diving; snuba diving; paragliding; parasailing; bungee jumping; kayaking; canoeing; trekking; mountain climbing; whitewater rafting; river rafting; ocean-bed walking; ballooning; microlight flying; paratrooping; sea surfing; wind surfing; water skiing; and roller skating.

Eco tourism: This concept is catching up fast in all the corners of the world. Tourists exploit the environs of a tourist spot. They contaminate the air, soil and water of the tourist spot they visit. Frequently visited tourist destinations are facing this grave problem. The nations of the world are worried about this dangerous trend.

The Earth Summit (2002) also raised valid questions

about the rising levels of pollution around the world and contributions of the developed (industrialised) nations to 'the pollution of soil, water and air. It should be noted that most of the popular tourist destinations are located in the First World (the developed nations) or the New World (the United States). Moreover, people visit such spots at much higher frequencies and in much larger numbers.

Classification according to the category of tourist

If we consider the criterion of tourist category, we can divide tourism into the following 9 classes.

Business tourism: This type of tourism is undertaken by businessmen and businesswomen.

Adventure tourism: This type of tourism activity is undertaken by adventure seekers. These tourists are mountain climbers, trekkers, skaters, surfers, bungee jumpers etc.

Family tourism: This type of tourism activity is undertaken by families or groups of a large family/clan. The Indians take up such types of tours. Foreigners mostly travel along with their wives. They travel along with their children less often because their children are free after the age of 18 years.

Religious/spiritual tourism: Several devotees, not necessarily of the same clan, share resources to undertake pilgrimage to popular religious places. Rich persons or families may travel in small bunches. Some joint or nuclear families may also undertake religious tours.

Historical tourism: Some tourists go only to see the old places, forts and museums located in other countries. They may not show any interest in other places of tourist attraction. These persons could be archeologists, historians or research scholars.

Individual tourism: Sometimes, individuals go on tours to satisfy their lust for travel. They may also mix business with pleasure. They may take their families along with them (during their next visit) to those spots where they had gone as individuals.

School tourism: Children may be taken to tourist places, forts, lakes etc by their schools for the purpose of excursion and education. But such children cannot be taken to far off places. Children of classes X, XI and XII can, however, take up tours of foreign countries as they are mature enough to face problems in foreign countries.

College/university tourism: Students of colleges and universities can visit tourist spots within their own country or even abroad. Within their own country, they may use surface transport or railways. But foreign tours of college/university students are rare in the sense that such students may not go in groups but with only a few of their friends. Foreign tours of such students are self-sponsored.

Health tourism: India is known for her traditional health care systems and therapies. Some of these include Kairali, Yoga, aromatherapy, body massage, naturopathy and Ayurveda. These systems of medicine have proved to be quite effective in those medical cases that were declared as impossible by the modern medical science.

Foreigners are health freaks and if they can get state-of-the-art health treatment by natural means, they would

certainly throng these natural health centres. Most of foreigners get their bodies massaged in Kerala, which is the home of Kairali system of medicine. Many Kairali therapists have also opened their massage parlours in the major cities of India.

Ayurveda is the ages-old traditional, system of medicine. It can help an individual achieve perfect physical and mental states. The utility of Yogic exercises is well-known. Thus, health tourism is the Unique Selling Proposition (USP) of Indian tourism that can help this country win the hearts of tourists.

Sports tourism: In this category of tourism, people visit other countries to watch live sports competitions and matches. They become sports tourists in this context. They watch matches and sports events for which, they book their tickets in advance. They also travel in the country, which organises these competitions.

Cinema tourism: Many authors have also called it Hollywood Tourism. We already have it in Hollywood. Whenever tourists visit the State-of California, they visit famous film studios of Los Angeles, the Mecca of cinema. This trend is catching up at a fast pace in India too. In our country, cinema stars are next only to gods. Tourists can be taken to various studios while they tour Mumbai.

They can also meet the stars and actors when they visit such places. They can be taken to the finest of shooting locales and shown how movies are made. That stage is yet to arrive in India, though Hollywood already has a system of taking tourists on thrilling trips to various studios (like Paramount, MGM, Columbia Tristar, Warner etc).

It is very heartening to note that the UK has already celebrated a festival that featured Indian movies. Further, other shooting locales or cities can also be added to the list of cinema spots, which has only the name of Bollywood as the lone entry.

Shooting schedules are regularly organised at Bangalore, Chennai, Ooty, Khandala, Mahabaleshwar, Mudh Island, Gorai island (where Essel World is located), Khajiar, Shimla, Kufri, Rishikesh, Manali, Kangra Valley, Goa and other important shooting locales of India.

Thus, tourists would have the glimpses of their favourite stars (who would be engaged in the shooting of movies) and at the same time, they would also be able to enjoy the beauty of those places or shooting locales (where such shooting schedules would be organised). The idea is to kill two birds with one stone and tourists, especially domestic tourists, would enjoy this idea.

Medical tourism: Similar though it may seem, medical tourism is quite different from health tourism. In the former, we concentrate on the corrective power of modern medicine (allopathy) where in the latter, we try to bring the tourist into the realm of nature (naturopathy). Both types of people and hence, their market niches are also different. Medical treatment and surgeries cost a lot in the UK, the USA, Australia and other nations of the West.

Tourism motivation

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- **define the term motivation**
 - **describe different types of motivators.**
-

Travel motivators: Humans perform activities when their brains give them signals to do so. All the motivations to act come from their brains. The human brain has two parts-subconscious and conscious. In most of the activities of our lives, the conscious brain acts and guides us in work. But in some other activities, the subconscious brain remains our chief guide.

The conscious brain is the recipient of stimuli and data over short periods of time. Some of these data or stimuli travel to the subconscious brain and remain there for long time periods (even for a lifetime). Such data do not stay in the conscious brain for long periods of time. Note that all the feelings of the human biological organism are felt in the brain. Our heart is only a blood pump.

It has nothing to do with feelings. So, when our readers are desperate to take a trip to the snow-clad mountains of Nainital, they are, in fact, using the data of their conscious and subconscious brains. Remember, the mind controls the body 1

Motivation for undertaking travel and tours comes either from the conscious brain or from the subconscious brain. In this section, we shall discuss different types of travel motivators.

Physical motivators: Such motivators are related to the health and physical well being of the individual. Every person has some needs, which relate to his physiological comfort. A younger man may think that he would gain health if he goes to a hill station. An old person may like to travel to a beach resort and try to gain health there. Benefits always accrue from the Sun, fresh air, green vegetation (which is full of oxygen), mountains, steam, cold water, medicated water springs, curative baths, massage and other natural spots or activities.

The Thai Massage Therapy is the Unique Selling Proposition (USP) of Thailand. Professional masseurs are available throughout Thailand; they take the tourists to unknown heights of comfort. Thousands of tourists visit Thai massage parlours for getting their heads, feet or bodies massaged. In Russia, there are many Sanitoria along the coast of Black Sea. Similarly, there are many sanitoria and nursing-homes in Switzerland too.

Social motivators: Many experts on the subject of tourism have also called them Interpersonal Motivations. People want to visit their relatives, friends or acquaintances in other countries or in the country of their residence. Some people are very gregarious by nature. They live to interact with their friends, kith and kin. So, they take extra pains

to meet them, even if they live in a nation that is away from that of their near and dear ones.

Many Indians travel across the seven seas to attend marriage ceremonies, naming ceremonies, (naamkaran samskara) and other family gatherings. Obviously, they belong to the most affluent families of our country. Some other people, on the other hand, do not prefer to meet their friends and relatives; we may call them less gregarious or self-centred. But such persons may also be motivated to go on tours to meet these relatives and friends; the sole reason could be pressures of the family.

Religious motivators: Man has travelled over long distances to appease the gods and goddesses he reveres and adores. Religious tours or pilgrimage tours, as these are popularly called, are conducted in all the parts of the world. The Muslims complete the Haj at Mecca Sharif and the Hindus undertake the Char Dham Yatra at four prominent religious shrines. Further, the Sikhs travel to Shri Harimandir Sahib (Amritsar), the Jews to Jerusalem (Israel) and the Christians to the Vatican City (Italy).

Spiritual motivators: It has been observed that people from the West have shown keen interest and curiosity in other-religions, especially in Lord Krishna's sermons. The International Society for Krishna Consciousness (ISKCON) has many British American and German disciples. It becomes a cause for serving the entire humanity.

The dargah of Sheikh Salim Chishti is visited during the days of the Urs by several thousand Hindus and Muslims. The temple at Sabrimala Hills (Tamil Nadu) is another prominent example in this context. And it is quite strange to learn that this very country is the hot-bed of communal violence!

Relaxation, get away, recreation and rest motivators

Some people get fed up of the routines of everyday life. They do not want to go to their offices or factories. They look forward to having short breaks. The stress of urbanisation, family conflicts, headache of business and societal pressures wreak havoc on the minds of many people. They plan to leave their usual places of work and undertake tours of short periods.

It is, therefore, obvious that they cannot go far away from their usual places of work. Such excursions can, therefore, be called Get Away Tours. But tours carried out for longer durations ought to be called relaxation tours or recreation activities. Family members may also be involved in such adventures. Relaxation is the essence

of all these types of trips. The idea is to regain the lost energies of the mind and body. When limited periods of rest rejuvenate the person, he is eager to go back to his usual place of stay and work.

Adventure motivators: New adventures have been discovered or invented by the innovative travel operators and resort owners. Some activities in this context are Bungee jumping, White Water Rafting, Jungles Safari, Scuba Diving, Snuba Diving, Water Surfing, Wind Surfing etc.

Research motivators: Many research scholars go to other countries, islands, mountains, beaches, lakes and wild life sanctuaries. They collect data related to their research projects. They are required to travel extensively in the targeted areas/regions. They are motivated by the cultural ethos of such new areas/religions and also, by their quest to know more in a particular field of knowledge.

Sports motivators: Many young people like to play games and indulge in various types of sports activities. Some of them take up tours and enjoy the thrill of watching national and international sports competitions. Example : European Soccer Championship is a business of billions of Dollars nowadays. That is because the residents of Europe visit the venues of this competition to encourage the teams and (soccer stars) they support or revere.

Cultural motivators: Culture is the Chief distinguishing feature of any society or country. Many people are

interested in learning about the new cultures and cultural influences of other countries and societies. So, they travel to those countries or interact with those societies. Artists, poets, sculptors, philosophers, painters, theatre personalities, anthropologists, archeologists and social scientists nurture this type of habit. Many people are impressed by the folk dances, folk tales and art forms of other societies.

Eco motivators: This is the latest set of motivators that has taken the tourist world by storm. An interest in the environment and ecology of a place takes the tourist to that place. Wild-life parks, bird sanctuaries, natural tourist spots, reserves, rivers, lakes and above all, mountains are excellent places for conducting activities related to eco tourism.

Such activities also make the tourists aware of the grim environmental problem being faced by the mother earth. Consequently, they become more responsible for the protection of the environment. These tourists also donate generously to help these cute animals sustain themselves on this planet.

Business motivators: Business and tourism are mixed quite often as already stated in this volume. Businessmen and business-women travel to foreign countries to book orders, explore new markets and set up new offices in those countries. Quite often, business activities consume 70-90 per cent of their time and resources.

Factors affecting growth and development of international and national tourism

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- find factor affecting growth of tourism
- state the causes of rapid tourism development
- find factor influencing formation of tourist needs describe different types of motivators.

Factors affecting the development of the tourism industry: In many countries, developed and developing steadily, the tourism industry, with its huge material base, providing employment of millions of people and interacting with almost all sectors of the economy. Today, tourism on gross income is the second largest in the world after oil and the largest in the world-to provide jobs.

Factor affecting the development of tourism may include

- Political status
- Economic development
- Technological advancement
- Social factor
- Culture & literacy
- Transport development
- Natural resources-Richness of flora&fauna
- Infrastructural development

Causes of Rapid Development of Tourism: The main causes of the rapid development of tourism in the current period:

Political: The world maintains the peaceful relations, and the world- follow necessary condition for the development of tourism.

Economic: Income growth in developed countries allows them to spend money on travel. Similar processes are taking place in developing countries.

Social: Increased psychological stress on working with the intensification of the labor process, as well as to all people because of urbanization and technological progress. In developed countries, increasing the average length of vacation and holiday periods, increases the average human lifespan. All of this makes it possible to meet the increasing demand for leisure travel.

Dissemination of culture and education: Raising the cultural level is always generates interest and increases the knowledge of their region and country, as well as other nations and civilizations.

Advances in the development of transport: Increased possibility of short trips over long distances. Improved standards of service in transport, which is becoming more comfortable for passengers and tourists.

Developing media: Due to its characteristics of tourism development it is highly dependent on the capacity of tourist information about places of recreation and travel. The development of the print media, radio, television, computer systems, has dramatically expanded offer in tourism, as well as enhance the operational issues of the organization of travel solutions.

In addition, and technology, improved on the basis of marketing, also have a positive impact on the development of tourism.

Factor influencing formation of tourist needs.

The following five groups of factors that influence the formation of tourist needs, and hence on the success of the tourist center and tourist business.

- 1 Natural factors:** Natural resources that are available to tourists (location destinations, climate, flora, fauna, proximity to water, comfortable and attractive, beautiful natural sites, etc).
- 2 Socio-economic factors:** The development of space recreation (language, economic and cultural level of the country).
- 3 The material base of the tourism industry:** The main building ground to meet the needs of tourists in terms of amenities and aesthetic perception (hotels, catering, leisure, sports and spa facilities, and so on).

Important are the level of comfort, architectural object facilities, its compliance culture, the architecture or nature, national characteristics, and type of tourism (recreation, sports, business trip, etc).

- 4 Infrastructure destinations:** Surface and ground facilities required to meet the needs of the tourism industry (communications, roads, lighting, beaches, parking, gardens and farms, etc).
- 5 Tourist offer:** (resources hospitality): The cultural richness of the tourist center. Hospitality, tourism is of great importance. Contribute to the success of tourism. art, literature, music, theater, available at the tourist center. Resources can serve as a hospitality folk festivals, the national gallery of art, festivals and much more capable to interest, attract tourists, including a tour, informative, sports, entertainment, spa, recreational offers.

Impact of industrialisation and technological advancement on tourism industry

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- state the impact of industrialisation on tourism
- find the technological advancement and its impact on tourism.

Industrialisation: The industrial revolution led to many changes on all the industry all over the world. In tourism industry it led its rapid development.

As the countries' economy develops, the per capita income of the people increases: which fetched extra money for people to spend on the recreational & tour activity.

Industrialization also paved way to the tremendous growth in terms of transport like, improvement of roads, rail way, airline services, etc which made travelling across the country easy.

Development in communication industry made communication channels stronger where people travelled lot around the country/world for business purpose first and later for leisure.

Technological Advancement: The development of technology is one of the most important factors that have affected global tourism in the last 50 years. As technology has developed, the opportunities for tourism around the world have expanded dramatically.

The first, and probably the most important, factor is technological improvements to transport. The development of air travel has allowed for holidays to parts of the world that otherwise would have required considerable time and wealth to complete by boat, and so this has dramatically increased global tourism.

This then led to further developments in planes so that more passengers could be transported faster and more cheaply by jumbo jets. Cheaper flights meant that anybody could now afford to travel to virtually anywhere in the world. This caused global tourism to become much widespread, rather than travelling to nearby areas people could travel to other countries and other continents instead.

Another technological advancement that has influenced tourism is things like the channel tunnel. This allows for fast, easy travel between England and France and so more people will be encouraged to go from one country to the other. This will result in increased tourism. Within Britain the development of cars has led to increased tourism.

People now do not even need to arrange transport to a place, they need only arrange accommodation and they can travel there themselves. This has greatly improved tourism within Britain, and with in other countries. It also is a much more important factor in Europe as it is possible to travel across countries.

Another form of technology which has influenced tourism is media and communication. TV has provided a format not only for travel and holiday advertisement but also for programmes devoted entirely to advertising a foreign country. A more subtle form of TV advertisement is through documentaries. As people see foreign countries portrayed in the favourable light of television they can feel inspired to visit that country.

With the development of computers and the internet this has provided countless other ways of increasing tourism. Not only is it now far easier for people to search and book holidays through dedicated web sites for this purpose but also it is far easier for them to be advertised to. This has resulted in a large increase in global tourism. The internet also allows for people to book tickets online and to check in for flights.

Also, as it is easier for people to travel people are exposed to more places. This results in people wanting to either live or work in another country. This has been greatly increased by the European union, and means that the families of these people are likely to go and visit them, bringing tourism to their area.

Tourism infrastructure types, forms and significance

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- explain about road transport
- explain the modes of road transport
- explain about local transportation
- explain about local transport facilities provided
- explain about airline industry
- state different types of airlines
- describe the history of the Indian railways
- explain the structure and feature of Indian railways.

The tourism infrastructure types are

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1 Hotels | 2 Forest lodges |
| 3 Tourist complexes | 4 Way side amenities |
| 5 Restaurants | 6 Tourist reception centre |
| 7 Pilgrim dormitories | |

Forms of Tourism: Domestic tourism, In bound tourism & out bound tourism.

Significance of tourism: It boosts the revenue of the country and paves way for job creation, development of infrastructure of a country. It enables cultural exchange between visitors and the citizen.

It also changes in value system. Individual behaviour attitude developments, It protects the local culture & heritage and improves the communities by economic development and social services.

Road Transport: India has an extensive network of major and minor roads as well as a good number of well maintained networks of national highways, connecting all major cities and tourist destinations. The network figures some 5.89 million km that includes national highways, state highways, district roads and rural roads.

The roadways provide transportation to millions of people every day. However, vast sections of the country's road network, especially in rural areas, are in a process of development. The government of India has been continuously developing the linking roads between four major cities.

The minor roads in villages and small towns across the country are also in a process of developing local transportation facilities in India.

Most of the cities provide taxi and auto rickshaw services while few cities provide metro rails and suburban train services within the city limit. The town or city buses are the convenient means of transportation in most of the cities, while in big cities like Delhi, Mumbai and Kolkata, people prefer metro and suburban train services.

Light vehicles such as auto rickshaws, tempos and jeeps can be found in most cities of India. In some cities, the traditional means of transport namely tongas (horse-drawn carriages) and camel carts are still in use. People use motorcycles and bikes in smaller cities like Goa, Pune

and Pondicherry. Hand-pulled rickshaws were available till recently in Kolkata which have now been banned by the government.

Local transport: Local transportation is predominantly by road, with the exception of the four metropolitan cities of Mumbai, Delhi, Chennai, and Kolkata where train transport is more popular. Most Indian cities are connected to surrounding towns by buses or trains.

The vast national rail network also enables farmers to transport their farm and agriculture produce to larger towns, where they get better prices. The use of buses is very popular for all classes of society. They are a cheap and easy mode of transport. The government is encouraging the people to use the bus since it reduces the number of vehicles on the road thus reducing traffic jams.

Indian Railways: The history of Indian Railways dates back to 16th April 1853, when the first train operated between Mumbai and Thane, covering a distance of 21 miles. Subsequently the first passenger train was operational on 15th August, 1854 from Howrah station to Hooghly, a distance of 24 miles.

Today, it has completed its glorious 150 years of services for the nation. There has been tremendous development in its financial status, safety, security, projects, technology and moreover its quality service to the people. Initiatives like online ticket booking, computer-based reservation system, IVRS or interactive voice response system, and introduction of smart cards have improved the Indian railways considerably.

Journey by train has become one of the cheapest and convenient ways of transportation for people of all sections of the society. The Indian Railways, today, provide the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India. It is one of the largest networks in the world with a total of 1,26,366 km (31,3.20) and providing employment to 1.54 million people.

Airline industry: An airline provides air transport services for passengers or freight, generally with a recognized operating certificate or license. Airlines lease or own their aircraft with which to supply these services and may form partnerships or alliances with other airlines for mutual benefit.

Types of road transport

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- explain the different types of road transport.

Road transport in India has a large and extensive transportation system. The country has one of the world's largest railway and roadway network transporting millions of people every year.

Horse carriages: Advent of the British saw drastic improvements in the horse carriages which were used for transport since early days. Till today they are used in smaller towns and are referred as "Tanga" and buggies (Victorias of Bombay) are still used for tourists purposes.

Cycle rickshaw: From the early part of the century the bicycle rickshaws also became popular and are still used in rural India. Its more a bigger tri-cycle wherein two people can sit on a elevated seat at the back and a person will paddle (driver) from the front. In urban areas they have been mostly superseded by auto rickshaws.

Manually pulled rickshaw: This type of transport was prevalent until 2005 in Kolkata wherein a person pulls the rickshaw.

Trams: The advent of the British saw trams being introduced in many cities including Mumbai and Calcutta. They are still in use in Calcutta and provide a pollution-free means of transportation.

Local transport: Local transportation is predominantly by road, with a small fraction (depending on the city) by trains. Most Indian cities are connected to surrounding towns by buses or trains. The vast national rail network also enables farmers to transport their farm and agriculture produce to larger towns, where they get better prices.

The roads in most cities are poorly maintained and full of potholes, while in villages they are frequently non-existent. Traffic generally moves slowly and erratically, and traffic jams and accidents are very common.

Buses: Buses are very cheap in most cities but also very crowded and have unpredictable timings, frequently necessitating long waits. In the big cities and towns of India, buses are the major mode of transport. Luxury and air-conditioned buses also service some cities. Most means of transportation within cities is run by the government.

Vans: Vans or Mini-Buses is for group people of a more prevalent form of transportation especially in remote

areas and common route with consistent yet small transportation needs.

Auto rickshaws: An auto rickshaw is generally characterized by a iron body resting on three small wheels (one in front, two on the rear), a small cabin for the driver in the front and seating for three in the rear.

Their design varies considerably from place to place. In some locations, they have an extra plank on the seat to accommodate a fourth passenger. Hiring an auto often involves bargaining with the driver.

In some cities like New Delhi, there are larger autos called Fat-fat, which is an onomatopoeic derivation of the phut-phut crackle of their exhausts. These run on fixed routes on fixed fares and are very fuel efficient. Only six passengers are allowed legally but they usually take as many as ten adults. Now two application the autos are applied.

Two-wheelers: Two wheelers are the most popular mode of transport in terms of number of vehicles. There are two main types of powered two-wheelers, the motor scooter and the motorcycle.

Cars: The demand for cars in India is one of the highest in the world. In 2002 more than 50,000 new cars were brought in Delhi alone. Compact cars predominate due to low cost. Maruti, Hyundai, Tata Motors and Ford are the most popular brands in the order of their market share.

Metro: Mass rapid transit systems are operational in Mumbai, Kolkata, Chennai and Delhi. The first rapid transit system in India, Mumbai Railway, was established in Mumbai in 1867. The Mumbai Suburban Railway commutes 6.1 million passengers everyday and boasts to have the highest passenger density in the world.

Highways: India has a well developed network of National Highways connecting all the major cities and state capitals. Most highways Neutron laid are 4 km / 8 km, while in some better developed areas they may broaden to 8 lanes. Close to big cities, highways can even be 12 laned. All the highways are metalled. In most developed states the roads are smooth, however in less developed states highways are riddled with potholes.

Types of Roads

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- explain the different types of road.

Road Infrastructure: The aggregate length of roads, which was 0.4 million kms in 1950-51, has increased eight-fold to 3.32 million kms in 1995-96 but the number of goods vehicle fleet has increased

22-fold from 0.82 lakh to 17.85 lakh in the corresponding period. The national highway network, which carries about 40% of the road traffic, is just a little over 1% of the road network. India has second largest road network of 5.89 M.Km. 2021.

Table 1: Growth of Road Network (in 'ooo Kms.)

Category	Change p.a.
National Highways	1.94%
State Highways	2.97%
District road	9.94%
Rural road works	70.65%
Urban roads	9.07%
Project roads	5.43%
Total	100.0 (100%)

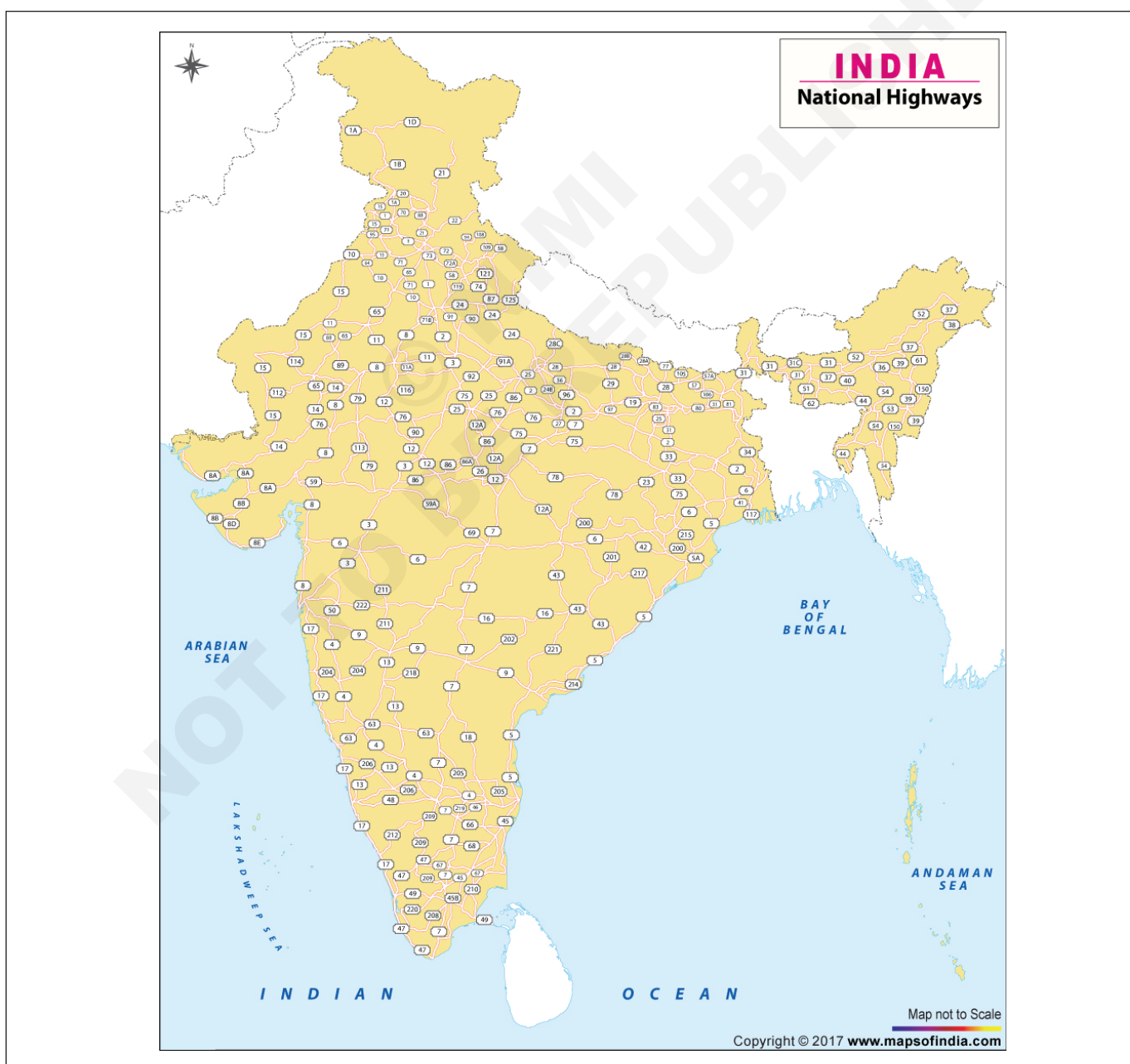
National Highway Authority of India: Set up in 1989, it started functioning only in February, 1995. It is an autonomous body entrusted with the responsibility of development, maintenance and operation of the National Highways and other associated facilities vested in the Government of India.

Air Transport

Air Transport broadly divided into military and civil aviation is the fastest growing aviation market in the world according to the international Air Transport Association (IATA). The hub of the nation's aviation manufacturing industry is at Bangalore which has a 65% share of the economic sector since 1924. The government's UDAN (regional connectivity scheme) is driving the growth of civil aviation and aviation infrastructure in India.

Water Transport

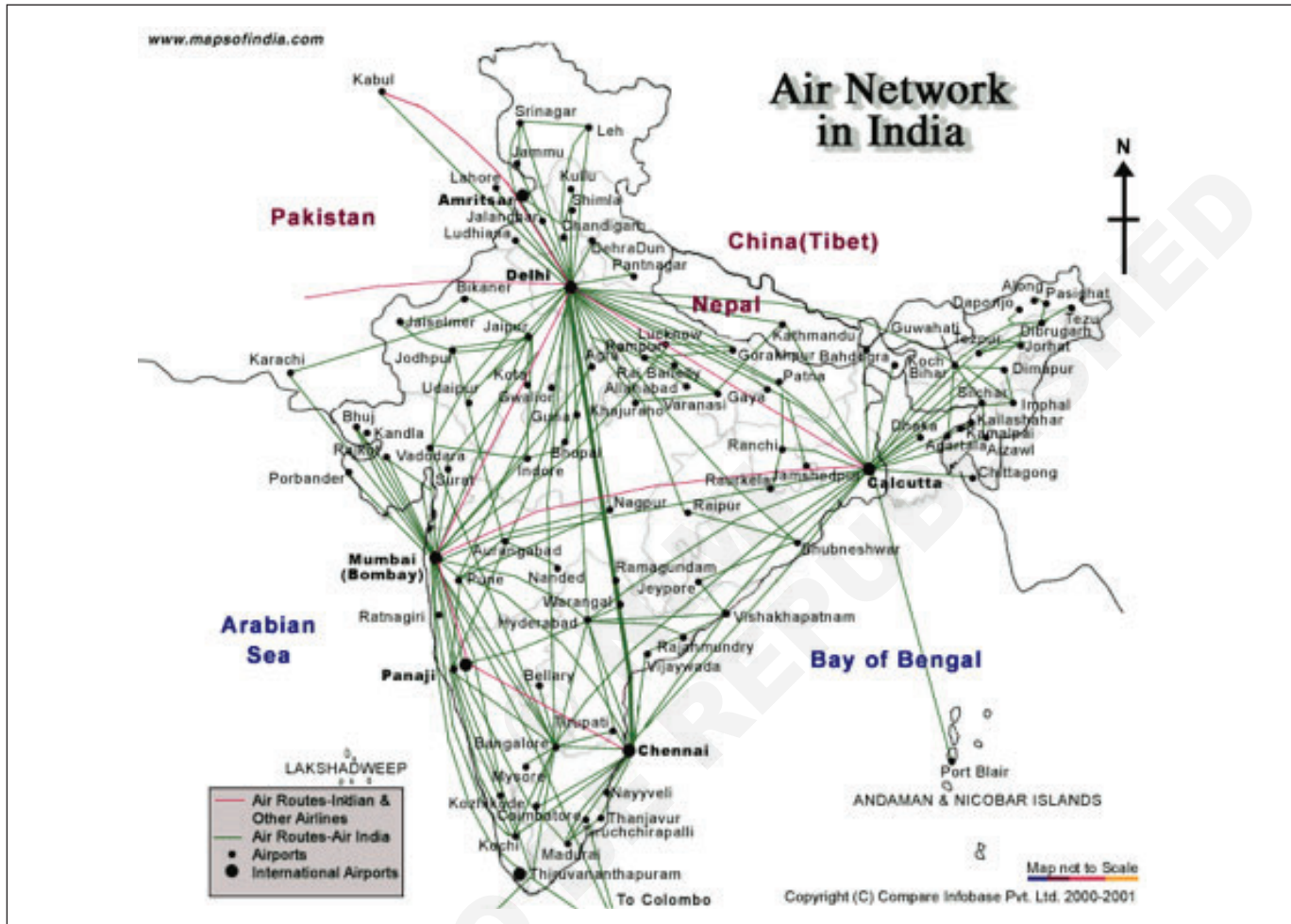
In water - based transport generally, fuel costs are low and environmental pollution is lower than in transport by road, rail, or air. The waterway is naturally available which has to be "trained" maintained and upgraded. Water-based transport is especially effective when the source and destination are waterfront locations. Transport based on inland waterways (or inland water transport. IWT) - rivers, canals, lakes, etc and also overlapping coastal shipping in tidal rivers - constitutes 20 % of the transport sector.



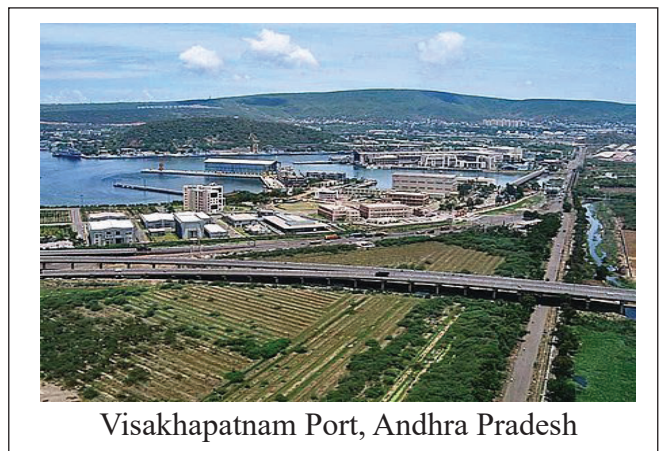
AAI

The Airports Authority of India or AAI is a public sector enterprise under the ownership of the Ministry of Civil Aviation, Government of India. It is responsible for creating, upgrading, maintaining and managing civil aviation infrastructure in India. It provides Communication Navigation Surveillance/Air Traffic Management (DNS/ATM) services over Indian airspace and adjoining oceanic areas. AAI is currently managing a total of 137 airports, including 34 international airports, 10 Customs Airports

, 81 domestic airports, and 23 Civil enclaves at defines airfields. AAI has ground installations at all airports and 25 either locations to ensure the safety of aircraft operations. AAI covers all major air routes over Indian landmass via 29 Radar installations at 11 locations along with 700 VOR/ DVOR installations co-located with Distance Measuring Equipment (DME). 52 runways are provided with Instrument Landing System (ILS) installations with Night Landing Facilities at most of these airports and an Automatic Switching System at 15 Airports.



Ports of India





Mundra Port, Gujarat



Chennai Port, Tamil Nadu



Accommodation - Forms and types

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- explain the different categories of hotels by location
- number of rooms
- types of plan room rates that are quoted
- types of clientele
- length of guest stay
- facility offered is noted.

Types of hotels: Hotels may be categorized depending upon factors such as:

1 Location

2 Number of rooms

3 Type of plan room rates that are quoted

4 Type of clientele

- 5 Length of guest stay
- 6 Facilities that it offers.

Categorisation by locations: Downtown hotel: It is located in the heart of the city within a short distance of the business centre, shopping areas, theatres, public buildings etc. Rates in these hotels are normally high due to their location advantage and also due to the fact that the rate of return on investment (ROI) computed on these capital intensive hotels is substantially high. Normally, business clientele prefer such hotels.

Sub-urban hotels: located in the sub-urbs, it has the advantage of quieter surroundings. Rates quoted are moderate to low. Such hotels are ideal for budget travellers and also organisations who find the quiet setting ideal for conferences, seminars, educational programmes etc.,

Resort hotel: This type of hotel is located in the hills or at beaches. It is mainly patronised by vacationers. Basic facilities are provided and the rates offered are often on American Plan, i.e. room plus all meals included.

Airport Hotel: As the name suggests, these hotels are situated at the airport and are ideal for transit passengers who have only a few hours in the city making it impossible for them to stay in a downtown hotel. Rates are on European Plan. i.e. charges for room only.

Motel: This term is derived from the phrase, “motor hotels”, which are located principally on highways. They provide modest board and lodging to highway travellers. The length of stay is usually overnight, thus rates quoted are on European Plan. i.e. room only.

Inns: They are smaller in size with modest board and lodging facilities. They may be located anywhere within or outside the city. They are forerunners of the modern motel.

Categorisation by number of rooms: The capacity of a hotel in terms of the number of rooms is a yardstick for the categorisation of the hotel by “size”. Hotels with 25 rooms and less may be termed “small”; those with 25 to 100 may be called “medium”; those with 101 to 300 are “large”. Hotels with over 300 rooms which are very common these days may be termed as “very” large.

Categorisation by type of plan: Hotels are categorised according to the type of plan, they offer. We thus have hotels on European Plan, American Plan and Continental Plan for a discussion of plans, see lesson 13. These plans are decided by the hotel on a variety of factors including type of clientele, length of stay and average customer preference.

Categorisation by type of clientele: We often hear in a hotel parlance the terms such as a group hotel, commercial hotel, family hotel etc. This categorisation is based on the type of patronage. Group hotels cater to groups and

thus their rates would be on American Plan. Commercial hotels cater to mostly businessmen and are on European Plan. A family hotel would again be on American Plan. Such hotels are normally situated in resort cities.

Categorisation by length of guest stay: This categorisation of hotels further be divided into three sub-groups

- 1 Transient hotels, where a guest can register for a day or even less (airport hotels could be termed thus)
- 2 Residential hotels where guests stay for a minimum period of one month the hotel signs a detailed lease with the customer
- 3 Semi residential hotels which incorporate the features of both the transient and residential hotels.

Categorisation by facilities the hotel offers: Facilities offered by hotels may be the most important criteria for classifying hotels. Some countries adopt the star rating system. Thus a five star hotel which is the highest rating will provide facilities such as central air-conditioning, attached bathrooms with hot and cold water, channel music, wall-to-wall carpeting, shopping arcade, health club, swimming pool, sports facilities and a variety of restaurants and bars including a coffee shop, speciality restaurant, grill room, etc.

These are just some of the criteria for star rating. Certain such facilities are denied as the star rating of the hotels goes lower and lower. They may be excluded for a variety of reasons such as cost, level of business, etc.

Guesthouse: A small house or cottage adjacent to a main house, used for lodging guests/visitors.

Most of the multinational companies; government organizations large ‘Indian companies; autonomous organisations and some NGOs construct this type of accommodation at different places mostly to accommodate their visitors/guests or staffs when they are on tour.

Guest houses may or may not have the boarding facilities. Some organisation provide free lodging to their guests, others may charge them very nominal fees/charges/rent.

Holiday home: Holiday homes are a house or flat or cottage owned by companies or organisations which are intended for leisure are on nominal rent by the employees.

Unlike guest house, holiday homes are mostly located at tourism destinations like religious places, on hills, near beaches, etc.

Dhabas: Indian highways are dotted with local restaurants or inns popularly known as Dhabas. They are known to serve delicious local cuisine and also serve as trucker stops but no accommodation.

Transport sector - Modes and relative significance

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- understand the economic benefit derived from tourism to a nation.

Tourism and the Indian economy: The essential potentials of the tourism industry are culture, heritage, natural vegetation, beaches, parks, monuments, sculptures, etc., and India uniquely appeals to the world with its glaring golden deserts, fascinating fields and forests, beautiful beaches, roaring rivers, matchless snow-clad mountains, fabulous fauna and flora, as Tourism Country.

The Economic Dimension of Tourism: Tourism is an important sector which not only provides employment opportunities but it helps to earn valuable foreign exchange and its alternate to other business activities.

Positive Effects

Tourism naturally brings tax benefits to the Government and it is quite pertinent to mention here that the increase in income and employment will positively influence the Government due to the increase in the share of taxes and this can be clearly understood from the following chart.

Revenue from Tourism

- Property Tax
- Imports Duty
- Sales Tax
- Income Tax
- Hotel Tax
- Transport Tax
- Entertainment Tax
- Service Tax
- Cess Tax

Tourism Earns Foreign Exchange: Tourism is the key earner of foreign exchange. It is pertinent to place here on record that India is occupying a unique place in generating largest earnings as far as foreign exchange is concerned.

Enormous opportunities during the peak season. During 1997, about 262 million people constituting 10.5% of the global workforce were employed in this sector and it is 383 million 2016 which means one new job will be created for every 2.4 seconds and GDP is 10.4% in 2017.

Tourism's Multiplier Effect: Tourism has multiplier effect on the Indian economy because the money that flows out from the expenditure of the tourist multiplies again and

again" as it passes from one hand to another through various sections of the society. Three kinds of expenditures can be brought into the category of multiplier effect.

Direct expenditure is the amount spent directly by the tourists where the changes of leakage do not exist. Through indirect Expenditure which forms the second category, the money earned from tourism will be re-spent for purchasing the essential commodities from retailers who provide services like food products, entertainment, electricity, water supply, laundering furnishing etc.

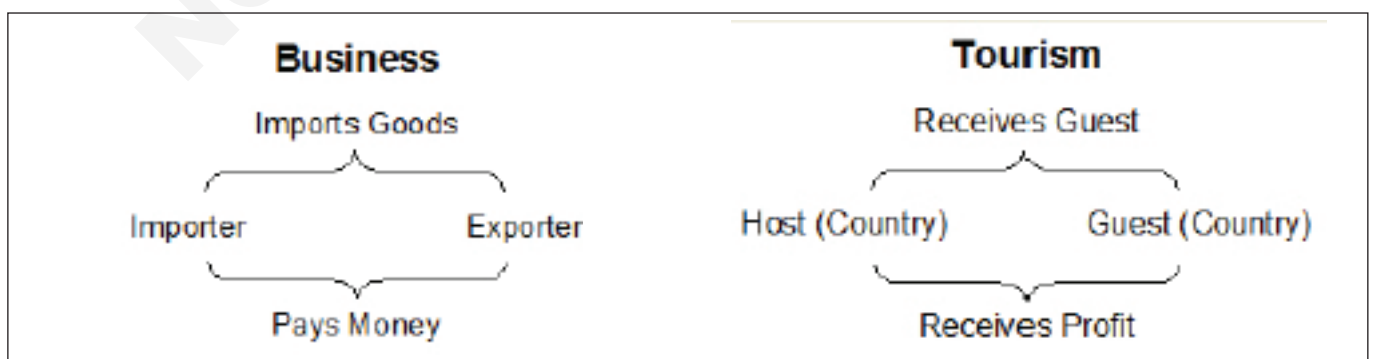
This money reaches to all those industries that are providing facilities and services to the tourists. Next comes the third category of expenditure or induced expenditure that is being spent to suffice the basic needs and purchase luxury products too by the people who are benefited from the indirect expenditure. In other words the money spent by the tourists apart from providing support to the tourism industry also extends support to many other smaller industries which supply goods and services.

The never ending process of money circulation from one hand to another hence results in the multiplier effect because it passes through all the major and minor sectors of the national economy and it has been placed on record that at least 13 to 14 transactions takes place from the money spent by the tourist in a destination.

Tourism Develops Infrastructure: The other sectors of the Indian economy that are benefited by tourism are airports, roads, water supply and other public utilities which forms the basis of infrastructure. Developments in technological, social and cultural areas during the 21st century boosted the construction activities in the transport sector like roads, airports and service sector like hotels, telecommunications etc.

Tourism Provides Regional Development: Another contribution of the tourism to the Indian economy is the development of underdeveloped regions. Many of the economically backward regions contain, areas of high scenic beauty and cultural attractions.

Tourism development in these regions has become a significant factor in reducing the regional imbalances in employment and income because, tourist expenditure at such tourist areas greatly helps in the development of the areas around them.



Other supporting infrastructure required for tourism

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- state the different types of accommodation
- state the different types of rooms
- state the different types of room plans.

Types of Accommodation: There are various types of accommodation other than hotels for the customers. According to the customers preferences the accommodation facilities are provided.

Caravans: These are mobile homes, that families take across the country. It is fitted with sleeping, dining, lounge and bathing facilities. Some caravans have kitchens with basic eating facilities, medical arrangements. This is ideal for those recuperating from surgeries and illness. It is also a place for attaining physical fitness.



Government Houses: It is a composite name for dak bungalows, circuit houses, Public welfare department (PWD) houses and forest lodges which are the legacy of the British Raj in India. Dak bungalows are meant for the postal couriers to rest while circuit houses were for the higher ranked officials.

Forest lodges were built for those involved in forestry and building. The PWD houses were for those officials involved in road building and electricity power lines. These establishments are still available to Government personnel and authorized public.

Floatels: These are found on passenger ships. Some are permanently docked at port while others are cruiseliners taking passengers on a week long trip around famed locations connected with water.

Rotels: These are double decker buses. Passengers sit on lower deck and sleep on the upper deck. Some buses are used for long cross country tours covering 15 days or more. Second floor has beds fitted with bed side lamps, toilet shelf and privacy curtains.

The greatest benefit is guest do not have the problem of packing and unpacking. They are provided cupboards on board. Rotels are introduced by Conti hotel bus company of Germany.

Matels: Fully automated hotels which require minimum human contact. A guest books online and gets an immediate confirmation. On arrival he punches in his reservation number and name in a machine which initiates a dialogue with a virtual receptionist who registers the



guest through a close circuit television and issues a key to the room through a slot machine. Outside cleaning crews come during the day to clean the room and make it fresh and clean. This concept was started in Japan and is likely to be the future of hotels.

Sanatoria: This type of accommodation are found at Spas and other health resorts. The rooms are specifically equipped for therapy including sauna Turkish bath and Jacuzzi. Meals are personalized. Diet regimes are given separately for each guest. These hotels have proper dieticians, and doctors.

Types of Rooms: There are various types of rooms. The Room tariff depends upon the type of room and its facilities and where it is located. The various types of rooms and number of guests allowed to occupy the rooms are as follows.

Single room: This has a standard single bed to provide sleeping accommodation to one person. **Double room:** This has double bed & provides sleeping comforts to two persons. It has large bed.

Twin bedded room: This is with two identical twin beds. This provides sleeping accommodation for two persons. **Interconnected room:** these are rooms which are connected to each other by a common wall & door. It is used by families or two separate individual persons.

Triple room: This room offers sleeping accommodation for three persons, here a double bed with an extra bed.

Quad room: This room offers sleeping accommodation for four persons, and has four beds.

Double -double room: This type of rooms has two double beds in it & provides sleeping accommodation for four persons.

Suite room: A set of two rooms out of which one is bed room & the other is sitting room or living room.

Cabana room: The room situated near the swimming pool of the hotel. **Efficiency room:** this is complete self

sufficient room, containing a bed room, a small kitchen, dining room & a bathroom.

Hospitality room: It is used for entertaining and also be called as function room. Dupleix suite: This suite has 2 rooms on 2 successive floors and is connected to each other with a common staircase. Facilities Available in the Different Types of Accommodation

Motel: Motels, motor hotels to serve the needs of motorists. They must provide car parking, garage, accommodation, rest facilities, & recreational facilities & restaurant.

Floating hotel: This-type of hotels are located on the surface of the water such as lake, sea etc.

Suburban hotel: These types of hotels are situated in suburbs with quite surroundings with low tariff.

Resort hotels: These types of hotels are located at islands, hill stations, beaches.

Residential hotels: These are otherwise known as apartment hotels which will be sold for monthly or yearly basis. Independent hotels: These hotels or on ownership basis and do not have any affiliation or contract through any other properties.

Commercial hotels: These hotels are situated in the heart of the city i.e downtown busy commercial areas and urban areas.

International hotels: These hotels are situated in metropolitan cities and provide modern western style luxury to their guests. These are also called as full service hotels.

Budget hotels: These hotels are applicable to tourist area where longer staying guests require self catering provisions and also for families relocated or temporary employees in that area.

Casino hotels: This type of hotels are focus on gambling and provision of casino. Casino hotels are not seen in India but are very popular in America.

Conference hotels: These are hotels which are specially designed to accommodate group meetings.

Transient/transit hotels: Hotel guests who comes under the category of transient guests who are in the process of moving from one destination to another and stop at the hotel for a short period of time.

Semi residential hotels: These hotels provide accommodation to guests on weekly or monthly basis like residential hotels as well as on per day basis like transient hotels.

Types of Plan- EP, CP, AP, MAP and their Rent & Taxes

A hotel normally develops a price range of rates between minimum-moderate -maximum. These rates are arrived at by evaluating the competition and determining.

Social cultural impacts of tourism

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- narrate the socio economic impacts of tourism
- describe the socio - cultural impacts tourism.

Socio-economic implications of developments in the field of transport:

The following effects and implications have been observed by experts;

- a By the introduction of web based activities the tourism creates a wider opportunity.
- b Developed transport networks have led to mass movements from rural areas to urban areas. This migration pattern had become more prominent during the eighties and nineties of the last century. The major metropolises of the country are the coveted destinations of most of the rural youth. Further, rural people prefer to move to cities that are in the immediate vicinity of their respective villages.
- c Economic development has been facilitated by the road networks in rural areas. Farmers are able to market their agricultural and farm products with ease. Pucca roads are available in many a village of India.
- d Vast road and rail networks have also led to the development of eco tourism, farm tourism and heritage tourism. But the government and private entrepreneurs must not be complacent over this trend. There is a lot of potential in the field of tourism after the development of road and rail networks.
- e Logistics management is easier and better today than it was nearly forty years ago. That is because efficient rail, road and air networks have facilitated the movement of cargo, perishable goods and other materials that are used by various components of the tourism industry.
- f Inland water transport system has not been fully developed in India. There is a great scope of its development and contribution towards the travel and tourism industry. Thus, water management would be coupled with water transport and cost effective.
- g Private airlines are making air transport competitive and efficient. These trends are healthy and ought to continue.
- h Private bus operators and coach services for tourists are available only in major cities. Small cities that have tourism potential must also have such services. Private firms can take the initiative in this context.
- i Vast road and rail networks have increased employment levels in cities. Airlines also employ staff to facilitate their businesses.
- j Intra-city transport networks have been strengthened. But this feature is prominent only in 4 metropolitan

cities and 400 other cities of India..Rural areas of India must have facilities related to tourism and travel. These facilities are available but these are not of high quality.

- k Inter-modal transport systems in the context of tourism administration have boosted the economies of all the major transport industries, namely, air, road, water and rail transport.
- l People, especially tourists, are now more keen to comfortably and luxury even if they are on religious tours. They want their family members to travel comfortably. Thus, they do not mind paying extra for such services as were hitherto deemed out of reach, flamboyant and costly by them. Air travel is an example in this context.
- m Tourists demand full value for the money spent by them in transport systems. They expect railway stations to be clean, coaches to be spick and span, aircraft to be the role models of efficiency and luxury and cruise liners to be synonymous with floating paradise. As many of them do not undertake long tours (for 15 - 20 days) quite often due to their busy schedules, they try to extract the maximum out of their currently planned travel and tour itineraries.
- n Many businessmen couple business with family trips and tours to famous cities or historic spots. This trend has been catching up at a fast pace in India. We have discussed it elsewhere in this volume.
- o Increase of cell phone play vital role in tourism industry.
- p **Social culture impact on tourism:** The growth of hotel/ecotel and capsule model hotel is recent development paved way for improvement in tourist traffic. Some of the notes are at par with international requirement and attracts more foreign tourists.

Cultural implications of developments in the field of transport:

The following cultural implications have been observed in the context of development of transport networks in India;

- A People travel to far off places with ease. They mingle with people of different regions and tribes. These interactions have developed a national split that binds the nation as a unique cultural entity (despite the differences in individual cultures and value systems). Example: North Indians visit Chennai and enjoy south Indian festivals.

B Cultural programmes and festivals also involve people of different races. Even foreigners take pride in witnessing the cultural performances of India. This was made possible because of the provision of facilities related to travel and transport. Example: Indian and foreign tourists visit Goa and attend the famous Goa Carnival during December each year. The parade on December 25 brings several thousand people on the streets of Goa.

C Transport networks have increased interest of tourists (domestic and foreign) in various cultural festivals and competitions. They either witness such competitions or are proud to participate in the same.

D Many festivals and cultural programmes have become so famous that these have acquired international recognition. This was made possible because of the developments in transport networks. People were able to visit the sites of these festivals and fairs and publicise them through word-of-mouth campaigns.

Example: Snake boat races of South India, Kullu Dussehra, Mysore Dussehra, Baisakhi of Punjab,

Pongal, Onam, Holi, Lohri and Deepavali are some of the festivals that have been acknowledged as mirrors of Indian culture and art forms. The famous Sun Temple of Konark is the venue of dance festival in December every year. Goa's Carnival is also world famous. Dandiya of Gujarat is attended by millions; so is Ganesh Puja in Maharashtra. The Durga Puja festival (in West Bengal) attracts visitors from India and abroad.

The holy shrine of Ishno Devi (near Jammu) can be approached (from Katra) by a helicopter. Indian Airlines is organising flights to Leh, which is the roof of the world. Many other examples can be quoted in this context.

e The introduction of low cost air side carrier has made the travel cheap & part movement of people.

Environment: Our country is having large population with varied culture region and almost in every season a festival is celebrated in the states during a calendar year. Being culture in the uniqueness of our country.

Environmental and socio - cultural impact of tourism

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to
• explain the socio - cultural impact of tourism.

Environmental: Areas with high-value natural resources, like oceans, lakes, waterfalls, mountains, unique flora and fauna and great scenic beauty attract tourists and new residents (in-migrants) who seek emotional and spiritual connections with nature.

Environmental impact analysis: Definition: It is a process of evaluating the accepted development on the environmental in parts of a proposed project by taking into account in connection with socio-economic, cultural & human health impacts etc both positive and negative.

Environmental Impacts of tourism

Negative

- 1 Pollution (air, water, noise, solid waste, and visual)
- 2 Loss of natural landscape and agricultural lands to tourism development
- 3 Loss of open space
- 4 Destruction of flora and fauna (including collection of plants, animals, rocks, coral, or artifacts by or for tourists)
- 5 Degradation of landscape, historic sites and monuments
- 6 Water shortages
- 7 Introduction of exotic species
- 8 Disruption of wildlife breeding cycles and behaviors
- 9 Many tourists visit the tourism famous place during holidays there by spoiling the entire place due to poor infrastructure.

Positive

- 1 Protection of selected natural environments or prevention of further ecological decline
- 2 Preservation of historic buildings and monuments
- 3 Improvement of the area's appearance (visual and aesthetic)
- 4 A "clean" industry (no smokestacks)
- 5 Market he places without much restriction.

Social and Cultural: Social and Cultural Impacts of tourism

Negative impacts

- 1 Excessive drinking, alcoholism and gambling
- 2 Increased underage drinking
- 3 Crime, drugs and prostitution
- 4 Increased smuggling
- 5 Language and cultural effects
- 6 Unwanted lifestyle changes
- 7 Displacement of residents for tourism development
- 8 Negative changes in values and customs
- 9 Family disruption
- 10 Youth of wild style gets disrupted .
- 11 Exclusion of locals from natural resources
- 12 New cliques modify social structure
- 13 Natural, political and public relations

(The dance festival at Mamallapuram, Tamilnadu is the team to the eyes. Dances of India are conducted every year of in December)

Positive impacts

- 1 Improves quality of life/revenue gets generated.
- 2 Facilitates meeting visitors (educational experience)
- 3 Positive changes in values and customs

- 4 Promotes cultural exchange
- 5 Improves understanding of different communities
- 6 Preserves cultural identity of host population
- 7 Increases demand for historical and cultural exhibits
- 8 Greater tolerance of social differences
- 9 Satisfaction of psychological needs.

Impacts of Tourism on ecology and environment

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- define the environmental impact analysis
 - explain Environmental impact assesment
 - understand the importance of Environmental Audit
 - describe the ecological restoration and rehabilitation.
-

Environmental impact analysis: In this step, the executive needs to understand the general transport environment, which is unique as compared to other activity centres of logistics. Transportation is affected by 5 factors as follows

A Consignor : He is the firm or firm that, sends goods to his clients or consignee. In the parlance of tourism administration, he could be a producer of raw materials, foodstuff, clothes, garments, machinery, beverage, liquor etc.

B Consignee : He is the person or firm that would actually receive goods and consume these. Normally, it is a hotel, tourist resort, restaurant, disco club, bar, Highway motel theme park etc. Goods received by it are used in various activities that, in turn, increase the influx of tourists. The organisation must also have an unloading system and godown to store the products being received by it.

C State : In India, the government influences the policies and activities related to logistics. It decides the rates of fuels, prices of automobiles (through GST upto 18% for notels), parts of automobiles. The transporter passes these costs on to the client. Many transport carriers like the TCI are controlled by the government.

Further, the government is also responsible for developing rail, road, water and air networks. Transporters alone cannot execute these Herculean tasks. Thus, the government builds the infrastructure that supports the activities related to logistics.

D Masses : The masses demand products at various locations. The firms that supply these goods to the masses must deliver the right quantities at the right places and at the right time. Moreover, the masses need the products at right prices.

The natural corollary of this fact is that transport costs must not be very high, lest the ultimate customers should avoid buying these goods. If a marketer tries to reduce the delivery time, the cost of transportation

increases and vice versa. Further, safety norms must also be adhered to during the course of actual physical transportation of goods. Finally, the government also regulates such activities of transport systems as generate pollution or other hazards.

Note that provision of a healthy pollution-free environment to the citizens of a country is the responsibility of the State. That is why, Delhi has become the only city in the world to have a local public transport system with CNG as its basic fuel.

In the context, of logistics, the government can take steps to protect the ecology and environment of the country. It is quite natural that the transporter as well as the client would have to conform to such norms.

E Transporter : The carrier or transporter of goods is a private business firm in most of the cases.. Its objective is to maximise profits and minimise costs. He has to pick the goods from a common collection point (at the origin) and deliver the same to a common delivery point (destination). Nowadays, door-to-door cargo services are being provided by many a transporter.

Environmental impact assessment: Environmental impact assessment is, in its simplest form, a planning tool that is now generally regarded as an integral component of sound decision making. As a planning tool, it has information gathering and decision making components, which provide the decision maker with an objective basis for granting or denying approval for a proposed development.

Some definitions of the EIA are as follows

- A It is a process, which attempts to identify, predict and assess the likely consequences of proposed development activities.
- B It is a planning aid that is concerned with identifying, predicting and assessing impacts arising from the proposed activities such as policies, programmes, plans and development projects, which may affect the environment.

Organisation and functions of UNWTO, TAAI, IATO, IATA and PATA

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- **define World Tourism Organisation**
- **state the membership of the WTO**
- **describe the functions of the WTO**
- **differentiate between associate members and affiliate members.**

World Tourism Organisation (WTO) : The World Tourism Organization (WTO.) is an inter-governmental technical body. It deals with all the aspects of travel tourism. It was formed on January 2, 1975 out of the deliberations of the International Union of Official Travel Organisations (IUOTO). Travel and tourism activities had expanded in terms of revenue and geographical terrain during the late seventies of the last century,

- A The fundamental aim of the organisation shall be the promotion and development of tourism with a view to contributing to economic development, international understanding, peace, prosperity and universal respect for and observance of human rights and fundamental freedoms for all without distinction to race, sex, language or religion. The organisation shall take all appropriate actions to attain this objective.
- B In pursuing this aim, the organisation shall pay particular attention to the interests of the developing countries in the field of tourism.
- C In order to establish its central role in the field of tourism, the organisation shall establish and maintain effective collaboration with the appropriate organs of the United Nations and its specialised agencies. The organisation shall also seek a cooperative relationship with and participation in the activities of the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) as a participating and executing agency.

Membership of the WTO: There are three categories of members of the WTO - Full Members, Associate Members and Affiliate Members Full members are the sovereign states of the world. Associate members are the territories or groups of territories not responsible for their external relations but whose membership is approved by the country that is responsible for their external relations.

Affiliate members are inter-governmental and non-government organizations, which are concerned with special activities in the field of tourism. In the third category (that of Affiliate Members), commercial and non commercial bodies and associations are also included.

Activities of the WTO: The following activities have been identified:

- A It acts as a clearing house for all available set of information on international and domestic tourism. It handles statistical data, legislations and regulations

and special events-as well as its systematic collection, analysis and dissemination.

- B It makes travel easier by reducing and simplifying frontier formalities and removing barriers to free movements of tourists.
- C It organizes and convenes international conferences, seminars, round table discussions and technical meetings on all the aspects of tourism.
- D It prepares draft international agreements on tourism.
- E It examines vocational training programmes to contribute to the establishment of suitable teaching programmes that are tailored to specific needs. Developing countries are the most eligible candidates for such programmes and training schedules.
- F The collects and updates available sets of information related to training requirements.

Functions of the WTO: The WTO functions through its vital organs. These are as follows:

- A General Assembly :** This is the most powerful organ and also, a sovereign body of the WTO. It comprises delegates representing full members, associate members and representatives of affiliate members. It meets every two years. It may consider any question and make recommendations on any matter within the operational gamut of the WTO.

The General Assembly has 6 regional Commissions. The regions covered are-Africa, the Americas, Europe, Middle East, Pacific and East Asia and finally, South Asia. These regional commissions ensure the implementation of the decisions and recommendations of the General Assembly and Executive Council.

They are responsible only for their respective regions. Regional secretariats are an integral part of the WTO Secretariat. These help the regional commissions in organizing and covering the conferences and meetings being arranged in their respective areas/regions.

- B Executive Council:** It comprises full members elected by the General Assembly, for every 5 full members of the WTO, there is 1 member of the Executive Council. The Council consults the Secretary General for the implementation of the decisions and recommendations of the General Assembly. It submits all such reports to the General Assembly. This Council meets at least twice on an annual basis.

C Secretariat : The Secretariat consists of the Secretary General and such staff as the organisation may require. The Secretary General is responsible for carrying out the general policy and work programme of the organization in accordance with the directions of the General Assembly and Executive Council. The Secretary General ensure the legal representation of the organization.

Member states of the WTO: The following are the members States of the World Tourism Organization :

- | | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 Afghanistan | 2. Algeria | 3 Angola |
| 4 Argentina | 5 Australia | 6 Austria |
| 7 Bahrain | 8 Bangladesh | 9 Belgium |
| 10 Benin | 11 Bolivia | 12 Brazil |
| 13 Bulgaria | 14 Burkina | 15 Burundi |
| 16 Cameroon | 17 Canada | 18 Chad |
| 19 Chile | 20 China | 21 Colombia |
| 22 Cuba | 23 Cyprus | 24 Czech Republic |
| 25 Dominican Republic | 26 Ecuador | 27 Egypt |
| 28 Ethiopia | 29 Finland | 30 France |
| 31 Gabon | 32 Gambia | 33 Germany |
| 34 Ghana | 35. Greece | 36 Grenada |
| 37 Guinea-Bissau | 38 Haiti | 39 Hungary |
| 40 India | 41 Indonesia | 42 Iran |
| 43 Islamic Republic of Iraq, | 44 Israel | 45 Italy |
| 46 Ivory Coast | 47 Jamahiriya | 48 Jamaica |
| 49 Japan | 50 Jordan | 51 Kenya |
| 52 Korea | 53 Republic of (South Korea) | |
| 54 Kuwait | 55 Laos | 56 Lebanon |
| 57 Lesotho | 58 Libya | 59 Malawi |
| 60 Malaysia | 61 Maldives | 62 Mali |
| 63 Malta | 64 Mauritania | 65 Mauritius |
| 66 Mexico | 67 Mangdiia | 68 Morocco |
| 69 Nepal | 70 Netherlands | 71 Nicaragua |
| 72 Niger | 73 Nigeria | 74 Pakistan |
| 75 Panama | 76 Peru | 77 Philippines |
| 78 Poland | 79 Portugal | 80 Rwanda |
| 81 San Marino | 82 Senegal | 83 Seychelles |
| 84 Sierra Leone | 85 Spain | 86 Sri Lanka |
| 87 Sudan | 88 Switzerland | 89 Syria |
| 90 Tanzania | 91 Thailand | 92 Togo |
| 93 Tunisia | 94 Turkey | 95 Uganda |

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 96 United Arab Emirates | 97 The United States of America |
| 98 Uruguay | 99 Venezuela |
| | 100 Vietnam |
| 101 Yemen Arab Republic | 102 Zaire |
| 103 Zambia and | 104 Zimbabwe |

Associate members of the WTO: The WTO has 4 associate members. These are as follows:

- 1 Aruba
- 2 Macao
- 3 Netherlands Antiles
- 4 Puerto Rico.

Affiliate members of the WTO: The WTO has 170 affiliate members that represent the following sectors of the gargantuan field of tourism;

- A Technical and vocational training
- B Accommodation and catering
- C Travel agencies and organizations
- D Transport and activities related thereto
- E Financial institutions
- F Research centres and advisory bodies
- G Development agencies
- H Promotion
- I Press and information
- J Social and leisure tourism
- K Professional associations and unions.

Permanent observer of the WTO: WTO also has Holy See (the Vatican) as its permanent observer.

General programmes of action of the WTO: The WTO is a leading intergovernmental organisation. It allows the governments and the firms of the tourism industry to address such issues as are of vital importance for all of these governments and firms. The general programme of work coveri6 broad area's, as follows :

- A Cooperation for Development: Advice and assistance to governments on a wide range of tourism issues, including master plans and feasibility studies, investment needs and technology transfer for marketing and promotion.
- B Education and Training: It assists in the organisation of tourism education and training, including courses on educating educators and short-term and distance learning courses. It has also created a network of WTO education and training centres.
- C Statistics and Market Research: The WTO functions as the foremost centre for collection, analysis and dissemination of tourism data from over 180 countries and territories. A series of publications is produced by it for its members and the industry.
- D Environmental and Planning: The WTO is working for sustainable tourism development and the translation of environmental concerns into practical measures.

It participates in forums and summits that are related to global issues on environment.

E **Communication and Documentation:** Its communication and documentation work relates to publication and distribution of several books, monographs, technical papers and news and information bulletins such as Yearbook of Tourism Trends, World Directory of Tourism Education, National and Regional Planning and Sustainable Tourism Guides etc. The communication and documentation section of the WTO works as a press contact point.

F **Quality of Tourism Services:** The WTO is working towards the removal of barriers to tourism and encouraging the liberalization of trade and tourism services. Additional activities in this area are measures for improving health and food safety and making tourism merge accessible to the handicapped.

G Before the cut break of the pandemic covid 19, Tourism section stood at an all-time high of 1 out of 10 jobs created would wide. The international tourism naval reached 1.5 billion doing 2019.

Organisation and functions of TAAI

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- define TAAI
- state the origin of TAAI
- explain the objectives of TAAI
- describe the function of TAAI.

TAAI: The full form of the TAAI is the Travel Agents Association of India. It is one the most respected organization of India in the field of tourism and travel.

Origin of the TAAI: After independence, the industries of India started organizing and reorganizing themselves. The tourist industry was one such industry. Many travel agents started forming their own companies after 1947. In 1952, an All India Travel Agents Association was formed. In 1954, the Government of India also recognised the need for developing tourism facilities and promoting travel agents.

Objectives of the TAAI: The objective of the TAAI is to safeguard and protect the interests of its members by maintaining a constant dialogue with the concerned government agencies.

Organisation of the TAAI: The TAAI has registered office in Mumbai and regional offices in Kolkata, Chennai and New Delhi.

Functions of the TAAI: The TAAI performs various activities that are required to protect the interests of its members. It also organises an annual convention. This convention is attended by the representatives of travel agencies as well as by the members of the concerned government departments / ministries. Besides, representatives of many non-government organisations (which are related to the travel and tourism industry) also attend this conference on a regular basis.

The Association also publishes a monthly magazine, Travel News, which is circulated among its members. In this magazine, the Association informs about the latest regulations and laws that affect its members. It also gives news of various tourist places and vital data/information related to tourism and travel. It tries to disseminate information related to the professional and commercial needs of its members.

Organisation and functions of IOTO

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- define IOTO
- explain origin of IOTO
- know the objective of the IOTO
- describe the function of the IOTO.

1 **IOTO:** It is an important organization that serves the interests, in the parlance of Tourism, of the nations of the Indian Ocean Rim.

Objective of the IOTO: In its Vision Statement, the IOTO stated that every country in the Indian ocean region has its own unique tourism products, image, strategies and structure. These are the tourism issues of common interest and mutual benefit within this (Rim) region.

Functions of the IOTO: The IOTO performs the following functions:

A It positions and markets the Indian Ocean Rim region as a unique tourism destination area.

B It facilitates cooperation and co-ordination among the members of the IOTO.

C It promotes the expansion of appropriate transport services and facilities to and within the Indian Ocean region.

D It undertakes liaison activities on behalf of its members with governments and authorities to reduce travel barriers.

E It encourages all the members to support healthy 'environmental tourism practices for the long-term benefit of their respective groups/communities.

F It facilitates dissemination of information and exchange of skills in the Indian Ocean Rim region.

Members of the IOTO: The countries, which are the members of the IOTO, are-Australia, Bangladesh, Christmas Island, Comoros, Myanmar, Oman, Pakistan, Reunion, Seychelles, India, Singapore, Mozambique, Yemen, Mauritius, Thailand, Maldives, Malaysia, Tanzania, Madagascar, Sri Lanka, Kenya, South Africa, Indonesia and Somalia. These 25 countries area called Core Countries of the IOTO.

Other members of the IOTO include governments, tourism firms, carriers, hotels, resorts, tour operators and other operators of tourism industries from the Core Countries, which have been mentioned-earlier.

Headquarters of the IOTO: The Secretariat of the IOTO is located at Perth (Australia).

Organisation and functions of IATA and ICAO

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- define IATA and ICAO
- state the aim of IATA and ICAO
- describe the functions of IATA and ICAO

IATA: Its full form is International Air Transport Association. It is a voluntary organization of the major airlines of the world. It has decided a common set of fares. It also takes care of coordination among airlines and various currencies of the world. It also helps in the connection of routes of international airlines so that interline transfers could be effected with finesse.

Aims of the IATA: The following are the aims of the IATA:

- To promote safe, regular and economic air transport for the benefit of the people of the / world to foster air commerce and study the problems connected there with.
- To provide means for collaboration among air transport enterprises engaged directly or indirectly in international air transport service.
- To cooperate with the International Civil Aviation Organisation and the international organisation.

Functions of the IATA: The IATA acts as a protector of interests of the members airlines. It publishes fares of various sectors in trade journals. It approves travel-agents. It gives the approved travel agents vital data related to air transport operations.

It trains the employees of airlines in the vital areas of air transport such as air ticketing, cargo handling etc. It also publishes statistical data related to air transport. Such data are used by airlines, travel agents and tour operators (procedures) to forecast the demand for tourism products/ services in the future.

The IATA binds it's members with one spirit and takes care of their interests at all the international forums.

Nowadays, its operations and activities are fully compatible with Computerised Reservation System (CRS). Note that major two CRS technologies / packages are in vogue in the world- Amadeus and Galileo.

Performance of the IATA: The IATA has lived up to its reputation. Those travel agencies, which are recognised by the IATA, enjoy patronage of large numbers of clients. Those agencies, which are not approved by the IATA, are deemed unreliable.

This organisation has also protected the interests of airlines in various areas. The IATA trains students in airline

ticketing", cargo management and other vital operations of air carriers.

To become IATA membership: To become a IATA membership, the travel agent should fulfil the following criteria

- Be raptured with IATAN
- Post a knowledgeable person with work known capability.
- Age showable 18+
- The agency should work for at least 20hrs. Per week.
- The turn over should be our 4, lakh per annum before applying for the decency.

The ICAO: It is the abbreviated form of International Civil Aviation Organisation. This organization worked as a provisional body from 1945. In 1947, after the end of the Second World War, the representatives of the governments of various nations met at Chicago (the USA), On April 4, 1947, the ICAO was finally established as a world body. The convention through which, this body emerged, is called The Chicago Convention.

Objectives of the ICAO: The ICAO has the following objectives;

- Study of problems of international civil aviation.
- Establishing international standards and regulations in civil aviation.
- Promotion of safety in international civil aviation.

Functions of the ICAO: The ICAO performs the following functions:

- It gives statistical and economic data to governments of its member nations and also, to those airlines that are in its fold.
- It makes incessant efforts to reduce red tape prevalent in customs formalities around the world.
- It helps developing nations get the benefits of air transport.
- It encourages the use of safety measures, uniform regulations and use of new technical equipment.
- It has evolved a pattern/set-up, for providing meteorological services.

- F It makes contributions in the fields of air traffic regulation, communications, radio beacons and ranges, search and rescue operations and other facilities that are needed for safe international flights.
- G It gives technical support to the airlines of developing nations to train personnel of such nations in the field of civil aviation.
- H It has simplified customs immigration procedures and public health regulations that are applicable in the field of international air transport.
- I It also drafts international air conventions and economic aspects of international air transport.

Freedoms of air as established by the ICAO: The ICAO has defined 6 freedoms of air. These are as follows:

- A Freedom to over-fly another country's territory without landing
- B Freedom to land in another country for technical purposes only ie, change of crew, technical, engineering assistance etc.
- C Freedom to carry passengers, cargo and postal airmail from a foreign country.
- D Freedom to carry passengers, cargo and postal airmail from a foreign country to one's own country.
- E Freedom to carry passengers, cargo and postal airmail from a foreign country to another foreign country not involving one's own country.
- F Freedom to carry passenger, cargo, postal airmail from a foreign country to another foreign country via own country.

Sub voce: Freedoms of Traffic Rights are obtained, for a particular country, by the ICAO through agreements with different countries.

Organisation and functions of PATA

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- define PATA
- state the activities of PATA
- understand about membership of PATA
- describe Chapters of the PATA
- narrate functions of PATA.

Pacific Asia Travel Association (PATA): The Pacific Asia Travel Association (PATA) was founded in the year 1951 as a non-profit body to stimulate interest in the Pacific region as a vacation land. It was also created to develop, promote and facilitate travel to and among Pacific destination. The Association had 44 founder members. The founder, Lorrin Thurston, was a leading newspaper publisher in Honolulu.

Activities of the PATA: The activities of the PATA include assisting small and newly created destinations to develop their infrastructure, providing expertise, and planning group travel schemes, destination, hotels operations and discounts. It provides information and practical experience in the field of tourism. The annual conferences of the

Bilateral agreements under the aegis of the ICAO:

Under these agreements, each State designates its scheduled carriers. The major data set that is to be given by each country is as follows :-

- A Designated carrier(s) (which airline will operate).
- B City/Airport identified (which city and which airport).
- C Type of Aircraft.
- D Frequency of services (weekly, daily or twice a week).
- E Traffic rights (whether 3rd, 4th, 5th or 6th freedom of traffic right).

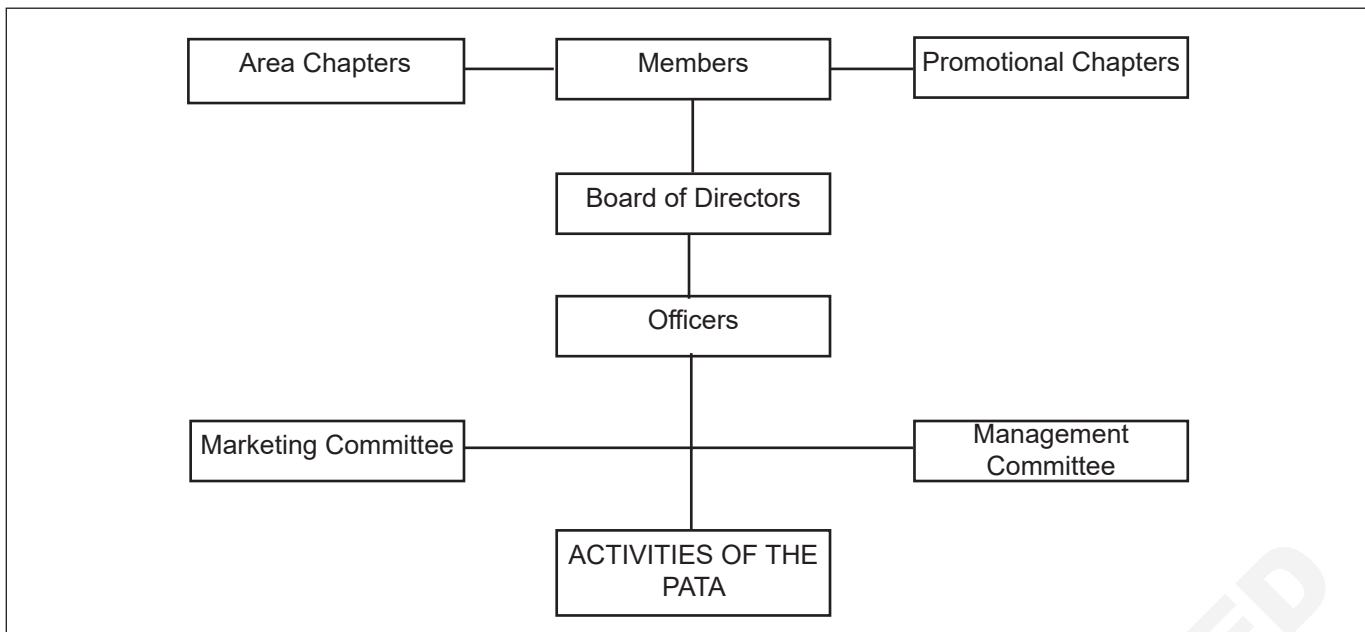
Aims of the ICAO: The ICAO strives to achieve the following objectives:

- A Ensure the safe and orderly growth of international civil aviation throughout the world.
- B Encourage the art of aircraft design and operation for peaceful purposes.
- C Encourage the development of airways, airports and air navigation facilities for international civil aviation.
- D Meet the needs of people of the world for safe, regular, efficient and economical air transport.
- E Prevent economic wastage caused by unreasonable competition.
- F Ensure the right of contracting. All the States are fully respected and every contracting State has a fair opportunity to operate international airlines.
- G Avoid discrimination between contracting States.
- H Promote safety of flight in international navigation.
- I Promote the development of all aspects of international civil aviation.

PATA and its workshops provide greater scope to its members to share their ideas and exchange views about promotion of tourism.

The PATA staff are experts in to their respective fields of marketing and research and regularly exchange information with others. Travel research, marketing, training programmes and the development of services are a part of the operational gamut of this globally known organisation.

Membership of the PATA: PATA has 9 categories of membership - active government, associate government, active carrier, associate carrier, act Industry, allied, affiliated allied, associate and sustaining. Active government members consist of the primary



List of active members of the PATA: There are 5 categories of members of the PATA. These are-Active Governments, Active Industry, Active Carriers, Associate Carriers and finally, Associate Governments. In this section, we are appending the lists of all the components of each and every category.

Active governments under the PATA

- A American Samoa Office of Tourism.
- B Australian Tourist Commission.
- C Bangladesh Parjatan Corporation.
- D Tourism Bureau of the Republic of China.
- E Cook Islands Tourist Authority.
- F Fiji Visitors Bureau.
- G Guam Visitors Bureau.
- H Hawaii, Department of Planning and Economic Development.
- I Hong Kong Tourist Association.
- J India, Department of Tourism.
- K Indonesia, Directorate General of Tourism.
- L Japan National Tourist Organization.
- M Kiribati, Ministry of Natural Resource Development.
- N Korea National Tourism Corporation.
- O Macau, Department of Information and Tourism.
- P Tourist Development Corporation of Malaysia.
- Q Mexican National Tourist Council.
- R Micronesia, Department of Development Services.
- S Nepal, Department of Tourism.
- T New Caledonia, Office du Tourism.
- U New Zealand Government Tourist and Publicity Department.

V Pakistan, Ministry of Culture and Tourism.

W Papua New Guinea, Office of Tourism.

X Philippines, Ministry of Tourism.

Y Singapore Tourist Promotion Board.

Z Solomon Islands Tourist Authority.

AA Sri Lanka, Sri Lanka Tourist Board.

BB Tahiti Tourist Development Board.

CC Thailand, Tourism Authority
 DD United States Travel-Service.

EE Russia Intourist.

FF Vanuatu Tourist Information Bureau.

GG Western Samoa, Department of Economic Development.

Active industries under the PATA

- A American Express Company.
- B Hilton International.
- C Hotel Indonesia International Corporation Ltd.
- D Unitours.

Active carriers under the PATA

- A Aeronaves de Mexico.
- B Air India.
- C Air Lanka.
- D Air Nauru.
- E Air New Zealand.
- F Air Niugini.
- G Air Pacific.
- H All Nippon Airways.
- I Aloha Airlines.
- J American Airlines.

K Ansett Airlines of Australia Air Lines.
 L Bangladesh Biman.
 M Bouraq Indonesia Airlines.
 N British Caledonian Airways Ltd.
 O CP Air.
 P Cathay Pacific Airways.
 Q China Air Lines.
 R Condor Flugdienst.
 S Continental Airlines.
 T Delta Steamship Lines.
 U Deutsche Lufthansa.
 V Finn Air.
 W Garuda Indonesian Airways.
 X Gulf Air Company.
 Y Hawaian Air.
 Z Indian Airlines
 AA Japan Airlines.
 BB KLM Royal Dutch Airlines.
 CC Korean Air.
 DD Malaysian Airlines System.
 EE Merpati Nusantara Airlines.
 FF Mexicana Airlines.
 GG Northwest Orient Airlines.
 HH Pakistan International Airlines.
 II Pan American World Airways.
 JJ Philippine Airlines.
 KK Qantas Airways Ltd.
 LL Royal Nepal Airlines.
 MM Royal Viking Line..
 NN Scandinavian Airlines System.
 OO Singapore Airlines Ltd.
 PP Sitmar Cruises.
 QQ Thai Airways International.
 RR Transamerical Airlines.
 SS Trans-Australia Airlines.
 TT Trans World Airlines.
 UU UTA French Airlines.
 VV United Airlines.
 WW Western Airlines.
 XX World Airways.

Associate carriers of the PATA

A Ansett-Pioneer Road Passenger Group.

B Japanese National Railways.

C Mid Pacific Air.

Associate governments of the PATA

A Anaheim Visitor and Convention Bureau.

B Australian Standing Committee of Tourism.

C Bali Government Tourism Office.

D California Office of Tourism.

E Canberra Tourist Bureau (Australia).

F Central Java Provincial Tourist Office.

G East Java Regional Tourist Development Bureau.

H Gangweon-do Provincial Government (Korea).

I Hawaii Visitors Bureau. KSi

J India Tourism Development Corporation.

K Jakarta Metropolliair5roUrisni"Board.

L Kementerian Tenaga Rakyat (Malaysia).

M Long Beach Convention and Tourism Bureau.

N Korea Bureau of Tourism, Ministry of Transportation.

O Marianas Visitors Bureau.

P Melbourne Tourism Authority.

Q New South Wales Department of Tourism.

R New Zealand National Travel Association.

S Northern Territory Tourist Commission.

T Pahang State Development Corporation (Malaysia).

U Penang State Government.

V Philippine Convention Bureau.

W Philippine Tourism Authority.

X Queensland Tourist and Travel Corporation.

Y Sabah Tourism Promotion Corporation.

Z Sarawak Tourist Development Commission.

AA Seoul Metropolitan Government.

BB Travel Alberta.

CC Victoria Government Travel Authority.

DD West Java Regional Tourism Office.

Functions of the PATA: The functions of the PATA are as follows:

A Pacific Travel Conference and Workshop: During the first four months every year, the PATA sponsors and organizes a conference of its members for reviewing the progress, exchanging ideas and planning for future programmes. These meetings are held in different regions of the world and attract a large number of delegates. The conference also serves as a promotional tool for the host government,

B Marketing: A long-range marketing programme coordinates all the promotional functions of the PATA.

It includes: (a) advertising publicity and promotional and (b) research and development. The Association prepares and distributes sales aids and sales promotion material to travel agents and tour operators throughout the world.

A trade advertising programme is directed towards travel agents to sell the PATAs consumer advertising and sales promotion tools. Weekly news releases, special feature stories and photographs are given to newspapers, magazines and radio and TV networks by the Pacific News Service.

The Association also organises research seminars, research presentations and technical assistance programmes for its members. Collection, analysis and dissemination of Pacific travel data are also the vital functions of the Association,

The pata and india: India was admitted, as an associate government member of Pacific Asia Travel Association in 1957. After the specific request of the government, the constitution of the PATA was amended suitably to enable India and other South Asian countries to become Associate Government Members. In 1964, at Jakarta, India became an active Member of the Association. The PATA was formed to promote traffic to Pacific countries only.

Committees of the PATA: These are two Committees, as follows:

A **Technical Committee of the PATA** : Technical experts from member airlines are the members of this Committee. They give their suggestions for designs and modifications for aircraft to the manufacturers. Airlines must buy only those aircraft, which are certified by the PATA Technical Committee

B **Tariffs Committee of the PATA:** Tariff experts of the member airlines are the members of PATA Tariff committee. They can seek the suggestions of other PATA members like the representatives of travel agencies, transporters, hotel owners etc. But these members do not have any right to vote. Voting rights are vested with active members.

Membership of the PATA: There are two categories of PATA members, as follows:

A Active Members.

B Associate Members.

Airlines, which operate at the international level, are Active Members. Airlines, which are purely domestic airlines, can be Associate Members. Both these types of members can attend meetings of the Tariff Committee. However, only Active to vote; Associate Members do not enjoy this right.

Aims of the PATA: There are 3 aims for which, the staff of the PATA relentlessly strive. These are as follows;

A To promote safe, regular and economical air transport for the benefit of the people of the world to foster air commerce and study the problems connected therewith.

B To Provide means for collaboration among air transport enterprises engaged directly or indirectly in international air transport service.

C To cooperative with International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) and other international Organisations.

The PATA is a voluntary, non-exclusive, non-political, non-profit and domestic organisation. It provides technical, medical, legal, security, and administrative solutions to these problems. These activities are grouped under the heading of Trade Association.

The PATA meets its expenses by getting subscriptions from its membership in proportion to their annual turnovers. It also provides some services to the non-members as well but it charges for such services. These are called Self Supporting Charges. The PATA tries to simplify the procedures and documentation within the airlines.

Trade association activities of the PATA: The PATA performs the following 4 activities:

Technical activities of the PATA

A Through its Technical Committee, the PATA exchanges information and experience with all the airlines. It gives practical advice to governments and act as a guide to future development in transport.

B The PATA has played and continues to play, an important part in the drafting of the ICAO Standards and Recommended Practices, which comprise the technical regulation of civil aviation.

C It participates in technical activities related to avionics and telecommunications. It deals with dealing with air-to-ground and ground-to-air communications, radio navigation and landing aids. All of these: contribute to cost efficient on time journeys.

D In the field of engineering and environment, it covers the latest technologies, onboard the aircraft and on the ground It also defines airline policies on important environmental issues, including air-noise aviation fuel standards and emissions from aircraft engines.

E Airports with responsibility for defining the PATA policy on airline requirements for airport terminals, expansion of existing airports or development of new ones.

F Flight operations, including factors that affect the safe operation of aircraft such as air traffic control systems, procedures for operating in low visibility conditions, operational equipment to be provided at airports and flight crew training.

G Monitoring of health standards for flight crew, hygiene and sanitation in aircraft, catering and care of disabled passengers.

H Simplification of bureaucratic procedures such as customs and immigration to speed up the flow of inbound and outbound passengers and cargo traffic.

I Security is one of the PATA's most vital activities. Actions related to it are co-ordinated by the security

advisory committee, which groups them under property crime (theft), revenue crime (fraud) and airport and aircraft protection (terrorism).

- J The PATA security services work in close liaison with INTERPOL, local police forces and airport and airline staff.

Air law of the PATA: The Legal Committee of the PATA, composed of experts in air law, is concerned with all the legal matters of international air transport. Legal aspects of airline documents are also taken care of by this Committee. The Committee has prepared the legal foundation for the present system of uniform traffic documents and procedures that can be used throughout the network of PATA members' routes.

Financial activities of the PATA: The PATA financial committee deals with all the aspects of accounting and settlements between airlines in respect of business they do with one another or on one another's behalf. It is also concerned with data collection and other problems in regard to currency and exchange, taxation, charges, insurance and statistics.

Example : The clearing house of the PATA enables the members to collect and pay their worldwide debts simultaneously by a single cash settlement in either Dollars or convertible Pounds Sterling. This clearing house was opened in 1947 in Geneva.

Traffic coordination activities of the PATA: Worldwide Tariff Coordination Meetings (Traffic Conferences) are held as and when the members deem fit; the frequency is once a year. Meetings to review fares for passenger

tariffs are normally held in autumn; spring is the time for setting matters involving air cargo. Special meetings can be held in interim time periods and actions/decisions can be taken by mail vote, subject to the voting requirements and approvals of the respective governments.

Traffic services provided by the PATA: Traffic services have 3 main categories, as follows:

- 1 Passenger Services.
- 2 Cargo Services.
- 3 Airport Handling.

Traffic Services lead to accomplishment of Multilateral Interline Traffic Agreement (MITA). This agreement was signed among the airlines to minimise the problems of passengers. Under this agreement, more than 200 airlines handle one another's passenger and cargo traffic, tickets and airway bills on a routine basis.

Board of directors meeting of the pata

This meeting was held from September 20-22, 2002 at The Western Philippine Plaza, Manila. Mr. Ram Kohli, Secretary and Treasurer of the PATA, was honoured during this meeting.

The PATA CEO Mario nardy said that the annual summit of PATA 2021 will take place online from April 27-29. The 3 day online visual event compared with the support of RAS AL Khaimah tourism dev authentic (RAKTDA) will bring together the industry shapers international thought leaders to reshape the tourism market after the pandemic.

Travel formalities - Passport, Visa, Visa formalities

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- define passengers service - travel documents
- define visa and the procedure to get it
- state importance of health requirements.
- explain baggage handling.

Passengers Services-Travel Documents

Passport: It is a official travel document issued by a competent public authority or official; the sovereign head of the country. The President of India in our country. A Passport is a privilege issued to citizens of a country, alien residing in that country for a period of time (extract from TIM). It is every citizens birthright.

Passport: It is a document provided to the individual for the purpose of identify and permitted to travel international permitted countries.

Now many countries have issued biometric passports that contain an embedded microchip making than quick, readable and difficult to counterfeit.

There are different types of Passport

- 1 Ordinary passport.
- 2 **Diplomatic or Counsellor Passport:** This is given to people who are the diplomatic counsellors who enjoy a special privilege.
- 3 **Red Cross Passport:** This Passport is issued to employees of Red Cross Organization. The holders of this type of Passport enjoy special privileges and lot of rights.
- 4 **Government Passport:** This Passport is issued to people who are serving as a high government official for that particular time or till they are it) the service, Once their term gets over the Passport seizes to be invalid.
- 5 **Temporary or Adhoc Passport:** This Passport is issued to people who go to HAJ. They apply a Passport to the office or if any of the owners, managers of the employers of the office perform all functions of the type commonly known as porter service a government body called as WAKF Board where it issues a temporary Passport,
- 6 **Family passports:** This issued to a whole family there is one passport holder, who may travel alone (or) with other, family members included in the passports.

Collective passport: It is mainly for the groups to travel together for a particular distinction esp group of short child's/college students tour on zip to foreign country.

Method of Application: Where an organization considers that they meet the necessary requirements to warrant approval as an IATA Passenger Sales Agency, an application should be made as follows:

A Demand Draft for Rs. 26895/- in favour of Agency Investigation Panel No. 9, payable in Bombay must be forwarded along with the application.

- 1 The name used by all applicant is identical or similar to that of an LATA Agent or an IATA Member.
- 2 Any material statement made in the application is inaccurate or incomplete.
- 3 That the record of the applicant or any of its managerial staff or of its principles stockholders, director! officers, is unsatisfactory with regard to adherents to ethical business practises.
- 4 That any person holding a Financial interest in, or employed-in any capacity (including that of Director) by, the applicant has, hold a financial interest in, or was so employed by an Agent, who has been removed from the agency list or suspended; provided that the Agency board may nevertheless approve the application if it is satisfied that such person did not participate in the acts or omissions that caused such remove or suspension or it is satisfied that the applicant can be relied on to comply with the terms of Sad Agency Agreement, these Rules and other applicable Resolutions.
- 5 The Seamans Identity Card.

A valid Passport given to a sailor for each care you for every country, the validity being for a longer period of time.

Passport Details

a The Passport Number,

Place of Issue PO]

Date of Issue DO]

Date of Expiry DOE where the Passport is valid for 10 yrs

b Name of the Passport holder Date of Birth. Place of Birth.

c Emigration details VISAS

The "Visitors Intended Stay Abroad" may be termed as the permission granted by the foreign government representation to any eligible person permitting him or her to enter arid stay in that foreign country for a specific purpose. The issue of the visas are of the various following types depending upon the nature of the person's v is it abroad. They are:

- a Tourist Visa' is Visa is available easily. The documents required fora Singapore visa are

- A valid Passport
- A visa application form
- A return OK ticket
- b Immigrant Visa
- c Student Visa
- d Employment Visa
- c Medical Visa
- f Cultural Visa
- g Business Visa
- h Pilgrim Visa

The visa is granted subject to eligibility on application made to the representative of that foreign country (which may be High Commission/Embassy/Consulate) in the prescribed form, supported by the necessary documents a rid with the required number of photographs.

Visas when granted or approxed, re-endorsed on the passport, detailing the period of the stay as also the period of entry as also the period of stay in that country. These may be for Single or Multiple entries.

It is important to note that though visas are granted at the point of origin they will be finally approved by the authorities at the port of arrival. Landing at the foreign port without the proper Visa, may result in the deportation of the person.

Though visa is a compulsory requirement they may be granted oil arrival. For each country's particular information reference may be made to the TIM. In addition to the above there are other types of Visas

- 1 A Single entry visa
- 2 A Double entry visa
- 3 A Multiple entry visa
- 4 TWOV Transit without a visa

A Single entry visa gives ~ right in a passenger to visit a country only with validity of 6 months. E4G, BOM/ROM/ LON/BOM Single entry visa.

A Double Entry Visa gives right to entry the country twice with a validity of 6 months. EG, BOM/ROM/ BOM double entry visa.

A Multiple Entry Visa is given to students who go to study for more than 3 years and also to businessmen with a validity period of 5 years.

TWOV in certain countries the passenger is allowed to leave the airport for a short period. This permission is granted only if the passenger has confirmed reservations for onward journey.

Immigration Visa a person should have local sponsor in the country he wishes to immigrate. Proper verification papers have to be kept for obtaining a PCC-Police Clearance Certificate. The Passport officer of India gets the clearance of the concerned area issuing the PCC. A

Person cannot immigrate if he has any dues to the Govt. The Income Tax clearance has also to be given by any businessman.

Foreign Exchange: There are a lot of rules and procedures for obtaining Foreign Exchange. In India RBI is the highest Financial authority which has a say in the foreign exchange transactions. Most of the banks also have foreign exchange counters.

We can make use of 2000 USD under the FERA (Foreign Exchange Regulation Act) per year. The Foreign Exchange is given by way of cash or Travellers Cheques in terms of US Dollar.

Categories of Passengers entitled to Foreign Exchange

Tourists: There are not many formalities to get foreign exchange each for tourists. An A2/BTQ (Basic Travel Quota) form is to be filled up which is divided into 2 parts-

Travel purpose: The Travel Amount has to be specified along with the route and the name of the airline/s.

Non travel purpose: Foreign Exchange can be obtained for purposes other than Tourist purposes. They are

Educational purposes: A TRS (Travelling form for Students) is to be filled by students for obtaining Foreign exchange permit along with:

- A valid passport.
- Bonafide Admission letter from the university. Form 120
- Latest marks card
- Carry estimated cay invoice bill.

The questionnaire given by the bank.

Health Documents: This is on a prescribed form of the WHO and is normally supplied by the airline. The health documents may be required for:

Yellow Fever: In case of primary vaccination, the certificate is valid for ~ 10 years beginning 10 days after primary vaccination. For e.g.~ if the primary vaccination is taken on August, 1, 1989, the certificate will be valid from August, 11, 1989. In case of re-vaccination with in the 10 years validity~ the certificate will be valid for another 10 years beginning oh the date of re-vaccination. However the old certificate has to be shown during the first 10 days after re-vaccination.

Cholera: In case of a primary vaccination, the certificate is valid for 6 months, beginning 6 days after the first injection. For e.g., if the first injection is taken on Aug 1, the certificate will be valid from Aug 7 to Feb 7.

In case of Re-vaccination within the 6 month period, the validity will be for 6 months, beginning on the date of re-vaccination. However, the old certificate has to be shown during the first 6 days after revaccination.

A need for health certificate depends on where your passenger has come from and whether he has stayed for sometime in an infected area. In some countries, if

some zones are infected by Cholera or Yellow fever you don't require health certificates, but for precaution sake advice your passenger to vaccinate before visiting certain tropical regions of Africa and S. America where these diseases are prevalent.

The need for Vaccination certificates should be determined as per the following criteria:

- a Certificate required for exit from a country of Origin.
- b Certificate required for Transit countries.
- c Certificate required for entry into and exit from the country of destination.
- d Certificate required for Re-entry into the country of origin.

Airport Tax: The information on Airport Tax is available in the TIM (Travel Information Manual) in alphabetical order.

Baggage

Terms and conditions: Baggage can be termed as articles, effects and other personal property of passengers containing item to entrance comfort during the journey. Baggage can be further defined as checked and unchecked baggage, and these are permitted by our International and Domestic Airline, subject to terms and condition governed by LATA.

Checked Baggage: Checked Baggage is the baggage, the custody of which is taken over by the Carrier at the passenger's boarding point, where it is repossessed by the passenger on arrival. These articles are labelled with number tag showing their destination, the counter-foil of this tag is attached to the passengers ticket for identification on arrival).

Unchecked Baggage: Unchecked Baggage is the baggage, the custody of which is retained by the passenger during his flight. It can be placed in the cabin, either in the covered overhead cabinet or under the seat, depending on the interior arrangement in the cabin its also called cabin baggage.

The following articles can duly labelled "CABIN" are suitable to be carried in the cabin:

- a Fragile and Perishable articles
- b Jewellery.
- c Reasonable amount of study materials
- d Portable typewriters.
- e Portfolios.
- f Negotiable papers, samples.
- g Computers and briefcases.

Free baggage allowance: Each PAX is allowed to carry certain amount of baggage free of charge depending upon his class of journey as per conditions laid down uniformly for all carriers by IATA. The permissible limit for the quantity of baggage to be carried is classified into two concepts.

- 1 Weight Concept
- 2 Piece Concept

The routing and in some cases the Carrier determines which of these two concepts should be used in each particular case.

- a Weight Concept

The allowance ~ per PAX paying adult fare or child paying 50% fare are:

F/B Class 40 Kgs.

C/J/Business/Executive Class 30 Kgs.

Y/Economy Class 20 Kgs.

Infants paying only 10% of the fare are not eligible for any free baggage allowance.

- b Piece Concept: In some areas and for certain age is based on the number of pieces of PAX baggage and their size. This depends on whether the airline has adopted the Piece Concept, and may apply only to the sector concerned.

The allowance for piece concept is as follows

- a First Class/Executive Class: The pieces of baggage for which the sum of the three outside dimensions of each piece should not exceed 158 cms/62 inches.
- b Economy Class: Two pieces of baggage for which the sum of the three outside dimensions of each piece is not exceeding 159 cms / 62 inches but provided the addition of such two sums shall not exceed 273 cms/107 inches.

The maximum weight for each piece of baggage may vary between 23 Kgs. and 32 Kgs. according to the Carriers.

Pooled Baggage: Two or more passengers travelling together to a common destination on the same flight, irrespective of whether they are travelling in the same class, are permitted total free baggage allowance equal to the combination of their individual allowances. They have to present themselves and their baggage at the same time for check-in. This rule applies to both the weight and pieces concept.

Free Allowance for Children/Infants: Children are entitled for the same allowance as above, but infants paying 10% fare are entitled to one checked bag of which the sum of the outside dimensions should not exceed a total of 45 inches /115 cms. in addition astriller or a collapsible push chair may be permitted.

Bulky baggage: Bulky baggage-with total linear dimensions (length, height & width) exceeding 203 cms/80 inches or weight exceeding 32 Kgs/70 lbs may be carried, provided advance arrangement is made with the airline, apart from excess baggage charge as applicable.

There are certain articles which irrespective of their actual size, are considered to be one piece of baggage at 158 cms/62 inches, such as

- One portable musical instrument, not exceeding 100 cms. i.e. 39 inches in length (it will be considered as one piece at 100 cms/39 inches)
- One ruck sack.

- One sleeping bag or bedroll.
- One pair of water skis.
- Suitably packed fishing equipment.
- One Golf bag containing Golf Clubs and on a pair of Golf shoes.
- One suitably packed bicycle (non-motorised).

Carry on Items: Besides the free baggage allowance, shown on the passenger's ticket, the following items may be carried free of charge:

- An umbrella or walking stick. An Overcoat.
- A reasonable amount of reading material for the flight.
- A collapsible invalid's wheelchair.
- A pair, of Crutches, provided it is used to assist the passenger.
- Infant's food for consumption in flight.

Excess Baggage: If the total weight or the number of piece of baggage exceeds the free baggage allowance to which passengers are entitled, they may either pay excess baggage charges, which will ensure that all the baggage is transported on the same flight as themselves, or have their excess baggage forwarded by air Cargo.

Where the Piece Concept is used to determine a passengers free baggage allowance, a flat rate is applied for oversized or additional pieces. In the case of travel to/from Canada and USA a different charge applies according to whether each piece is over or under the total of 203 cms/80 inches.

Unaccompanied Baggage: Unaccompanied baggage is the baggage that need not necessarily be transported in the same flight in which a passenger is traveling. The baggage may arrive before or after the passenger reaches his point of destinations.

Dangerous Goods: There are many items which are considered dangerous. The transport of such items by air is subject to restriction which aim at preserving the safety of air transportation. Such articles may be transported only on a Cargo aircraft and must be packed according to the regulations set by IATA. These goods should not be packed in the PAX's baggage without prior consent of the airlines.

Some of the dangerous goods are as follows

Chemicals, gases, explosives, Inflammable products, poisons radio-active or magnetic materials, mercury corrosive materials, wet cell batteries, infectious substances etc.

When in doubt about articles passengers wish to include in their baggage the respective airline should be contacted for the relevant information.

Live Animals: Pets are usually accepted if properly crated in leak proof containers and accompanied by the documents, certificates and permits required by the countries of entry or transit.

The airline should be informed at the time of making seat reservation as all the aircrafts are not equipped with adequately heated and ventilated holds for the transportation of pets.

- 1 Veterinary requirements vary from country to country and there are often additional temporary regulations.
- 2 As conditions of acceptance vary from airlines to airline always refer to the individual airline tariffs.

Baggage Labels: Airlines provide self adhesive baggage labels and it is compulsory that the passenger writes his/her name, address and Tel. No. and affixes it, both inside and outside the baggage for proper identification,

Since the use of these labels is an IATA mandatory requirement it will be ensured that they are affixed on all the checked baggage of passenger's travelling on your flights.

Special Labels

Labels for Baggage Items Resembling Cargo or of Fragile Nature

Certain items of checked baggage of passengers are as cartons, baskets, etc. are mistaken for cargo at the destination resulting in delays in delivering them and inconvenience to passengers.

In order to easily identify such an Item of checked baggage which could be mistaken for an item of cargo, special self-adhesive baggage labels will be affixed on all sides of the checked baggage. This will be in addition to the normal baggage identification tag

To ensure careful handling of fragile baggage, a tie on FRAGILE tag will be attached to the baggage in addition to the limited release tag.

Baggage Tag: Each piece of checked baggage will be labelled with a baggage tag. The tag is attached to the baggage and there are three types of baggage tags:

- 1 Online
- 2 Interline
- 3 Limited Release

An Online Baggage Tag will be used for a direct journeys not involving a stop over or interline transfer. To each piece of baggage a separate tag will be attached at checkup.

The Interline Baggage Tag will be used for journeys involving transfer of baggage on the lines of one or more carriers at intermediate points provided the passenger holds onward reservations on a 'firm' or request!' for basis. This tag is issued in duplicate and the entries will be made on the tag starting from the bottom in order of connecting flights.

Limited Release Baggage is used by the airline when any PAX has either damaged, odd size or riot properly packed baggage. This baggage tag absolve the airline from any liability towards the claim. This is the only tag where PAX countersigns which releases the airline from any liabilities whatsoever.

Calculation of Excess Baggage Charges

IATA regulations require that all weight in excess of free baggage allowance will be charged for before the passenger boards the aircraft.

The chargeable weight for excess baggage will be determined as follows;

- a Weight of the total checked and unchecked baggage if it is more than reasonable weight.
- b Round off the weight to the next higher 1/2 kg: i.e. 28.1 kg. to 28.5 kg. or 28.6 kg. to 29 kg.
- c From the total weight subtract the free baggage allowance and the balance is the excess weight.

The excess baggage rate will be: 1% of the - Normal Adult Oneway First Class Through Fare.

Carriage of Sitar, Tanpuras, Other Bulky Musical Instruments and Fragile Items in the normal circumstances passengers will not be permitted to carry bulky musical instruments or fragile items in the cabin, as these items can cause inconvenience to other passengers and be a possible hazard in turbulent weather.

Passengers will be asked to pack these items adequately for carriage in the hold. However, when the packing is not adequate for the carriage in the hold, an indemnity in prescribed form will be obtained from the PAX before accepting the items.

In such cases, a suitable Rotational If be made on the limited release tag that an indemnity bond also has been taken from the PAX.

On occasions when these items have not been properly packed/Airport Manager's may at their own discretion, allow the carriage of sitar's/tanpuras in the cabin of the aircraft along with the passenger, provided it is ascertained that the flight will be operating right upto the destination of the passenger concerned.

In order to identify and ensure that the baggage containing fragile items viz. glassware, delicate instruments, etc., is handled with care and attention, the special 'FRAGILE' labels will be attached.

Moreover PAX will have to fill up 'Baggage Indemnity Form' wherein he will have to declare that he will not hold airline responsible for any claim whatsoever.

In addition to the above mentioned formalities and requirements the PAX will have to fill a Baggage Indemnity for declaring that he is well informed about the items which are not packed adequately to withstand normal handling in the aircraft and that they are carried at his own risk.

He further indemnifies the airlines and the staff concerned against any action, claim or proceedings regarding the damage of the items. He has to declare the contents in the form and sign mentioning clearing his where about, flight number and the sector covered by him.

Mishandled Baggage

General: In spite of all efforts taken to handle passengers baggage properly mishandling of baggage may take place for one reason or another.

In order to see that good will of the passenger is not lost, in all cases of mishandling of baggage the passenger will be given maximum assistance and prompt action will be taken for the restitution of the articles. No liability for damage or loss will be acknowledged before a proper investigation is made.

Lost Baggage: Lost baggage is the checked baggage that has been reported as missing by a passenger on arrival at the destination.

In such cases ensure the following action

- a As certain all facts from the passenger, show genuine sympathy and give him full individual attention.
- b Make a thorough search for the missing baggage at all possible locations such as:
 - Aircraft holds
 - Passenger cabins
 - Apron
 - Baggage trollies/containers
 - Disembarking cargo and mail

Linkages and arrangement with hotels airlines and transport agencies and other segments of tourism

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- define linkage and arrangement is the hotels airlines and transport Agencies
- linkage with other segments and tourism.

Linkage and arrangement with notes

Define linkage: The primary objective of the tourism linkages network is to increase the consumption of goods and services that can be competitively sourced locally. It also aims to generate employment while creating and retaining countries foreign exchange.

Linkages: Basically, a travel agency serve two types of clients: business travellers and leisure travellers.

Incidentally, the requirements of these tourists are different and an agency has to assemble or purchase related components/from the principal suppliers to cater their needs. Essentially, travel agencies, maintain close ties with the Airlines, hotels, car rentals, banks, insurance companies, railways, government, trade Associations, foreign tour operators and travel; agents, ground operators, cruise companies and tourism educational institutes see figure-A brief discussion of these undertakings (see figure).

Airlines: International Air Transport Association (IATA) operates a network by which travel agencies sell airline tickets and receives commission. Thus, the sale of airline tickets is highly regulated and strictly controlled. The agency's commission range from 1 to 3 per cent but most major airlines, offer additional incentives, i.e%, cash bonuses and override commission.

However, in some cases when a travel agency purchases air tickets in bulk, the margin of commission will be high. This largely depends on the relationship between the two organisations.

The procedure of sale of domestic airline tickets is different from country to country and even the rate of commission also varies. Today, airline ticketing and reservation is almost entirely automated and directly done the online.

Accommodation Companies: Most hotels and other lodging companies, including major Indian and international hotel chains, pay commission to the travel agencies. (The rate varies from hotel to hotel). However, Hoteliers in dealing with travel agencies are more informal and less regulated than the airline companies Interestingly, many hotels and hotel chains participate in Computer Reservation System (CRS), permitting hotel reservations to be made at the same terminal' which is used to sell airline tickets.

The commission received from hotels is the second largest component of total agency revenue. But if the purchase

is made in bulk then the profit is based on the negotiated prices and accordingly the profit -may be higher or lower.

Cruise Companies: The Cruise companies are informally regulated by its own governing body, Le., cruise lines association, which must approve any travel agency that desires to sell booking on behalf of any member of a cruise company.

The cruise companies also offer a complete package including sea travel, accommodation, food, entertainment and sometimes air travel also. The commission varies from 10 to 20 per cent. However, most cruise package tours are sold to the public through travel agencies. It was Thomas Cook who brought first group of foreign tourists, in India through sea route.

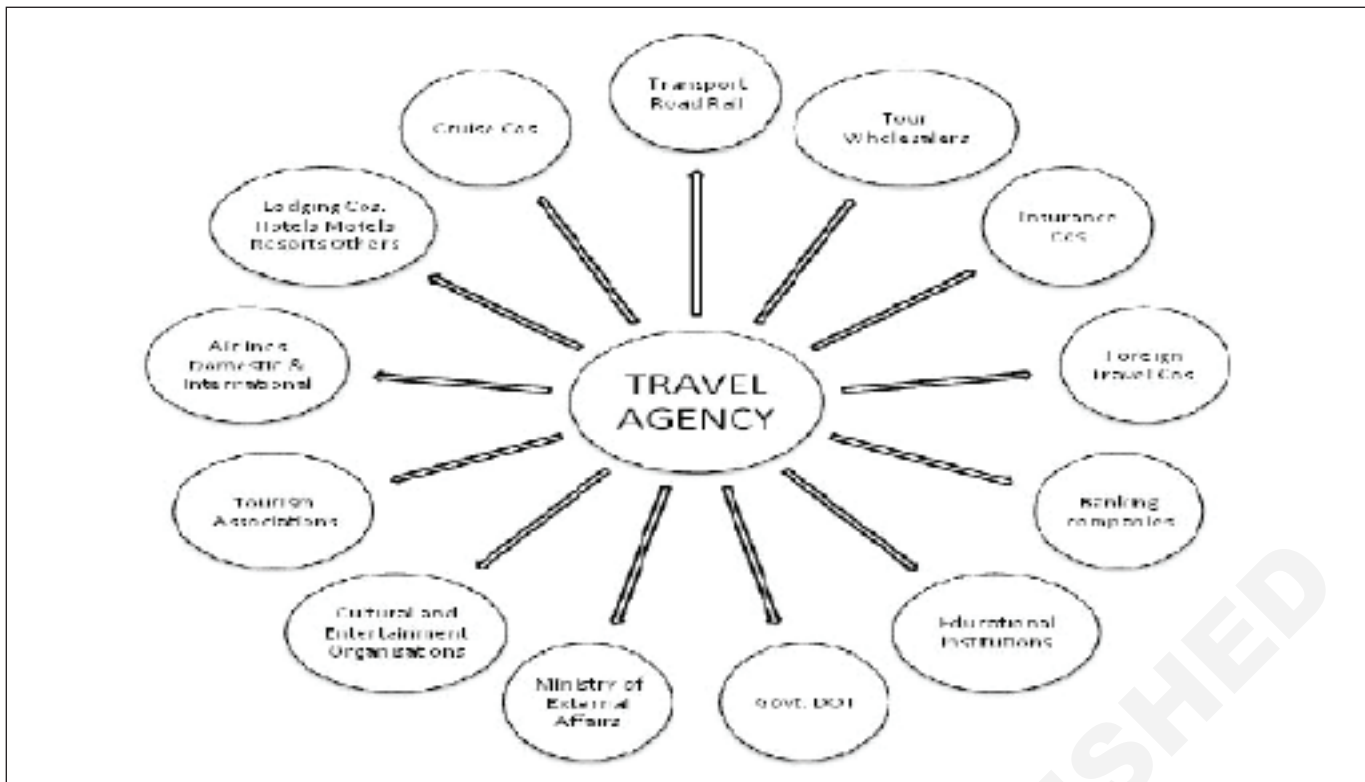
Insurance Companies: Today; many travel companies have included travel insurance in their package tours like Thomas Cook, the company insured the travellers to protect them against accident, loss of baggage and missed flights. Successful travel agency management has to make close contact with insurance companies to obtain insurance policy for its clients.

Recently, the Oriental Insurance Company has introduced two new travel policies for domestic as well foreign tourists i.e. "Suhana Safar" for domestic travellers and "Videsh Yatra Mitra" (VYM) for foreign travellers. Incidentally, the foreign policy is an upgraded version of "overseas mediclaim insurance".

The "Suhana Safar" covers accident and Baggage loses-excluding money, jewellery, cheques and other costly items. The policy is valid for a period of 60 days and it could be served and claims settled in anyone of the 953 offices of the company.

The "Videsh Yatra Mitra" contains-Medical Expenses and repatriation covers up to \$ 5 lakh worldwide including US and Canada and up to \$ 2.5 lakh worldwide excluding US and Canada. It also covers a total loss of checked-in baggage by an international airline and a cover of upto \$ 100 for purchases enforced by the delay of check-in baggage.

Even the loss of passport is covered upto \$ 250 and personal liability is covered upto \$200,000. Insurance companies allow 20 to 30 per cent commission on insurance policies to travel companies.



Banking Companies: Travel agencies offer banking facilities to the travellers like clearance of traveller cheques, and arrangement of foreign currency. Only those travel agencies, which are authorised by the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) under Foreign Exchange regulation Act 1973 (New amendment FEMA 1999) can deal with Foreign currency. Banking companies give commission to travel agencies on traveller cheques and currency exchange.

Educational institutions: An agency's success depends almost entirely on the competence of management and expertise of the staff. It develops manpower planning in such a way that will help to conduct on campus selection and match the students to the requirements of the company.

The linkage between travel companies and tourism education institutions will, solve the problem of human resource requirements of present and future. Therefore, a travel company needs to maintain close contact and interface with tourism education institutions. Many Chief Executives from the industry are the members of the advisory board of the institutions.

Travel Trade Associations: These associations provide a common platform to solve many problems of the members such as training, common code of conduct, airlines commission or any other. There are a number of travel trade associations like TAAI, IATO, ASTA, IATA and PATA which are quite active in the promotion of travel trade at global. Essentially, every travel company should be approved by these associations for avail financial and non-financial incentives and commissions from the Airlines, hotels, railways etc.

Other Organisations: The travel agencies need to maintain close ties with many other organisations offering travel related services like, cultural and entertainment

organisations, foreign tour companies, regional passport office, department of tourism both at center and states, sports operators, transport operators, food and beverage business-etc. In fact, these organisations play a vital role in making travel a complete product

Travel companies provide business to above cited organisations and in return receive commissions. However, there are few other organisations that help the agency to run travel business smoothly and promote India as a tourist destination. Technically, a travel company cannot work in isolation but is interdependent with other travel related enterprises.

Relationship between service providers

Tour Operators & Travel agents: These two sectors are connected because a travel agency sells holidays for a tour operator who will put together the whole package. e.g. Lunn poly which is a worldwide travel agency sells holidays for Kuoni which is a tour operator that specializes in luxury holidays and it is no more.

Attractions & Transport operators: These two sectors are connected because when travelling to Buckingham Palace there are bus routes and tube routes which direct you straight to the location of Buckingham Palace. London Underground has announcements on their Victoria line at Green Park which tells you when you should get off if you are visiting Buckingham Palace.

Transport operators and Tour operators: These two sectors are connected by tour operators organizing holidays and needing a transport operator to provide transport for the customer to get to the destination e.g. Thomas cook organises holidays for customers and then works with Easy jet to get the customer there.

Case study of travel agency, tour operators (Thomas cook, SITA, TCI)

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- analyse the case studies of a few travel agencies
- understand the nature of travel business
- learn ways to improve the business.

Challenge: There are 4 types of travel agents do then business

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1 Retail | 2 Business |
| 3 Call centre | 4 Web-based |

Thomas Cook Travel Group is a leader in the Belgian travel industry. The company represents a tour operator (Neckermann, Thomas Cook and Pegase) a travel distribution network (Neckermann Vakantiewinkels & Thomas Cook Travel Shops) as well as an airline company with one million passengers a year.

The Thomas Cook website used to be a classic tour operator website. As the online travel sector is changing ever more rapidly and since Thomas Cook decided to fundamentally increase the share of e-commerce in its multi-channel approach, the company decided to transform its online presence into a more useful travel portal, uniquely combining an online travel agency with updated content, an interactive community and targeted advertising.

In addition, Thomas Cook wanted to offer customers the possibility to find all the necessary information in one place, instead of having to conduct extensive searches on multiple and inconsistent sites.

Solution: Thomas Cook Travel Group chose The Reference, a Sitecore partner, to help them strengthen their internet presence with a strong focus on quality of service, experience and inspiration. Three key objectives for the project were:

- 1 to position Thomas Cook as the undisputed leader in “e-leisure* travel;
- 2 to raise online bookings by a considerable margin by 2010;
- 3 to significantly increase the “ticket only” (no hotel booking) share in online bookings.

Thomas Cook Travel Group: Sitecore is a trademark of Sitecore Corporation. All Other branded product names are the property of their respective holders. Copyright © 2001-2009 Sitecore Corporation. All rights reserved.

For this project, The Reference selected Sitecore as their content management solution of choice. Thomas Cook has had success with Sitecore in the past, and they knew it would allow them to reach their goals. Because of Sitecore’s architecture, flexibility, and extensibility, it allowed The Reference to seamlessly add the following features to the site:

- **Personalization:** The new Thomas Cook website puts a strong emphasis on content personalization through user preferences, including “My Profile”, “My Travel Agent” and “My Brochure”. For example, the

“My Brochure” feature allows users to build their own catalogue by collecting favorite destination items in a single repository. In addition, the website uses Google AdSense to provide targeted and useful advertising to the site visitors.

- **Social Networking:** ThomasCook.be has become a “Social travel” networking platform. Travelers can write reviews of their trips and let other members comment and rate them. They can also upload and rate travel pictures. Members can pinpoint visited, booked, favorite places, and “visit” destinations on the world map using Google Maps.
- **Online Travel Agent (OTA) concept:** The OTA is the travel shop within the portal. This online travel shop enables the customer to search, browse and book in an easy and custom-friendly way a set of trips based on several criteria, such as location, name, etc.
- **Newsletter and RSS:** The Reference implemented the Sitecore Newsletter Module, and an HTML newsletter is sent on a regular basis to registered members. In addition to the newsletter, ThomasCook.be also provides an RSS-feed delivering the latest Thomas Cook news.
- **Travel agents, tour operators and airline companies:** Site visitors can search for travel agents based on a set of preferences, such as location, name, specializations and opening hours. They can also find out which tour operator or airline company offers trips or flights to particular locations.
- **Ogone implementation:** Ogone is the European leader in online payment processing systems. The Reference successfully implemented the Ogone solution to process the transaction between the end user and the back-office of Thomas Cook.

Result: The new site went live in May 2008, and Thomas Cook has been able to effectively connect the four major stakeholders in the travel industry-tour operator, online travel agent, consumer and advertiser-to provide their customers with a genuine win-win situation on an innovative platform.

According to Anja Cappelle, Managing Director of The Reference, “We truly enjoyed the challenge of putting all of our skills together to not only create a positive user experience, but to optimize the conversion ratios of this website, as online bookings are of utmost importance to Thomas Cook. We turned their website into a travel 2.0 portal, and Sitecore allowed us to do this in an extremely elegant and flexible way?”

Solution Special Ingredients

- Adobe for web analytics

- Ogone for online payment processing
- Google Maps
- Google AdSense for online advertising
- Search and the dtSearch Sitecore module for global site search

Sitecore's Web Content Management System (CMS) and portal software solutions enable companies to deliver compelling web experiences. Sitecore's award-winning CMS software makes it easy for businesses to create and keep up-to-date dynamic, full featured Web sites of all types. Sitecore's industry leading flexibility and scalability allows companies to better leverage their content to improve customer experience and drive business growth.

Thousands of public and private organizations, including national governments and Fortune 500 companies utilize Sitecore solutions for their Web sites. These organizations have created and now manage over 5,000 dynamic Web sites with Sitecore including Microsoft, Sara Lee, Siemens, Toshiba, Omni Hotels, Computer Associates, Web Trends and Atlanta Falcons. Sitecore has offices and representatives in more than 50 countries around the world.

This presentation has been prepared by Cox & Kings Limited (the "Company") solely for your information and for your use and may not be taken away, reproduced, redistributed or passed on, directly or indirectly, to any other person (whether within or outside your organization or firm) or published in whole or in part, for any purpose.

By attending this presentation, you are agreeing to be bound by the foregoing restrictions and to maintain absolute confidentiality regarding the information disclosed in these materials.

This presentation is not an offer of securities for sale in the united states or elsewhere.

Contents

- Company Overview
- Competitive Strengths
- Achievements
- Business Strategy
- Financials
- Industry Fundamentals

Company Overview

- Company History
- Business Profile
- Shareholding Details
- Key Global Subsidiaries

Company History

- C & K Brand has evolved over 250 Years
- # 1 Among Top Brands in India

- Leading Player in the Indian Market

Note: Based on survey conducted in 2008 by TNS and co-funded by Media magazine across 10 countries in Asia Pacific region

Leisure Travel

Offerings

- Outbound Travel
- Inbound Travel (Destination management)
- Domestic Travel
- Meeting, Incentives, Conferences and Exhibitions (MICE)
- Trade Fairs

Markets

- Retail clients in India, UK, Australia, New Zealand, Japn, USA and UAE

Portfolio Sample

Corporate Travel

Offerings

- Customized business travel solutions

Markets

- 200 + companies located in India

Portfolio Sample

Visa Processing & Foreign Exchange

Offerings

- Outsourced business solution provider to diplomatic missions
- Licensed retail foreign exchange dealer in India

Markets

- Visa for India from Germany, UAE, Hongkong, Greece and Singapore
- Visa's for Malaysia and Singapore from India and French Visa from UK
- Fx operations in India

Portfolio Sample

Visa Processing & Foreign Exchange

Innovative Products

- Offerings that differentiate Cox and Kings from competitors
- Create brand value for the company
- Strategic partnership

Markets

- In all operational markets

Portfolio Sample

Sharing Details

Price Details

Equity Capital as on 31st March 2011
6,82,63,945
Market Cap. on 31st March 2011 INR 2,861.28 cr
CMP on 31st March 2011

BSE: INR 419.2 NSE : INR 413.6
3-Month High/Low (Feb 2011-Apr 2011)
If High INR 464.8 Low INR 358.7

Key Global Subsidiaries

Shareholding Pattern

Subsidiary	Operational Highlights
Cox & Kings (UK) Ltd., UK	Premium long-haul outbound tour operator - Target segments - Wealth retirees - Key destinations - India, Latin America etc.
Cox & Kings Destination Management services (Formerly) ETN Services Ltd.) UK	Provides destination management services in Europe - Mid market to premium positioning - Services to group companies as well as other tour operators
Cox & Kings Japan Ltd. tour	Outbound wholesaler selling white label packages to other operators - Caters for business delegations and leisure travel Provides destination management services for travellers from Japan
Tempo Holidays Pty Ltd. Australia, Tempo Holidays NZ Ltd. New Zealand	Outbound - Mass market oriented travel packages Synergies with ETN Services and C&K Dubai as key tourist destinations are Europe and Middle East Uniquely positioned as one of the few large independent tour operators
My Planet Australia Pvt. Ltd. Australia Bentours International Pty Ltd., Australia	Specialist outbound travel - Tourists from Australia and New Zealand - Leading outbound tour and travel operator to Scandinavia
Cox & Kings Tours LLC, UAE	Inbound - Service provider to a large number of tourists from Cox & Kings India Outbound - Initially tapped expant Indian population; subsequently tour operator for local population
East India Travel Company Inc., USA	Premium outbound luxury packages for celebrity clientele Outbound tours to Africa, Latin America, Asia and Middle East
Quoprro Global Services Pte. Ltd., Singapore Quoprro Global Services Pte. Ltd., Hongkong Cox and King Gmbh, Germany Cox and Kings Hellas Greece Cox and Kings Global Services Pvt. Ltd., India	Engaged in the business of providing visa processing services

Note: Cox & Kings Ltd. has a 100% commercial interest in all its subsidiaries.

Competitive Strengths

- Vast Geographical Presence
- Multiple Sales Channels
- Brand Image
- Technological Prowess

- Experienced Management Team
- Corporate Social Responsibility
- SWOT Analysis

Brand Image

Leisure Travel

- Cox & Kings offers products that are either pre-packaged through brochures or tailor-made as per requirements of a group and an individual traveller.
- Leisure Travel can be Outbound, Inbound or Domestic.

- It contributes more than 90% of the consolidated revenues in each of the three most recent financial years.

Foreign Exchange

- Cox & Kings provides foreign exchange services to our customers in India as a licensed Category II Authorised Dealer.
- We provide foreign exchange services either as part of our Leisure Travel and Corporate Travel packages or on a standalone basis.

Corporate Travel

- Cox & Kings offers customized business travel solutions to our corporate clients in India through a team of dedicated corporate relationship managers.
- We provide corporate travel services in India to more than 200 companies, both domestic and international.

Visa Processing

- Cox & Kings provide visa processing services as an outsourced business solution to diplomatic missions in various countries, where we are the providers of visa processing services for inbound travellers in India.
- Visa services are provided in the categories of Tourist visa, Transit visa, Business visa, Student visa, Conference visa and Entry and Employment visa.

Maharajas' Express - The Luxury Train

- Joint venture with IRCTC; successfully launched the train in March 2010, the Maharajas' Express is the last word in luxury train travel and the ultimate way to see India in style.
- The train has a capacity of 86 passengers in 23 coaches with two bars and two restaurants.
- There are four different itineraries (7-8 days each)
- Total of 28 journeys a year; scheduled between September and April.

Technology Platforms

- Web enabled reservation engine
- Centralized dynamic packaging system
- Covers all travel related services such as reservations, insurance, visa and package tours

Services

- B2B as well as a B2C solution, providing a backbone to the Global Distribution Systems (GDS)
- Online payment gateways integrated to existing technology platform
- Fully integrated computer reservation systems (CRS) with our mid and back office operations

Top End Software

- Latest data-management software, including ERP
- Proprietary software for our Visa Processing business

with technical support from a leading technology company globally

Security

- Servers are secured with firewalls
- Robust security systems including biometrics identifiers, fingerprints and photographs for visa application
- Strong disaster management, including recovery solutions and scheduled backups
- Improve efficiencies and reduces Turn Around Time: Dynamic designing of packages; increasing business handled per employee
- Seamless integration of operations of acquired entities
- Ability to introduce white label/ co-branded offerings for clients such as Jet Escapes

Swot Analysis

Strengths

- Strong Brand Value
- International Market Presence
- Strong segmental performance
- Wide Distribution Network
- Asset-light model
- Relationship with key suppliers
- Delivering high quality customer service
- Trained Professional Staff Strength

Weaknesses

- Substantial investment needed to compete with International firms entering Indian market through tie-ups or buy-out of local firms
- Premium products brand image would affect adversely in competition with cheaper operators or charters.
- Industry move towards more direct distribution and reduced commissions

Opportunities: Franchisee network to penetrate smaller cities with untapped propensity to travel Wider reach through net enabled sales Acquisitions within the industry to provide significant synergies and economies of scale.

Threats: Tourist flow is highly sensitive to adverse Political, natural, economic events. Increase in tax incidence on industry Existing Regulatory framework and changes regarding registrations, disclosures and state funds affect C&K as well their suppliers including CRS companies.

Achievement

- Global Acquisitions
- Commencement of New Operations 2011
- Awards and Recognitions
- Global Acquisitions

COX & KINGS OF TNATIOSS: Cox & Kings Destination Management Services (Formerly known as Clearmine Ltd. - ETN services Ltd.)

- Destination management service

Cox & Kings (UK) Ltd. (Formerly Cox & Kings Ltd.)

- Outbound travel operations catering to the up-market leisure travel business

Cox & Kings Japan Ltd.

- Travel wholesaler
- Revenues principally from packages consultancy and services for major wholesalers and societies

Quoprrro Global Services Pvt Ltd

Visa processing services

Tempo Holidays PTY, Australia; Tempo Holidays NZ Ltd., New Zealand

- Specialized outbound tours

East India Travel Company Inc

- Up-market outbound tour and travel packages

My Planet Australia, Ben Tours International Pty Ltd.

- Specialized outbound tours

FY2006

Cox & Kings Destination Management Services (Formerly known as Clearmine Ltd. - ETN services Ltd.)

- Destination management service

FY2008

Cox & Kings (UK) Ltd. (Formerly Cox & Kings Ltd.)

- Outbound travel operations catering to the up-market leisure travel business

Cox & Kings Japan Ltd.

- Travel wholesaler
- Revenues principally from packages consultancy and services for major wholesalers and societies

FY2009

Quoprrro Global Services Pvt Ltd

- Visa processing services

Tempo Holidays PTY, Australia; Tempo Holidays NZ Ltd., New Zealand

- Specialized outbound tours

FY2010

East India Travel Company Inc

- Up-market outbound tour and travel packages

My Planet Australia, BenTours International Pty Ltd.

- Specialized outbound tours

Awards and Recognitions

2010-11

- India's Leading Destination Management Company" awarded by the World Travel Awards 2010.
- CNBCAwaz Travel Award 2010 for 'Taking India Global'.
- "Best Outbound Tour Operator" awarded by Hospitality India and Explore the World Annual International Awards 2010.
- "First Runner Up" in the Best Large Tour Operator category awarded by the Telegraph Ultra Travel luxury survey UK 2010.
- "First Runner Up" in the Favourite Tour Operator category awarded by Condi Nast Traveller Readers' Choice Awards (2010).
- "Most admired tour operator 2010" awarded by SATTE (2010)

2009 - 10

- Most Innovative Travel Company -Today's Traveller Travel Awards, 2009
- The Economic Times Survey: Cox and Kings voted as the Top Rated Tour Operator 2009 -Outbound Best Domestic Tour Operator- TAFI award by TravelBiz Monitor Travel Awards, 2009 Best Inbound Tour Operator- TAFI award by TravelBiz Monitor Travel Awards, 2009
- Most Innovative Product Launch TAFI Award- TravelBiz Monitor Travel Awards, 2009
- Ministry of Tourism, Govt, of India 'BEST DOMESTIC TOUR OPERATOR'2003 -04,2004-05 2005-06

Group Tours: This type of tour has carefully planned itineraries and a well balanced mix of essential sightseeing, planned activities, coupled with meals. An experienced tour director accompanies the group and manages all the arrangements, so that the 'guests' can have unlimited fun and take back happy memories.

Group Tours - Advantages

- Get 'Great Value for Money' tours. Enjoy the cost benefit which accrues because of bulk buying discounts from all suppliers.
- Avoid travelling alone. Get security for you and your family in unknown destinations. When you travel in a group, you have other co-travelers and the tour manager who can help in case of an emergency.
- It is possible to estimate the actual total cost of the holiday well in advance.
- You get a chance to meet different people of varied cultures and interests on the tour.
- No advance planning for the routes. Everything is booked.
- An efficient way to visit all 'must - see' spots. While you may spend less time in one location, you'll see a greater range of sights than you probably would travelling on your own.

- You do not have to worry about anything as the tour manager takes care of everything.

Individual Tours: Individual Tours [also known Tailor made or Customized Tours] are designed to enable you to enjoy complete 'freedom'. Everything regarding your holiday is Tailor-made' depending on your individual requirements, tastes and budget. You can buy complete packages or just components of a package amongst other services, eg. only accommodation, sightseeing.

Individual Tours - Advantages

- Offers total flexibility in terms of choice of itinerary, time, cuisine, sightseeing and accommodation to suit your budget and your taste. Follow your own time.
- You can choose your own travel companions, be it family or friends.
- There are indepth opportunities to explore places in terms of sightseeing and learning about the culture of those places.

- Experience the trip based on your likes, dislikes and interests.
- You can be creative in planning your. itinerary. For example you could choose a self-drive holiday in Australia, with scuba diving and bungee jumping added.
- You do not mind spending that little extra to enjoy the holiday to its fullest. For example you may hire a private vehicle and pay extra for an additional day.

Now that you have a clear understanding of the different types of holiday options available, you will be better equipped to make a choice that best fits your likes and requirements. We have given you a simple grid of the different types of holidays that Cox & Kings sells under Group and Individual tours to help you select your choice. Bon voyage!

ESCORTED GROUP TOURS

Features	Cox & kings Dumya dekho Super saver tours	Cox & kings Dumya dekho Regular tours	Cox & kings Luxury escapades Group tours	Insight Vacations
Co-Traveller	Passengers from India	Passengers from India	Cosmopolitan travellers from all over the world	Cosmopolitan travellers from all over the world
Grade/ Category	Value for money, budget tours	Premium tours	Luxury tours	Elite tours
Type	Coach tours	Coach tours	Coach tours	Coach tours
Sightseeing	Covers all aces as per itinary			
Optional Excursions	Available	Available	Available	Available
Hotels	Clean, functional, tourist / budget category	First class	Superior first class / Deluxe 5 Star / 4 Star	Star netels
Hotel Location	Away from city centre.	Some in city centre and some away from city centre	Most are in city centre	Most are in city centre and some away from city centre
Meals	Breakfast: Continental Other meals: Indian Cuisine	Breakfast: Continental Other meals: Indian Cuisine	Breakfast: Continental Other meals: Multicuisine	Breakfast: Continental Other meals: International cuisine
Tour Manager	Indian	Indian	Cosmopolitan	Cosmopolitan
Region Specific	N/A	N/A	Marathi, Gujarati	N/A N/A

INDIVIDUAL TOURS

Features	Cox & Kings Flexihol Tailormade Tours	Cox & Kings Luxury Escapades Private And Tailormade Tours	Relax And Explore	Club Med Vacations	Insight Vacations
Traveller	Individual	Individual	Individual	Individual	Individual
Grade / Category	Options ranging from Budget to Luxury	Luxury	Premium	Premium	Premium
Transfers	By choice-transfers ranging from Seat -In-Coach to Private	Private basis only	Private basis only	By choice -transfers ranging from Seat-In-Coach to Private	Coach tours
Sightseeing	By choice	By choice	By choice	All inclusive concept	By choice
Hotels	By choice	Superior first class / Deluxe 5 Star / 4 Star	By choice	First class and above	First class and above
Hotel Location	By choice	City Centre	By choice	Exotic	By choice
Meals	Option of International Cuisine or Local Cuisine	'International Cuisine	International Cuisine	International Cuisine	International Cuisine
Tour Manager	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Tour Measure A perfect balance of touring, cruising and Cairo sightseeing. A stay in Cairo at the beginning of the tour allows you time to adjust to your new surroundings. Then three fabulous nights relaxing on your Nile cruise, before disembarking for a overnight train to Cairo to complete your sightseeing.

Hotels: Cruise the Nile in style aboard your traditional Nile cruiser with its spacious cabins, bars, shops, lounge, restaurant and swimming pool. In Cairo, your hotel is located at the Giza plateau, close to the magic of the great Pyramids and the mysterious Sphinx, it is the perfect starting point for excursions of all kinds.

Exciting Optionals

- Excursion to Abu Simbel
- Hot Air Balloon Flight, Luxor

Meals: Enjoy sumptuous Indian / Continental vegetarian & non-vegetarian food items.

Visit Egypt, one of the most awe-inspiring remnants of ancient civilization. Dating back to 5,000 B.C., it boasts one of the most comprehensive collections of artifacts and monuments on the planet.

A trip to Egypt will include a visit to the Pyramids of Giza, the enigmatic Sphinx, monuments of Luxor and granite statues in Aswan and of course a cruise down the ancient Nile river.

Your experience in Egypt will be one of luxury, with attention to every detail of the itinerary, from transfers, to the sophistication of your guides and level of accommodations.

Your sightseeing includes

Cairo: Great Pyramids of Giza, Defending Sphinx, Papyrus Institute, Egyptian Museum, Khan El Khalili Bazaar. Sound and Light Show.

ALEXANDRIA: Qaitbay Fortress, Library, National Museum, Montazah Palace.

Aswan: High Dam, Philae Temple, Unfinished Obelisk

NILE CRUISE: Kom Ombo - Temple of Sobek, Edfu - Horus Temple by Horse Carriage, Esna Lock

LUXOR: West Bank - Valley of the Kings, Hatshepsut Temple, Colossi of Memnon, East Bank - Luxor and Karnak Temples

Day 1: Begin Your Tour

- Arrive Cairo
- 'Land of the Pharaohs' tour! Your Cox & Kings representative greets you at the 'meeting point' at the exit after immigration and customs and transfers you comfortably to your hotel [check in after 1400 hrs]. This evening, look forward to a dazzling Sound and Light Show at the Giza Pyramids.

This spectacular show uses innovative techniques to narrate the history of ancient Egypt with magnificent sound and light effects against the Pyramids as a backdrop. Dinner

Day 2: In Cairo

- Excursion To Alexandria Upon arrival in Cairo, embark on a day excursion to Alexandria, With an atmosphere more Mediterranean; 1, the Middle Eastern. See the Qaitbay Fortress, Library, the National Museum, which houses the pieces recovered in 1995 at the Light-house site. Continue to visit the Montazah Palace.

Built in a fantastic Turkish-Florentine style in the 19th century, the palace boasts of acres of well planned gardens & overlooks a beautiful beach. The palace comprises of a number of buildings, the most important of which are Al-Haramlek and Al-Salamlek, the summer residence of the former royal family. Breakfast [✓] Dinner [✓]

Day 3: In Cairo

- Visit To The Pyramids And The Sphinx
- Papyrus Institute Egyptian Museum
- Khan El Khalili Market Overnight Train To Aswan Spend the morning at the Great Pyramids of Giza; Cheops - one of the oldest and largest pyramid on the Giza plateau, Chephren and Mykerinos and the defending Sphinx - one of the most majestic and enduring monuments, of Egypt.

Next, visit the Papyrus Institute. See the processes and efforts it took to make this ancient form of paper. Also, enjoy the beautiful illustrative Egyptian art and stories painted depicting Egyptian life style and culture. In the afternoon, visit the Egyptian Museum of Antiquities, which houses one of the world's greatest collections of Egyptian artifacts. It boasts of more than 136,000 artifacts from over five thousand years of Egyptian history. End the day with a visit to the Khan El Khalili Market - Cairo's most important shopping area for souvenirs and all types of typical Egyptian artifacts. Later in the evening, transfer to the railway station to board your overnight sleeper train to Aswan. Breakfast [✓] Dinner [✓]

Day 4: Arrive Aswan on Board The Nile Cruise o Aswan Tour

- Optional Excursion To Abu Simbel

On arrival, board your Nile Cruise. Embark on a sightseeing tour of Aswan. Visit the High Dam, Philae Temple, Unfinished Obelisk. Today, you may opt for an excursion to Abu Simbel - flanked by the almost-as impressive temple of Nefertari the entire site is truly awe-inspiring. Breakfast [✓] Lunch [✓] Dinner am

Day 5: On Cruise

- Onto Kom Ombo
- Onto Edfu

Today, sail to Kom Ombo, the home of Sobek - the crocodile God who was worshipped in pre-dynastic times. Witness the ancient remains of a temple of a somewhat unusual style. In fact, it is a double temple. The right hand temple is the one consecrated to Sobek and the second one is dedicated to Haroeris - the falcon-headed Sky God. This temple was built overlooking the Nile. Continue sailing to Edfu. On arrival, take a horse carriage ride to visit the Horus

Temple the best preserved temple in the whole of Egypt, it has many inscriptions in the Coptic language and is adorned with paintings from that era. Breakfast [✓] Lunch [✓] Dinner [✓]

Day 6: On Cruise o Onto Luxor

Today, we sail to cross the Esna Lock on the Nile to reach Luxor.

Breakfast [✓] Lunch [✓] Dinner [✓]

Day 7: Onto Cairo

- Optional Hot Air Balloon Flight o West Bank
- East Bank
- Overnight Train To Cairo

Early this morning, you may avail of a 40-minute hot air balloon ride over the West Bank of Luxor viewing the Ramesseum temple, Medinet Habu temple, desert, farm land and in the distance the mighty river Nile.

An unforgettable experience! After disembarkation from your Nile Cruise, we cross over to the west bank of the Nile River to visit the Valley of the Kings, Hatshepsut Temple and the Colossi of Memnon. Next, visit the Luxor & Karnak Temples on the East Bank of the Nile.

Later in the evening, transfer to the railway station to board your overnight sleeper train to Cairo. Breakfast [S] Dinner [S] Note: Since your sleeper train is later in the evening, you will be provided a day use accommodation.

Day 8: Homeward Bound

Good times need never end! As you proceed to the airport for your flight back home, relive the high points of your Cox & Kings Land of the Pharaohs tour.

We are confident you will join us again, sometime soon....

Breakfast (2) either in the hotel or onboard the flight.

For details on latest offers, please speak to par travel advisors or visit: coxandkings.com

HUB	PER ADULT IN TWIN / TRIPLE SHARING	PER CHILD WITH BED	PER CHILD WITHOUT BED	
Ex - Mumbai	USD 1,200 + INR 54.000	USD 900 + INR 44,000	USD 700 + INR 44,000	
Ex - Delhi / Bangalore / Chennai	USD 1.200 + INR 74.000	USD 900 + INR 64,000	USD700 + INR 64.000	
Ex - Hyderabad	USD 1,200 + INR 94.000	USD 900 + INR 84.000	USD 700 + INR 84.000	
Single Supplement: USD 400				
Compulsory supplements of INR 11.399 per person include consulate fees, visa charges & processing fees, airport & Govt, taxes, tour documentation & other documentation charges, administration charges.				
INFANT COST	BOOKING AMOUNT	DOCUMENTATION AMOUNT	RESERVATION FEE	
MAIN TOUR: INR 4000 + Compulsory supplements. No CASH BACK	INR 20.000 per person (Interest free and non-refundable) adjusted against tour cost	INR 10.500 per person (Interest free and non-refundable) adjusted against tour cost	INR 3.000 per person - adjusted against tour cost	
PRE / POST TOUR ACCOMODATION PRICE (PER PERSON)				
Accommodation on bed & breakfast basis Movenpick Pyramids or similar	Single USD 135	Twin / Triple USD 70	Child Without Bed USD 55	Child With Bed USD 60
Package Includes: Accomodation with breakfast Airport - Hotel - Airport transfer on own Child under 12 years				

OPTIONAL TOURS PRICES (PER PERSON)	ADULT	CHILD
Excursion to Abu Simbel	USD 120	USD 120
Hot Air Balloon Ride, Luxor	USD 90	USD SO

Reservations and payments for Optional Tours have to be made at the time of booking your tour in USD only.

WHAT YOUR TOUR PRICE INCLUDES

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Cost of Round Trip Economy Class Excursion airfare valid for the duration of tour. 2 Accommodation at hotels mentioned or similar. 3 Meals, coach tours, transfers, entrance fees, excursions, sightseeing and surface transportation as mentioned in the itinerary. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4 Cost of Overseas Travel Insurance valid for the duration of the tour covered upto the age of 70 years. 5 Services of Cox & Kings Tour Manager (provided there are over 16 adult passengers travelling on the tour] or Local Representative. |
|--|---|

WHAT TOUR PRICE DOES NOT INCLUDE

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 Compulsory tips to drivers & guides (USD 5 per person per day). 2 Passport & visa charges 3 Airport taxes, service tax, govt sales tax & all other govt taxes. 4 Optional & Add-On tours unless mentioned otherwise 5 Any increase in the airfare / taxes / routing charged by the airlines on air ticket 6 Cost of extension of validity of the air ticket 7 Any increase / surcharges in the Tour Cost / airline | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> owing to High Season, . Trade Fairs, Exhibitions, Conventions, Special Events etc. will be charged extra 8 Porterage at hotels, apartments, airports and seaports, laundry, wines, mineral water, telephone charges, insurance and all items of personal nature, also food and drinks not forming part of the group menus. 9 Anything not specifically mentioned in 'What Your Tour Price Includes' box. 10 An additional amount of INR 1000/- Is to be compulsarily paid by way of 'Secure Your Booking Amount' |
|--|---|

VISA REQUIREMENT

You must be in possession of a single entry Egypt visa. The cost of the visa is not included in your Tour Price. It is mandatory to process your visa through Cox & Kings only.

'DEPARTURE DATES (Dates are day 01 Of Itinerary]

Apr	17,24	Jun	05,12. 19. 26	Aug	07.21
May	01,05.15,22.29		Jul 10,24		Sep 04,18

Fight leaving India may depart a day prior from the departure dates mentioned. Please check with our Sales Staff.

IMPORTANT NOTE

The tour will be operated, subject to a minimum of 2 full paying adult passengers travelling together.

Hotels / Flights / Airline / Itinerary / Route subject to change without notice. Subject to RBI / GOI approval for BTQ passengers.

© NIMI
NOT TO BE REPUBLISHED

Travel Information

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- **state the various tips while travelling**
- **do precautionary steps before starting a travel.**

Check rules while you pack. Know about the travel baggage rule by checking the Department of Transportation's Safe Travel as you organize your luggage.

Purchase travel insurance. Stuff happens. Whether your two-year-old starts barfing as you leave for the airport or your luggage winds up in Neverheardofistan, travel insurance policies protect your health, possessions and hard-earned cash

Get immunized. Get to know about various lists of the recommended and required vaccinations around the world, as well as health advisories for each destination & get immunized.

Wear a hidden passport wallet. Keeping your money and passport close to your flesh at all times, preferably under your clothes in a round-the neck pouch, discourages pickpockets.

Protect your prescription medication. Bring copies of prescriptions and keep them in your carry-on, in case your luggage gets lost. Leave prescription pills in their labeled bottles to avoid customs foul-ups.

Know the local currency inside and out. Practice making change and identifying the denominations & currencies of places visiting.

Use a credit card instead of exchanging your money. credit cards give a better exchange rate than you'll find at the local kiosks, and less cash in pocket means less to lose or steal. Credit card purchases are also generally backed by fraud and theft guarantees; cash, no such luck.

Know the latest exchange rates and practice conversions in your head.

Locate the local originating Countries embassy. If your passport is lost or stolen,

- Investigate with other carriers operating at the same time.
- Question the loading and unloading staff.
- Check crew baggage to ensure there is no mix up.

Pack light. The less luggage you have, the more quickly you can move, You'll get less tired, you'll have less to lose, and you'll spend less time fumbling for stuff. This all adds up to make you less vulnerable.

Bring a pocket-sized map-a paper one.

When you're lost, you're a target or the GPS system of cell phone is not working this will be handy.

Figure out how to call home. If you already use a GSM phone, you should be able to use it abroad. Now with free WIFI you can call to whatsapp.

Keep the people at home informed. Make sure somebody stateside knows where you're going and when you'll be back, and give them detailed contact info for your hotels. Leave a photocopy of your passport with them; if you lose yours, they can fax you the info. It's good to have someone looking out for you.

Collect information about the travel agency. know contact detail of travel agency, to contact incase of lack/inattentive service at the place of visit.

- It is better to initial an app for language translation.
- Keep the local resident number in case of any emergency.
- Always cautions in dealing with any purchases and beware of currency charges.
- In case of lost in the group don't hesitate to get assistance from the local cop.

Cancellation of reservation

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- **gather important information on reservation cancellation**
- **know airline, railway reservation cancellation policy**
- **find important information for hotel reservation cancellation.**

Points To Remember While Cancellation of Transport or Hotel Booking

- 1 Policies and contracts of carriage vary from airlines to airline, hotel to hotel, and change all the time. It's best to check with your airline and hotel directly to find out what their current policies are before you go.
- 2 The closer you get to your departure date, the harder it is to change your policy.

- 3 Most hotels give full, or at least partial, refunds.
- 4 While it's more complicated with airlines, many carriers do make attempts to accommodate passengers. In the past, many airlines have allowed passengers to change their tickets within a specific time frame in the case of a terrorism attack with "Peace of Mind" policies that allow passengers to rebook tickets free of charge, or receive credit for a future trip. It's good

business, and once one major airline allows changes, many follow suit.

- 5 Keep in mind that some airlines do not refund tickets purchased through a third-party discounter, or on the Internet through sites. Call the agency or packager you booked through first to see what's possible.
- 6 Always make your travel purchases with a credit card. If a hotel or airline closes, you'll be covered under the Fair Billing Act.
- 7 Consider buying insurance that covers war and acts of terrorism. If you already have insurance for your trip to London, read the fine print. Often you can cancel the trip and get a full refund.
- 8 For extra protection, always purchase travel insurance through a third party.
- 9 For traveling to London or any other international destination; expect to spend at least \$200 to change your ticket, but contact the airline before your originally scheduled departure date. Changing tickets after the flight has left is much more complicated.
- 10 If you do decide to rebook your flight, be sure to find out the rules and regulations. Some airlines require that you make new reservations immediately, while others will allow you to rebook within a year.

Cancellation of Indian Railway Reservation Policy

The general unserved rail tickets could be cancelled in three hours with cancellation charges of Rs 15. The tickets for more than 200 kms of journey could be obtained two or three days before the date of journey. Such tickets could also be cancelled before 24 hours of the departure of train.

It is mentioned in the cancellation form that fare refund could be claimed for unreserved tickets if train is late for three hours or it is cancelled.

The tickets will be cancelled in special conditions when only one train is available for the destination or one train is in the morning and other is in the evening or the UTS ticket is issued for special trains like Jan Shatabdi, double decker train etc.

The reserved confirmed tickets could be cancelled within two hours of train departure whereas waiting and RAC tickets will be cancelled within three hours of the departure. As much as 50% of the fare charges will be deducted if the ticket is cancelled before six hours of the train departure and 25% will be deducted if the ticket is cancelled before 48 hours.

There will be no refund on the confirmed Tatkal reserved ticket and Tatkal waiting ticket are cancelled within three hours of the train departure time. As much as 50% extra charges will be made for duplicate ticket if the original ticket is lost.

Policy of airline ticket cancellation: Cancellation policies differ by airline. When for whatever reason a trip needs to be canceled, you will need to navigate the airline's cancellation policy in order to receive a refund.

The ideal situation is one in which you can receive a full refund from the airline.

Third-Party Discounters: If you buy through a third-party discounting service, be aware that many tickets sold will have a no-refund policy.

Time of Cancellation: When you cancel your ticket will have an impact on the likelihood of your receiving a refund, and will affect how large of a refund you receive. The further out from your travel date you cancel your trip, the more willing the airline will be to give you a refund or to give you a travel voucher.

Travel Insurance: Travel insurance is an alternative to getting a refund from the airline, and may be useful if the airline has a strict cancellation policy but you believe your trip may have to be cancelled. Travel insurance will generally pay any difference between the purchase price of your ticket and the amount an airline is willing to refund you, so long as you meet certain criteria.

Traveler's insurance generally applies if you, a family member, or a traveling partner is sick or dies; if you are summoned for jury duty during your trip window; if your host at your travel destination falls ill or dies; if a natural disaster or terrorist attack strikes your home town; or if Weather or a strike impedes your trip.

Changing Dates: Although many airlines will not offer full refunds for a cancellation, they may allow you to change the dates of your trip, or to receive a travel voucher good for a future trip with the same airline -generally within six months to a year of your initial trip dates.

Extenuating Circumstances: Even stricter cancellation policies will generally provide a refund if any of a handful of extenuating circumstances occur. Chief among these is a death in the family, which most airlines will give a full refund for upon proof of death. A terrorist attack in your hometown or your destination is also cause for a refund.

Other extenuating circumstances include political unrest in your destination country, military activation of an immediate family member, jury duty or a subpoena of the traveler or traveling companion, or involuntary job loss of the traveler or his companion.

Handling hotel reservation cancellation: The process that is required to be followed to cancel a hotel reservation depends on the hotel, and the method you used to book a room. Booking directly with a hotel involves a different set of rules than when you book with an online travel agency. Follow the following steps to handle a hotel reservation cancellation.

- 1 Save all receipts, confirmations and other communications. When you book a room, you should get a confirmation number, at the very least. Keep all of this information easily accessible.
- 2 Ask about cancellation policies when you book.
- 3 Work with a travel agent whenever possible. While most people prefer to book reservations themselves, using a professional travel agent can be useful, especially in situations where a reservation is canceled.

- 4 Determine whether you made a deposit or paid for the room. If so, you will need to cancel in time to get your money back.
- 5 Look for an opportunity to cancel online.
- 6 Prepare to pay a cancellation fee. Most reservations on these sites need to be paid in full, so you may not get a full refund of your money. Talk to customer service.
- 7 Call the hotel directly to cancel, or confirm your cancellation.
- 8 Ask for a cancellation number. Whether you cancel on the phone or online, get a cancellation confirmation. This will protect you if you need to dispute charges for a hotel room you never used.

Ticketing preparation and marking of tour package

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- compare the tour packages.

ANNEXURE

Tour Packages

i International Tour Packages

Classic China Trip (09 Days)

DAY 01 : Bombay-Beijing

Assemble at the International Airport to board a flight to Beijing. Arrival and transfer to hotel. Day at leisure. Overnight Beijing, (no meals)

DAY 02 : Beijing

After breakfast proceed on a full day tour to Badaling Great Wall, Ming Tombs and Sacred Road. Overnight Beijing. (B, L, D)

DAY 03 : Beijing - Xian

After breakfast proceed on a half-day tour to Tian'anmen Square, Forbidden City. Thereafter transfer to the airport. Afternoon fly from Beijing to Xian. Meet and transfer to hotel via Ancient City Wall. Overnight Xian. (B, L, D)

B/B - Breakfast

L- Lunch

D-Dinner

DAY 04: Xian

After breakfast proceed on a full day tour to Terra-cotta Warriors, Big Wild Goose Pagoda and Forest of Steles. Overnight Xian. (B, L, D)

DAY 05 : Xian - Guilin

After breakfast transfer to airport. Morning fly Xian to Guilin. Meet and transfer to hotel. Next proceed on a half-day tour to Reed Flute Cave and Fubo Hills. Overnight Guilin. (B, L, D)

DAY 06: Guilin

After breakfast. Day at leisure or take a full day Li River Cruise (optional). Overnight Guilin. (B)

DAY 07 : Guilin -Shangai

After breakfast transfer to airport. Morning Fly from Guangzhou to Shanghai. Meet and transfer to hotel. Next proceed to a half-day tour to People's Square, Bund and Oriental Pearl TV Tower. Overnight Shanghai. (B, L, D)

DAY 08: Shangai

After breakfast proceed on a full day tour to Jade Buddha Temple and Yuyuan Garden. Shanghai Museum, Nanjing Shopping Road. Overnight Shanghai. (B, L, D)

DAY 09: Shangai-Bombay

After breakfast transfer to airport to board a flight to Bombay. Tour ends on arrival. (B)

End of Service

Package Includes

- 8 nights of 3 star hotel accommodation (on twin sharing basis) with breakfast in hotel.
- All meals as listed above (6 lunch and 6 dinner in local restaurant);
- All transfers and transportation within the tour;
- All entrance fee to the above sightseeing's;
- All domestic airfare Beijing/Xi'an/Guilin/Shanghai with tax;
- Good English-speaking tour guide;

Package Exclusions

- Roundtrip international airfare with tax
- Extra personal bill;
- Tip to driver and tour guide; Visa fees, airport taxes
- Personal Insurance, we strongly suggest that the passenger's take out there own insurance before departing for China.
- Drinks and lunches/dinner except where mentioned
- Items of a personal nature
- Driver and guide gratuities
- All entrance fees and excursions not mentioned above
- Porterage at hotels and airports
- Any expenses caused by reasons beyond our control such as bad weather, natural calamities (landslides, floods), flight delays, excess baggage, rescheduling or cancellations, any accidents, medical evacuations, riots, strikes, war, airline or hotel policies etc.

Optional tours

Day cruise on the Li River in Guilin with lunch on board.

US\$ 80 per person based on 02 pax.

US\$70 per person based on 03-05 pax

US\$60 per person based on 06-09 pax.

Please note

01-07 May and 01-07 Oct will be China's week-long national holiday.

** Above rates are subject to change and availability

Dubai Holiday Packages (04 Days)

DAY 01 : Arrive Dubai

Assemble at the international airport to board a flight to Dubai. Arrive at Dubai International Airport; our hotel representative will escort you to the hotel. The day is free at leisure for you to enjoy un-drenched Dubai, which lies on the sparkling blue waters of the Arabian Gulf, an ideal holiday destination to experience unique sights, sounds and water sports.

Evening take a tour on the Dhow Creek Cruise with dinner, aboard an Arabian Dhow. This tour offers an amazingly different view of old and new Dubai taking you through the Creek Golf Club and Heritage Village. Overnight at Dubai. (D)

DAY 02: Dubai

After breakfast proceed on a half day city tour of Dubai which includes-Jumeirah Mosque, BurjAlArab, Old Arabian Houses, the 150 year old Dubai Fort, Skyline at Dubai Creek, an Abra (Water Taxi), the Gold Souk and the Spice Souk where in you can shop. Overnight Dubai. (B/B)

DAY 03: Dubai

After breakfast visit the various shopping malls and shop to your hearts content. Later in the afternoon proceed to Dune Dessert Safari - with an exciting drive on a four-wheeler on the sand dunes. Watch the sunset of magical evening into the heart of the desert. Relax in an Arabian tent while having a, barbeque dinner and enjoy a traditional Belly Dance performance, Overnight Dubai. (B/B)

DAY 04 : Depart Dubai

After breakfast you have time to do last minutes shopping. Late afternoon proceed to the airport to board a flight back home. Tour ends on arrival. (B/B)

(B/B) - Breakfast

(D) - Dinner

End of Services

Package Includes

- 03 Nights Accommodation in the Hotel mentioned above as per the itinerary
- Daily Breakfast

- Dubai Normal Visa Charges
- Return Airport transfers
- Half day Dubai City tour
- Dhow Cruise with Dinner & transfers
- Desert Safari with Barbeque Dinner
- Hotel Taxes

Package Exclusions

- All flights & Airport Taxes
- All entrance fees to monuments, camera fees, portorage and tips, mineral water, laundry, telephone or any other expense personal in nature.
- Personal Insurance, we strongly suggest that the passenger's take out their own insurance before departing for Dubai.
- Drinks and lunches/dinner except where mentioned
- Items of a personal nature
- Driver and guide gratuities
- All entrance fees and excursions not mentioned above
- Porterage at hotels and airports
- Any expenses caused by reasons beyond our control such as bad weather, natural calamities (landslides, floods), flight delays, excess baggage, rescheduling or cancellations, any accidents, medical evacuations, riots, strikes, war, airline or hotel policies etc.

** Above rates are subject to change and availability

Wild Africa - Kenya Safari (08 Days)

DAY 1 : Arrive Nairobi

Assemble at the International airport to board your flight to Nairobi. Arrive at Nairobi and transfer to the Hotel. There will be safari briefing. Later Visit to the Giraffe center and Kazuri Beeds factory. Evening enjoy the dinner. Overnight at Nairobi

DAY 2 : Nairobi - Samburu

After Breakfast transfer to the Wilson airport to board a flight to Samburu. Arrive Samburu and transfer to the Hotel. In the afternoon after lunch proceed to the game drive to view unusual species rarely seen outside this region.

Evening enjoy the dinner. Overnight at samburu.

DAY 3 : Samburu

After Breakfast proceed to a full day game drive to observe Samburu's unusual wildlife. There will be time to relax after lunch by the pool and in between game drives. Evening return back to the hotel. After Dinner overnight at Samburu.

DAY 4 : Mt. Kenya Safari Club

After Breakfast proceed for the Mt. Kenya Safari Club, one of the most exclusive clubs in the world. Set on the Equator with magnificent views of Mt. Kenya. After lunch, day is at leisure and enjoy the luxurious club spread over

100 acres of manicured lawns, magnificent gardens and ornament ponds, which are graced by free roaming peacocks and other exotic birds. Enjoy the dinner in the evening. Overnight at Mt. Kenya Safari Club.

DAY 5 : Mt. Kenya Safari Club

After Breakfast, full day enjoy the activities available in the safari club including horse riding, tennis, golf, putting green, croquet, heated swimming pool, trout fishing. Art gallery, health and beauty parlor. After lunch relax, later enjoy boutique, club shops and the William Holden Animal orphanage. Enjoy the dinner in the evening. Overnight at Mt. Kenya Safari Club.

DAY 6: Mt. Kenya Safari Club - Masai Mara

After Breakfast, transfer to Nanyuki Airstrip and fly over the Great Rift Valley to the Masai Mara Game Reserve. On arrival transfer to the hotel. In the afternoon after lunch proceed to the game drives. Evening have delicious dinner. Overnight at Masai Mara.

DAY 7: Masai Mara

After Breakfast travel across the savannah to rendezvous with the Mara Residents; herds of buffalo, wildebeest, hartebeest, impala and gazelle. After lunch proceed to the dense thorn bush revealing the largest predator population. Evening enjoy the dinner. Overnight at Masai Mara.

DAY 8: Depart Masai Mara - Nairobi

After Breakfast transfer to the Airstrip for your flight back to Nairobi. Arrive Nairobi. After lunch and last minute shopping, transfer to the Jomo Kenyatta Airport for your flight back home.

** Children under 12 years sharing with 2 adults 55% of above rates.

** Children under 12 years in own room 75% of above rates.

Package Includes

- 07 Nights accommodation in a 4 star/ 5 star hotel as per the itinerary
- Daily breakfast, lunches, dinners on the tour.
- Game reserves
- Return airport transfers
- Domestic flights

Package Exclusions

- All international flights
- All entrance fees to monuments, camera fees, portage and tips, mineral water, laundry, telephone or any other expense personal in nature.
- Visa fees, airport taxes
- Personal Insurance, we strongly suggest that the passenger's take out their own insurance before departing for Kenya.
- Drinks and lunches/dinner except where mentioned

- Items of a personal nature
- Driver and guide gratuities
- All entrance fees and excursions not mentioned above
- Porterage at hotels and airports
- Any expenses caused by reasons beyond our control such as bad weather, natural calamities (landslides, floods), flight delays, excess baggage, rescheduling or cancellations, any accidents, medical evacuations, riots, strikes, war, airline or hotel policies etc.

** Above rates are subject to change and availability

Mauritius Holiday Package (07 Days)

DAY 01: Mauritius

Assemble at international airport to board a flight to Mauritius. Arrive and proceed by coach and check in at Hotel Gold Beach Resort/Similar. Day free for rest and leisure activities. Enjoy delicious Indian dinner. Overnight stay in Mauritius. (D)

DAY 02: Mauritius

After breakfast proceed on a full day tour to Grand basin, one of the islands with two natural lakes hidden high in the island mountain and has one of the finest Shiv Mandir. You will be taken to visit the floral factory shop & the town of Cure Pipe. The natural reservoir of Mare Aux Vocoas, Thereafter we pass through black river gorges, to arrive Chamarel waterfall & the seven-coloured earth where you can see seven different colours of land. These patches of blue, green, red and yellow are believed to be result of weathering caused by volcanic erosion, the dead Crater Volcano. Then we visit the Alexandria View Point. On the way back home enjoy dinner. Return back in the evening. Overnight stay in Mauritius. (B, D)

DAY 03: Mauritius

You can proceed for shopping on your own. Day free for rest & leisure activities/make use of the facilities offered to you by the hotel. Overnight stay in Mauritius. (B, D)

DAY 04 : lie Aux Cerfs

Spend another exciting day at the He Au Cerfs, a paradise for water sports. Waterfront for a short boat trip to fabulous virgin island of lie Aux Cerfs which is a dream island resort where you will enjoy miles & miles of fine sand & crystal clear water you can also enjoy water activities (optional) such as parasailing, speed boat, banana boat etc. Return back in the evening. Enjoy your dinner. Overnight stay in Mauritius (B, D)

DAY 05: Mauritius optional trip to Domaine Les Pailles

After breakfast proceed for shopping on your own. Day free for rest & leisure activities, or take an (optional) trip to Domaine Les Pailles a reconstructed village where you will be able to rediscover the old ways of living in an environment which is surrounded by nature. Take your dinner. Overnight stay in Mauritius. (B, D)

DAY 06 : North Island Tour

After breakfast proceed to explore the North Island,

the Pamplemousses botanical garden, which is known throughout the world for its large collection of exotic plants, including the famous giant water lilies, then proceed on a half day sightseeing tour of the capital city Port Louis.

Visit the harbour lying sheltered in semi Circle Mountains, shop at the Port Louis market & the famous “duty free shop” Return back in the evening. Enjoy dinner. Overnight stay in Mauritius. (B, D)

DAY 07: Depart Mauritius

After breakfast morning is at leisure. Late Afternoon proceed to airport to take flight back home. Tour ends on Arrival. (B)

B/B = Breakfast

D = Dinner

Package Inclusions

- Accommodation in hotels on twin sharing basis.
- Daily Breakfast & Dinner
- Entire road journey and sight seeing by seat in coach.
- All sight seeing and excursion mentioned in the itinerary with entrance fees.
- Service of a local English-speaking guide.

Package Exclusions

- All flights
- All entrance fees to monuments, camera fees, portage and tips, mineral water, laundry, telephone or any other expense personal in nature.
- Visa fees, airport taxes
- Personal Insurance, we strongly suggest that the passenger's take out their own insurance before departing for Mauritius.
- Drinks and lunches/dinner except where mentioned
- Items of a personal nature
- Driver and guide gratuities
- All entrance fees and excursions not mentioned above
- Portage at hotels and airports
- Any expenses caused by reasons beyond our control such as bad weather, natural calamities (landslides, floods), flight delays, excess baggage, rescheduling or cancellations, any accidents, medical evacuations, riots, strikes, war, airline or hotel policies etc

Day 13 Paris

Today you have the choice of two exciting day tours;

Paris - City Tour: This morning, on our orientation tour of Paris, we will be introduced to the main sights of his beautiful city: Hotel des Invalides, Arc de Triomphe, Champs Elysees, Place de la Concorde, and the Opera.

We then visit the Louvre Museum, where you can see the famous Mona Lisa painting by Leonardo Da Vinci.

Later, we proceed to Versailles, where we meet our expert local guide to visit the Palace of Versailles, the former residence of the famous “Sun King”. Finally join us for an exciting optional Paris cabaret show. (Breakfast, Lunch, Dinner) OR

Disneyland Paris Theme Park: A short drive to the famous Disneyland Paris Theme Park where a full day of excitement for the entire family awaits you. Meet all your favourite Disney characters, see the amazing show “Honey, I shrunk the audience”, ride the hair-raising “Space Mountain” roller coaster, and don't miss the fabulous main street parade. Finally join us for an exciting optional Paris cabaret show. (Breakfast, Dinner)

Day 14: Paris, Calais, Ferry, Dover, London

Today we visit the second floor of the Eiffel Tower to witness a spectacular panoramic view of the city. Next we visit a French perfumery for some last minute shopping. Early afternoon we depart and journey north for Calais to board the ferry for the return channel crossing. On arrival at Dover port, we proceed to London, where the tour ends, and its time to say farewell to all the friends you have made on tour. (Breakfast, Lunch)

Tour Highlights: Brussels Orientation Tour including the Grand Place, Mannekin Pis and Atomium (photo stop)

Amsterdam Canal Cruise

The Netherlands Visit Volendam and Madurodam Model Village (or Keukenhof Gardens between March 19th and 21st May)

Cologne Visit the Gothic Cathedral - “Dom”

Rhine Valley Scenic drive and River Rhine Cruise

Wattens Visit to Swarovski Crystal Worlds

Innsbruck Orientation Tour including the Hofburg & Goldenes Dachl

Verona See Juliet's balcony and the Roman Arena

Venice Boat ride to St. Mark's Square, visit St. Mark's Square - see the Bridge of Sighs, Doges Palace and the Basilica di San Marco

Florence View of the city from Piazzale Michelangelo and free time in historic centre of the city

Rome Guided City Tour including a visit to the Vatican Museums and St. Peter's Basilica, see Piazza Venezia, the Colosseum and Trevi Fountain

Pisa Visit Field of Miracles - see Cathedral, Baptistry & Leaning Tower

Milan Free time in historic centre of the city

Switzerland Cable car ride to Mount Titlis, visit to Lucerne and Interlaken, and train ride to Jungfrauoch -Top of Europe

Paris

Disneyland Paris Theme Park: Visit to Disneyland Paris -

one day unlimited pass, second floor of the Eiffel Tower, French Perfumery

OR

Paris City Tour: Orientation Tour of Paris, visit to Louvre Museum, visit to Palace of Versailles, second floor of the Eiffel Tower, French Perfumery

Your Tour Includes

- 13 nights in a First Class Hotel shown or similar with private facilities
- 13 Vegetarian Buffet Breakfasts, 12 Indian Vegetarian Lunches (Hot/ Packed) (1 additional Lunch on Day 13 for Paris City Tour passengers) and 13 Indian Vegetarian/Non Vegetarian Dinners
- Meal Plan is indicated at the bottom of your daily itinerary:

Breakfast, Indian Vegetarian/Non Vegetarian Dinner, Indian Vegetarian Lunch (Hot/Packed)

- Return channel crossings by ferry
- All coach transportation by executive cruise liners from departure to tour termination points
- All sightseeing, entrances and excursions as mentioned in the Itinerary
- Services of Bi-lingual Tour Manager throughout the tour Colosseum, Rome Adult rate is based on 2/3 adults 12+ years sharing twin/triple rooms. Child (2-11 yrs) must share a room with 2 adults
- Infant price is for coach seat only
- Discounts available for groups of 15+ passengers.

Cancellation Policy: Period before departure within which written instructions are there amount of cancellation charges shown as a % of a total holiday price excluding Insurance premium.

More than 28 days: - Deposit only

27 -14 days: - 50% of total holiday cost

13-07 days: - 75% of total holiday cost

06 days or less: -100% of total holiday cost

National Tour Packages

Mumbai with Jaipur Tour 07 Days / 06 Nights

Day 01 : Arrive Mumbai international Airport

Arrive financial capital of India, Mumbai. A fascinating mix of commercial hustle & bustle, grand Victorian styled architecture & modern day high rise buildings, the customs & colour of truly multi-cultural society. Upon arrival transfer to hotel. Evening is free. Overnight stay in Mumbai.

Day 02 : Tour Mumbai

Today proceed for a tour of Mumbai, which includes the British built arch "Gateway of India," the Hanging Gardens and Malabar Hills where Mumbai's rich and famous live, the Prince of Wales Museum, Dhobi Ghat, Marine Drive, the Gandhi Memorial Museum and Jain Temple. Rest of the evening is free for leisure. Overnight stay in Mumbai.

Day 03 : Fly Mumbai - Jaipur

Today we transfer to Mumbai airport for flight to Jaipur: The capital city of the state of Rajasthan is popularly known as the 'Pink City' because of the painted walls of the buildings in the old walled city. Upon arrival transfer to hotel. Evening is free for shopping. Overnight stay in Jaipur.

Day 04 : Tour Amber & Jaipur

Early today we proceed on a excursion to Amber Fort, here you are transported back in time, riding royally atop elegantly draped and painted elephants to the mountain fortress of Amber, a superb example of Rajput architecture with its complex of palaces, temples and ornate apartments.

Afternoon tour of Jaipur takes you to Hawa Mahal or "Palace of Winds," and continues to City Palace, with its latticed balconies, tiny windows, cupolas, courtyards and arched entrances. A stop at the ancient observatory concludes the tour. Evening is free for leisure. Overnight stay in Jaipur.

Day 05 : Drive Jaipur - Fatehpur Sikri - Agra

Drive this morning to Agra - In the 16th and 17th Centuries, was the capital of Moghul India and its superb monuments date from that era. It has a magnificent fort and the building which so many people come to India solely to see - the Taj Mahal. Enroute visit Emperor Akbar's 16th century abandoned city of Fatehpur Sikri.

This ghost town is remarkably well preserved and presents a perfect synthesis of Muslim, Hindu and Jain architecture. The sculptured columns bear mute testimony to this gallant experiment to unite Hindus and Muslims. Later continue your drive & check in. Evening is at leisure in Agra.

Day 06: Tour Agra & drive to Delhi

An early morning visit to the Taj Mahal presents an opportunity to admire this dream in marble as it welcomes the rising sun. Return to hotel for breakfast. Explore the 16th century Agra Fort with its battlements, apartments, gardens and audience halls. Later we drive to the city of Delhi, actually consists of two parts.

Old Delhi, was the capital of Muslim India between the 12th and 19th Centuries. In Old Delhi you will find many mosques, monuments and forts relating to India's Muslim history. The other is New Delhi, the imperial capital city created by the British. Upon arrival check in & relax. Overnight stay in Delhi.

Day 07: Tour Delhi & depart

After breakfast proceed on a guided tour of the Old Delhi includes the Red Fort, Raj Ghat - a memorial to Mahatma Gandhi, Ashoka Pillar and the mile-long Chandni Chowk bazaar. Afternoon embark on a tour of New Delhi. Drive along Rajpath, the capital's broadest avenue, for a view of the Parliament House, the President's House and India Gate. Visit the Humayun's Tomb, Qutab Minar and Birla Temple. Late evening we transfer to New Delhi International airport for your flight to onward destination.

- Accommodation for 07 days / 06 nights in a well appointed room
- Daily breakfast during your stay
- Services of local English speaking guide during sightseeing tours
- Elephant ride to Amber Fort, Jaipur
- Driver allowances, parking & toll charges
- Current applicable taxes

Package Excludes

- Any air / train fare to any destination on tour
- Meals other than specified
- Entrance fees
- Items of personal nature viz, laundry, tel, travel insurance, camera fees, mineral water, etc
- Anything not specifically mentioned under package includes section.
- The rates are subject to change.

Markha Valley Trekking Tour (13 Days)

Ladakh

Duration of Trek : 08 Days

Best Time: June to September.

Highest Point: Kongmaru La {5, 100m).

Focus : Monasteries, Monks, People Villages. Highlight Markha Valley Trek, Monasteries and Landscape.

Physical Challenge: Moderate overall.

Day 01 : Arrive New Delhi

Arrive New Delhi International airport & transfer to hotel.

Delhi - An international metropolis with excellent tourist spots, recreational facilities, and a history that goes back to antiquity. It offers a multitude of interesting places and attractions to the visitor. Overnight stay in Delhi.

Day 02: Fly Delhi - Leh

Today transfer to Delhi airport for flight to Leh. Arrive & transfer to the hotel. Rest of the day is free for leisure. Overnight stay in Leh.

Day 03 : Drive Leh to Alchi (62kms)

After breakfast drive to Alchi enroute visit Basgo Palace & Liker monastery. Arrive Alchi & check in to Uley Ethnic Resort. Visit Alchi monastery and spend rest of the day exploring the Alchi village. Overnight stay in Alchi.

Day 04 : Drive Alchi - Leh

After breakfast drive to Lamayuru, later continue your drive to Leh. Evening arrive & check in. Overnight stay in Leh.

Day 05 : Drive Leh - Spituk - Zingchen (5 hours)

After breakfast drive to Spituk Bridge behind the Spituk monastery, around 7 kms from Leh town. Arrive Spituk

Bridge at Indus River and start your trek through flat and desolate plane at the foot of the Stok Mountain.

Gradually, you will leave the view of busy Leh-Srinagar highway and move towards wilderness of Himalaya. Arrive Zingchen through a gorge, which gives you a feeling of complete isolation. Overnight in Camp at Zingchen.

Day 06 : Zingchen - Yurutse (5 hours)

Drive Zingchen to Rumbak through a straightforward road; leaving village, you enter Hemis national park for the preservation of Snow leopard, Baharal and the marmot and wolf etc. Walk through a narrow trail and valley widens as you arrive Rumbak and camp at Yurutse below Gandala Pass. Overnight stay in Camp.

Day 07 : Yurutse - Skyu (7 hrs)

From Yurutse follow path along the mountain side, then cross a small valley and follow zig zag steep path. There after cross Ganda La pass (4380m). Then long descent towards Shingo. After 2 hrs of descent arrive in the valley of Markha and after few hundred meters you reach Skyu. Overnight stay in tents.

Day 08 : Sku - Markha (7 hours)

From Skiu, follow a good path on the right bank of Markha where one can find great vegetation. Then cross right bank of river and cross through barren plain and arrive at Chaluk. Thereafter walk along the left bank of river and after another crossing climb towards Markha village. Good camp site beyond the Village and near river. Overnight stay in tents.

Day 09 : Markha - Thachungtse (5 hours)

After breakfast start trekking to reach Tchatcutse via Hankar village. Overnight stay in tents.

Day 10 : Thachungtse - Nimaling (5 hours)

After breakfast start trekking to reach Nimaling (4900 M) has a sweeping pasture where thousands of sheep, goats, yaks and graze during the summer months, rising to the south is 6400 M high Kang Yatse (Nimaling Peak), a lovely mountain, but not an easy one to climb, Overnight stay in tents.

Day 11 : Nimaling - Shang Sumdo (6 hrs)

After breakfast start trekking to reach Kongmaru La (5100 M). The trek to Kongmaru la passes through narrow Gorges. At the top of the pass, you can have view of the Ladakh range and the villages of the Indus valley to the north is excellent. Cross the pass and proceed to Shang. Overnight stay in tents.

Day 12 : Shang Sumdo - Hemis - Leh (6 hours) Trek

Walk along the stream down to Hemis monastery, which is one of the oldest and richest monasteries in Ladakh. Visit Hemis monastery and drive to Leh enroute visit Thiksey, Shey & Stok Museum Palace. Evening at your leisure. Overnight stay in Leh.

Day 13 : Leh to Delhi

Today transfer to Leh airport for flight to Delhi.

Coromandel to Malabar 15 Days / 14 Nights

Day 01 : Arrive Chennai

Upon arrival at Chennai airport you will be welcomed by our representative & transferred to hotel. Chennai (formerly known as Madras), your gateway to sunny south & capital of Tamil Nadu, a state known for grandiose temple sculpture & architecture of the Chola.

In the afternoon proceed on a guided city tour visit the National Art Gallery & Museum, Fort St. George, Marina Beach & San Thome Cathedral. Rest of the evening is free for leisure. Overnight stay in Chennai.

Day 02 : Tour Kanchipuram & Mahabalipuram

Today we will drive you to Mahabalipuram. Enroute visit Kanchipuram - one of the seven sacred cities of India and is also known for having served as a capital for several dynasties. Visit three of the best temples - Kailasanatha and Ekambareswara (dedicated to Lord Shiva) and Vaikuntaperumal (dedicated to Lord Vishnu).

Continue your excursion to the ancient Pallavan port of Mamallapuram, visit the 7th century rock hewn monuments. The shore temple, the only surviving one of seven, is a unique example of a temple built of rock quarried elsewhere and carried to shore. Late evening check in. Rest of the day is at leisure. Overnight stay in Mahabalipuram.

Day 03 : In Pondicherry

After breakfast we will drive you to Pondicherry - It was a French settlement & is today a union territory where the French connection on the architecture and culture of the place is strongly visible result of the centuries-old relation with the French power. Upon arrival check in.

In the afternoon visit the Botanical Gardens, Eglise De Sacre Coeur De Jesus, The Promenade, Government Park, Manakula Vinayagar Temple, Roman Roiland Library, Sri Aurobindo Ashram, French Institute and other museums and art galleries.

Rest of the evening is at leisure. Overnight stay in Pondicherry.

Day 04 : In Tanjore

Today drive to Tanjore - the capital of the powerful Chola dynasty. Today, it is the little town set amidst the lush green rice fields of the Cauvery delta. Magnificent temples, still bear witness to the splendour of Chola architecture. En route visit Nataraj Temple at Chidambaram, and also visit the temples at Kumbakonam. Upon arrival check in. Evening is free for leisure. Overnight stay at Tanjore.

Day 05: In Trichy

Today proceed on a guided tour of Tanjore, visiting Brihadeeswara Temple, the palace, Sangeetha Mahal, Saraswati Mahal, Library, Raja Museum, Temple Museum and Schwarz Church. Later drive to Trichy - Situated on the banks of the river Cauvery is the fourth largest city in Tamil Nadu.

It was a citadel of the early Cholas which later fell to the Pallavas. Here you will visit the Rock Fort, Sri Jambukeshwara Temple, Tiruvannaikaval, Srirangam & other museums and art galleries. Check in late evening & relax. Overnight stay at Trichy.

Day 06: In Madurai

After breakfast drive to Madurai - One of the oldest cities in South India, Madurai has been the centre of learning and pilgrimage for centuries. Upon arrival check in. In the afternoon visit Meenakshi Temple, Tirumalai Nayak Palace, Mariamman Tank and Koodal Alagar Temple. In the evening, visit Meenakshi Temple again for the evening prayer ceremony. Overnight stay at Madurai.

Day 07: In Kanyakumari

Today we will drive you to Kanyakumari - is the 'Land's End' of India. Here, the Bay of Bengal meets the Indian Ocean and the Arabian Sea. It is also a popular pilgrimage destination and of great spiritual significance to Hindus. Upon arrival proceed on a guided tour of Kanyakumari, visit Kumari Amman Temple, Gandhi Memorial & Vivekananda Memorial - This memorial is on two rocky islands projecting from the sea about 400 m offshore. Evening is at leisure. Overnight stay in Kanyakumari.

Day 08 : In Kovalam

Following breakfast we drive to the coast of Kovalam. Upon arrival check in. Afternoon is at leisure to unwind in the picturesque environs or to enjoy a rejuvenating Ayurvedic massage. Overnight stay in Kovalam.

Day 09: Relax in Kovalam

Kovalam - A grove of coconut trees. This is a combination of three small beaches, the sheltered natural bay, the azure blue waters and the sumptuous spread of green palm groves, reefs and shoals, leisurely sailing wooden canoes, clear waters at dawn, corals, shells, marine life, foliage and rejuvenating herbal and body toning massages make it a tropical paradise. Time at leisure to relax / ayurvedic activities at your resort. Enjoy the beautiful surroundings and lavish comfort and pampering at spa! Overnight stay in Kovalam.

Day 10: In Kumarakom

After breakfast depart for Kumarakom, experiencing the rich culture and active lifestyle that has evolved over the centuries in and around the backwaters and waterways that thread this region. Upon arrival check in. Rest of the day is free for leisure at your resort. Overnight stay in Kumarakom.

Day 11: Drive to Thekkady Wildlife Reserve

Your exploration of South India continues as you travel to the Spice Capital Thekkady, located on the Tamil Nadu / Kerala border. This unique wildlife sanctuary is about 300 square miles and centered on an artificial lake fed by the Periyar River. Upon arrival check in. Rest of the evening is free for leisure / experience holistic ayurveda massage at your hotel. Overnight stay in Thekkady.

Day 12 : In Thekkady

This morning game viewing is on board boats, which carry you along convoluted waterways and afford sightings of elephant, bison, deer and occasionally tiger. This tropical habitat makes it one of the premiere reserves of southern India with all manner of flora and fauna in abundance. Return to hotel & relax. Later take a spice plantation tour accompanied by a naturalist. Evening is free for leisure / explore the markets. Overnight stay in Thekkady.

Day 13 : Drive to Kochi

After breakfast drive to Kochi - formerly known as Cochin in the coastal state of Kerala. With a natural harbour that has always been one of the finest in the world. Tonight enjoy a presentation of the colorful costumed Kathakali dance drama. Overnight stay in Kochi.

Day 14: Tour Kochi

Today proceed on a guided city tour, visit the Portuguese Church built by St. Francis in 1562, the Jewish Synagogue, the famed Mattancherry Palace, and the Chinese fishing nets - ingenious devices requiring little human attention. Evening is free for leisure / explore the antique market. Overnight stay in Kochi.

Day 15: Departure

Today we will transfer you to Kochi International airport for your flight to onward destination.

Package Includes

- Accommodation for 15 days /14 nights in a well appointed room
- Daily breakfast during your stay
- All transfers & sightseeing excursions by private air-conditioned car/coach.
- Services of local English speaking guide during sightseeing tours
- Wildlife cruise on lake Periyar, Thekkady
- Tickets to Kathakali dance performance
- Driver allowances, interstate permits, parking & toll charges
- Current applicable taxes

Package Excludes

- Any air / train fare to any destination on tour
- Meals other than specified
- Entrance fees
- Items of personal nature viz, laundry, tel, travel insurance, camera fees, mineral water, etc
- Anything not specifically mentioned under package includes section.

Handing business corporate client including conference and conventions

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- state the importance of corporate travel market for Travel Agency
- learn how travel agencies handle corporate clients
- find various service offered to corporate clients.

Corporate travel: Conferences, congresses, meetings, large events, incentive programs, retreats, team building, business workshops and seminars are all examples of corporate travel. This is a sophisticated market sector that requires a different approach than working with tour operators and travel agents.

To work successfully in this sector of the market, one should partner with conference service companies that specialize in managing conferences and in making arrangements for corporate meetings.

Other potential partners include Destination Management Companies (DMCs) that work with corporations to deliver events and incentive programs.

Additionally, many larger corporations have their own in-house staff that arrange their meetings, retreats and team building events.

MSME: Will help to promote the growth and development of companies it also enables skill development via specialised training centre.

The CII will make meeting & convention often depending on the environment conducive to the development of India Partnering Industries.

The trade centre in the city makes exhibition cum sale and conference and meeting for the new products upcoming in the market.

Source of Income - commission service charge, Travel terminology - Current a popular travel trade abbreviations

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- find information about various sources of income for a travel agency
- state the commissions form various service providers
- learn various travel trade abbreviation.

Travel technology: In simplest form it is described as using technology to plan the tour trips. The travel technology automates booking payments, and back office works for the tour/travel agencies and enables the guest to make their online bookings without a travel agent.

In connects information technology and E-commerce services to deal with tour operators and travellers to hotel accommodation, care hire, flight booking and other related services.

Source of Income of Travel Agency

To offer facilities is the tour & travel is the objective of a travel agency. For the purpose, they coordinate the travel related enterprises and customers. They develop the concept of pleasure of tour. They want to reward for the pleasure they provide. A travel agent's sources of income are as follows

- **Commission on Sale:** As a commission agent collects commission by selling the principle services such as hotel, airlines, transport.
- **Commission on Services provided/Service charges:** the travel agents collect commission from the customers on the facilities', services provided or by coordinating the customers and principals.
- **Commission from Auxiliary:** The travel agency also earn auxiliary services provided as depends as insurance, travelers cheque, etc.
- **Income Earned from Short-term Investment:** Travel agents may invest money received from his customers as deposits and earn profit.
- **Profit from the sale Of his Own Tours:** Many travel agencies operate their own tours such as sightseeing tour, excursions, hike, etc. and make profits.

Commissions form various service providers

Several areas of a travel agency's focus pay commissions to the agency which becomes its principal income. These are mainly car rentals, cruise lines, hotels, railways, sightseeing tours, tour operators, etc. A fixed percentage of the main element of the price is paid to the agent as a commission. Commissions are not paid on the Tax component of the price.

However regarding air travel, commissions are becoming a thing of the past. Most airlines in the United States pay no commission at all to travel agencies. In this case, an agency usually adds a service fee to the net price

TRAVEL TRADE ABBREVIATIONS

- A4A** - Airlines for America
- AACO** - Arab Air Carriers Organisation
- AAPA** - Association of Asia Pacific Airlines
- AASA** - Airline Association of Southern Africa
- ABTA** - Association of British Travel Agents
- ACAC** - Arab Civil Aviation Commission
- ACAS** - Airborne Collision-Avoidance System (ICAO)
- ACC** - Airport Consultative Committee (IATA)
- ACI** - Airports Council International
- AEA** - Association of European Airlines
- AECMA** - European Association of Aerospace Industries
- AFCAC** - African Civil Aviation Commission ,
- AFRAA** - African Airlines Association
- AFTN** - Aeronautical Fixed Telecommunications Network
- ANS** - Air Navigation Services
- AOC** - Air Operator's Certificate
- API** - Advance Passenger Information
- APIS** - Advance Passenger Information Systems
- ARINC** - Aeronautical Radio Inc (US)
- ASA** - Air Services Agreement
- ASEAN** - Association of South EastAsian Nations
- ASECNA** - Agence pour la Securite de la Navigation Aerienne en Afrique et a Madagascar
- ASPA** - Association of South Pacific Airlines
- ASTA** - American Society of Travel Agents
- ATAC** - Air Transport Association of Canada
- ATAG** - Air Transport Action Group
- ATB** - Air Transport Association of America
- ATC** - Air Traffic Control

ATM	- Air Traffic Management	EDI	- Electronic Data Interchange
ATN	- Aeronautical Telecommunication Network	ERA	- European Regions Airlines Association
ATNS	- Air Traffic and Navigation Services	ET	- Electronic Ticketing
ATS	- Air Traffic Services	ETS	- Emissions Trading Scheme
ATS/DS	- Air Traffic Services Direct Speech	EU	- European Union
ATSP	- Air Traffic Service Providers	EUROCONTROL	- European Organisation for the Safety of Air Navigation
AWB	- Air Waybill	FAA	- Federal Aviation Administration
BCBP	- Bar Coded Boarding Passes	FDA	- Flight Data Analysis
BITA	- Bilateral Interline Traffic Agreement	FDR	- Flight Data Recorder
Cof A	- Certificate of Airworthiness	FIR	- Flight Information Region
C of R	- Certificate of Registration	FMS	- Flight Management System
CAA	- Civil Aviation Authority	GATS	- General Agreement on Trade in Services (under WTO)
CACConf	- Cargo Conference	GDS	- Global Distribution System
CANSO	- Civil Air Navigation Services Organisation	GNSS	- Global Navigation Satellite Systems
CAPPS II	- Computer Assisted Passenger Pre-screening System	GPS	- Global Positioning System (US)
Cargo-IMP	- Cargo Interchange Message Procedures	GPWS	- Ground Proximity Warning System
CASE	- Computer Aided Software Engineering	GSA	- General Sales Agent
CBP	- Customs and Border Protection	GSP	- Ground Service Provider
CBPP	- Cargo Business Processes Panel	HF	- High Frequency
CBT	- Computer Based Training	IACA	- International Air Carrier Association
CFIT	- Controlled Flight Into Terrain	IAPA	- International Airline Passengers Association
CITES	- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora	IATA	- International Air Transport Association
CNSC	- Cargo Network Services Corporation (wholly owned subsidiary of IATA)	IATAN	- International Airlines Travel Agent Network (wholly owned subsidiary IATA)
CNS	- Communications	of	
CRS	- Computer Reservations System	IATF	- International Airline Training Fund
CUSS	- Common Use Self-Service	ICAO	- International Civil Aviation Organisation
CUTE	- Common User Terminal Equipment	IOCS	- IATA Currency Clearance Service
CVR	- Cockpit Voice Recorder	ICH	- IATA Clearing House
DFDR	- Digital Flight Data Recorder	IFSP	- In-flight security personnel
DGCA	- Directorate General of Civil Aviation (various countries)	IOSA	- IATA Operational Safety Audit
DGR	- Dangerous Goods Regulations	ISO	- International Standards Organisation
DOT	- US Department of Transportation (also refers to Dept of Transport in many countries)	ITF	- International Transport Workers Federation
ECAC	- European Civil Aviation Conference	JAA	- Joint Aviation Authorities (European)
ECTAA	- Group of National Travel Agents' and Tour Operators' Associations within the EU	JAG	- Japan Action Group
		MLS	- Microwave Landing System
		MOT	- Ministry of Transport (various countries)

MOU	- Memorandum of Understanding	TCAS	- Traffic Collision Avoidance System (US-FAA)
PACConf	- Passenger Agency Conference	TWOV	- Transit Without Visa
PATA	- Pacific Asia Travel Association	UATP	- Universal Air Travel Plan
PNR	- Passenger Name Record	UFTAA	- Universal Federation of Travel Agents' Associations
PRM	- Persons with Reduced Mobility	VAT	- Value-added Tax
RFID	- Radio Frequency Identification	VHF	- Very High Frequency
SATCOM	- Satellite Communications System	VSAT	- Vectoral Satellite
SMS	- Safety Management Systems	WHO	- World Health Organisation
SeMS	- Security Management Systems	WTO	- World Tourism Organisation
StB	- Simplifying the Business	WTO-OMC	- World Trade Organisation (formerly GATT)
SITA	- Societel internationale de Telecommunications Aeronautiques	WTTC	- World Travel and Tourism Council
SPT	- Simplifying Passenger Travel		
TCAA	- Transatlantic Common Aviation Area		

Preparation of itinerary and other terms on itinerary

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- state the itinerary and its types
- prepare itinerary and related arrangements.

Itinerary: An itinerary is a key and significant component of a tour package. It may be an initial itinerary or a final itinerary. Basically, it is designed to identify the origin, destination and all the enroute stopping points along with transportation, accommodation and other services on a traveller's trip.

An itinerary has various portions and these portions are known as segments as inbound and outbound segments. Practically, these segments are dependent on the type of journey undertaken by the tourists.

Types of Journey

- One way
- Round/Return Trip
- Circle Trip
- Around the World Trips and
- Open Jaw Trips

Let us illustrate these segments with suitable examples. Suppose Mr. X and Mrs. X travel through a 'round trip' from Delhi to USA. In this case the itinerary would consist of two segments:

- 1 New Delhi-USA (outbound segment)
- 2 USA-Delhi (Return segment)

On the other hand if Mr. and Mrs. Y travel from London to Delhi the case would be:

- 1 London-Delhi (inbound segment)
- 2 Delhi-London (Return segment)

In an itinerary one can find air and surface transportation. The segment that represents air transportation is referred to as an air segment and the segment that represents

land transportation like road, or rail is known as a surface segment. The tourist itinerary consists of various segments.

We have defined that an itinerary is used to identify origin, stopping points and off points. But what are these points? Actually, the first city in an itinerary is called a board/origin/departure point and it may be an airport in an air segment or any other segment.

Each stop-over-point is referred to as a destination point; and the off point is known as the arrival point which makes up a city-pair.

If the travellers do not return to the board point, the itinerary is called a one way itinerary such as the Delhi to London itinerary. If the travellers return to the origin point the itinerary is known as a return/ round trip as the Delhi-London-Delhi itinerary.

When one extra stop over point is included in a round trip it is called a circle trip like the Delhi-Paris - Singapore-Delhi itinerary. The main difference between round (return) trip, and circle trip is that whereas in a return trip the fare and route for each segment of the itinerary, inbound and outbound, is the same, in a circle trip, both fare and route for each segment of the itinerary are different.

Open jaw trips

The open - jaw flight is a round trip itinerary that arrives in one city but departs from another. Open jaw flights allow travellers to the two destination in one trip without back tracking and return to original city.

Types of itineraries and their importance

It has been noticed that most of the tour companies prepare multiple itineraries for the same tour. Why is this done? Perhaps, to cater the needs of Tour planners,

Tour managers, individuals, vendors and tourist guides as no guidelines exist in the tourist industry. In reality a tour company needs to develop/ prepare separate and distinctive itineraries for the tourists, tour managers, tour escorts, vendors and tourist guides. However, different itineraries are based upon an individual expansion of the tourist itinerary. The main itineraries are:

- The tourist itinerary.
- The tour manager's itinerary.
- The vendor's itinerary.
- The bus driver's itinerary.
- The tour escort/ country step-on-guide itineraries.

Tourist Itinerary: The 'famtrips' gives a basic idea to the tour planners to draw a rough draft of the projected itinerary. In other words, one of the purpose of the 'fam trip' is to prepare an initial client itinerary that will be available to operate first-client-test tour. The 'fam tour' identifies itinerary problems that the tour planner may not have perceived in advance.

The tourist itinerary is the starting point in the development process of an itinerary. Therefore, tour planners should undertake various considerations at the time of planning an itinerary, such as the purpose of tour, choice of destination(s), tourist budget, accommodation, transportation, legal requirements, tour reference tools and cordial relationship between the host and tourist generating nations etc. Moreover, tour planner familiarised himself with the following itinerary planning tools:

- Timetables
- The official Airline Guide (OAG)
- Travel Information Manual
- Air Tour Manual
- World wide cruise and Ship line Guide
- ABC Travel Guide
- World Hotel Guide
- The Official flail Guide

These tools provide ways for the tour company to develop itineraries and also how the tours can be conducted.

In developing tourist itinerary (inbound and outbound), the tour planner normally considers a number of options and determine whether or not they should be included or made optional for the clients.

The tour planners should seriously consider the right kind of destination, sightseeing, transportation accommodation, quality of food and beverage and proper entertainment in the right amount and so on it is clear that the itinerary planning for one day tour or a two day tour or for domestic or international tours, starts with tour events and then moves to other secondary ingredients.

The tourist itinerary is usually a short enough itinerary that can be included in the tour brochure and a separate sheet of the itinerary is given to the client at the beginning of the

tour. Basically, it emphasises on the basic things that the tourist need and want to know relating the transportation, accommodation, sightseeing/ destinations to be covered and other services provided during the tour/trip.

Moreover, he wants to see the order in which the various activities are scheduled. Further, the client itinerary provides him the essential information such as departure points/time, check-in-check-out time and the time and location for the completion of the trip.

Tour Manager's Itinerary: The key individual in the tour/ travel company is the tour manager. He has to perform various types of functions ranging from tour planning to actual operation of tours. The entire success of the tour company depends on his expertise, skill, capability, capacity and dedication to the job that the tour manager performs.

Therefore, for any tour company the tour manager is an extremely important asset, more than the company's clients. He brings to the company the most effective and extensive management style which is the result of his own personality, knowledge, experience and professional qualification. In a large scale tour company the tour manager's functions are:

- Tour planning
- Tour promotion/marketing
- Control over Costs
- Tour handling.

Vendor's Itinerary: Technically, the travel vendors do not need a copy of the itinerary. However, sometimes they are required to offer Services/Facilities according to the client itinerary such as providing lodging, entertainment, clubs, guides, transportation, and ground services etc. Basically, this group is responsible in offering sophisticated services and facilities for the benefit of its clients.

Tour Escort Itinerary: The tour escort is recognised as an important individual in the tour company's organisation. He is not only a sightseeing guide but his experience, expertise, knowledge, skill, judgement, integrity and personality can make or break a tour.

Therefore, the tour company should appoint those as tour escorts who have a vast knowledge and experience and who have travelled extensively in the area (domestic/ international destinations) to which he leads the tour.

The quality of itineraries is based on itinerary-mix-planning. Generally, the tour planner takes into consideration the various ingredients while preparing an itinerary such as the right type of transportation, accommodation and destinations; right amount of sightseeing and quality of meals; professional tour-conductors and a correct marketing approach; maximum entertainment in the right amount; reasonable free time, documents required and so forth. Combining the right mixture i.e., concentrating the product and understanding the consumers/clients leads to the success of a tour company.

Reservation: It is a very important function of all types

of travel agencies. A travel agency consistently makes linkage with accommodation sector, transport sector and other entertainment organisations to reserve rooms, and seats in the cultural programmes and transportation. However, prior to reservation, a successful travel agency must understand the needs and requirements of the individual clients.

Accommodation's Reservation: The travel industry interaction has shown that different tourists require different types of accommodation for example American tourists want private baths; German, Australian, English, French, Italian and even the Indian outbound tourists have their own requirements concerning the accommodation. It has also observed that this requirement is different for business travellers, corporate travellers and others.

Generally, tours are sold on a two person per room basis, that is usually referred to in the industry as twin-in-sharing. However, those wishing to have a single room are charged, a single room supplement. Therefore, tour planner/manager must strike a balance in obtaining quality accommodations at a price that is affordable so that the largest market can be solicited for participation in the tour. Further, tour planner must take a familiarisation trip prior to the development of the client itinerary.

During the 'Fam Trip' the tour planner must identify the requirements of various lodging properties for tours that he is going to organise. He may have various sources for collecting information regarding hotels such as:

- Hotel and travel index
- Tour and travel planners
- Official hotel and resort Guide
- State and national tourist offices
- IATA index
- Othersources available as Hotel sales representatives, referral organisations, airline computer reservation systems and his own's reservation office.
- FHRAI

Hotel reservation means an advance request for accommodation. The reservation is the important function of hotel management which consists of receiving,

documenting and analysing room requests. It is also known as selling accommodations.

Before the reservation of accommodations, the tour planners and hotel managements enter into a contract. Practically, the negotiation for the price or room rate is based on two types of contracts between the tour planner and the hotel management. These are:

- Guarantee Contract
- Allocation Contract.

The tour operators/tour planners make the reservation on the basis of following information:

- No. of people in a particular tour
- No. of rooms required
- Room type desired
- Client preference
- No. of Children
- Arrival Date
- Departure Date
- Name and address of clients
- Arrival by/from
- And other requirements i.e., need a plan, single room. I ground floor rooms.

On the basis of this information a tour operator purchases rooms in bulk, negotiates prices or rates, confirms and makes it sure that the accommodation according to his itinerary planning.

Today, many tour companies are using Computer Reservation Systems (CRS) for the reservation of accommodations. This system can be used in producing a list of participating hotels in a specified city or to indicate the room types 'and rates that are available in each hotel property for a specified period. The property description containing information about facilities, reservation policies, room options, credit cards, hotel vouchers, and acceptance, can be obtained through a computer.

Basic of Amadeus or Galileo CRS system

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- describe CRS
- understand background of CRS
- state the popular computerized reservation systems of the world
- explain about Amadeus.

CRS: The full form of CRS is Computerised Reservation System. It is a system for booking airline seats, hotel rooms and taxis for a passenger or tourist on a global basis. It can be operated with the help of Internet browsers. Computers are a must for operating a CRS package. It makes booking processes faster and efficient.

Data are automatically updated in a CRS database at regular intervals. A modern travel agency or tour operator cannot succeed in the dynamic national and global markets of the new millennium without the assistance of this unique invention, which is a byproduct of Information Technology (IT) revolution.

Before we give the details and applications of a CRS, we would like to give the format of a comprehensive booking chart. It is used to manually get the air, rail and hotel reservations for a client.

If at all he does so, he would be able to get only far and few bookings. Thus, there was a need to overhaul the reservation system in the parlance of tourism administration so that tourists and travellers (especially, international travellers and frequent fliers) could be the chief beneficiaries.

The advent of computers, Internet technology and high-speed data access and transfer systems ushered the travel agency business into a new era. This era is better known as CRS Era. In this section, as well as in those that follow after it, we shall discuss the CRS in detail. But we must remember that we have graduated from the manual reservation chart given in Fig. 7.9 to the CRS; the former is the building block for the latter !

Background of CRS: In the parlance of tourism administration, the following tasks are to be executed before the tourist leaves his station of origin to start the tour;

- Booking of air tickets.
- Booking of hotel rooms.
- Booking of cruise line tickets.
- Booking of train tickets.
- Arrangement/booking of taxis or cars on hire.
- Travel insurance.
- Planning of journey and preparation of the final itinerary.

- Financial/economic aspects related to the tour.

The tourist-to-be cannot handle these tasks on his own because many firms, transporters and carriers are involved in the preparation of the tour programme.

The efficiency of a travel agency is determined how quickly and carefully he defines the tour programme of its customer and ensures that this programme is executed in the same manner in which, it was supposed to be executed. So, the tour manager or travel executive defines a set of documents that helps him understand the precise requirements of the customer.

We have given the formats of many such documents in this volume. These are manual documents. "The executive fills them up and acts according to the wishes of the client. He calls tour operators, hotels, airlines, cruise lines, coach operators, insurance agents etc to get the bookings or seats for the client. It takes him nearly 25 to 30 days to finally get air tickets, coach bookings, hotel bookings, visas etc. Remember that this is a" manual system.

It may be useful for domestic tourism operations only. Many firms in India are using manual systems to get bookings of hotels, airlines, cruise ships, coaches, resorts and other places in which, the tourist shows interest. But it is riot an efficient and time-saving procedure by any norm.

Add to this the need of the tourist to travel to a foreign country and we have a plethora of problems. The travel executive has to contact a foreign airline. He has to get the bookings done in airlines, book hotel rooms, arrange insurance documents, get visas, arrange teaches for excursions etc for the client in question.

No.
Date

BOOKING CONTROL CARD

Book By				Phone : 000 0000 0000				Contact				Cash/Credit			
Ticket Delivery Instructions															
Name of Passenger				Age		Nationality		Diet		Ticket No.		Bill to Name & Address			
								V NV							
								V NV							
								V NV				F&B			
								V NV				TAX/INS FEE			
								V NV				THRU/THRU/CRASH			
								V NV				BILL NO TOTAL			
No.	From	To	Date	PNR/Train No	class	ETD	RSN	CMFD BY	Serial No	Hotel	Stage/COUPON NUMBER	From	To	Status	X.O. No
						ETA	STATUS								
CANCELLATION REQUEST RECEIVED ON				TICKET CANCELLED AT ON				CANCELLATION FEE RS				SERVICE CHARGES RS			
REFUND AMOUNT RS				CREDIT NOTE NO											

A manual reservation chart incorporating hotel and rail bookings for clients

The answer lies in the realm of information management. Information! has to be collected, analysed and re-processed (for the benefit of the customer) through computerised systems, satellites, optical cables, Internet and networks like MAN and WAN.

A system that integrates all the types of booking and execution procedures of a travel agency through a well-defined computerised system is called Computerised Reservation System or CRS. with the advent of this system, the travel and tourism industry has become efficient, high-end performer and profitable.

Our valued readers must have learned a lot about Information Technology (IT). The CRS is a complicated extension of the IT revolution. Its focus is the travel and tourism industry. Its users are travel agents, airlines, hotel chains, coach operators, cruise lines etc.

Popular computerised reservation systems of the world: There are many popular Computerised Reservation Systems. These systems use satellites, Internet technologies and WANs to reach thousands of their customers around the globe. These systems help these users make bookings for their clients through computerised packages that are menu-driven and easy to operate.

There are 2 popular and successful CRS systems, there are many other CRS systems operating in different parts of the world. The, commonly used CRS systems are being provided by two renowned organisations, as follows

- 1 Galileo (www.galileo.com).
- 2 Amadeus (www.amadeus.com) We shall discuss the CRS product made and marketed by Amadeus.

Amadeus the organisation

Amadeus Global Travel Distribution was founded in 1987 by Air France, Iberia, Lufthansa and SAS. It became fully operational in 1992. in 1999 Amadeus became a public limited firm its shares were listed on the bourses of Madrid, Paris, Barcelona and Frankfurt. In December, 2001, Air France, Iberia and Lufthansa held 59.52 per cent of the shares of the company.

The rest of the shares were in the hands of financial institutions and individuals. The number of employees of the firm (worldwide) is 4,000. It has presence in 200 markets of the world, according to the list of territories published by the ISO. The firm has 3 major business lines, as follows

- Travel distribution (to travel agencies and sales offices of airlines).
- E-commerce (being marketed by the name of e-travel and with operational sites in the USA, Europe and Asia-Pacific).
- IT services.

Currently, Amadeus is providing 19 products in the global markets. These are : (a) Agent Net; (b) Travel Assistance; (c) PQC; (d) Proweb; (e) Amadeus Vista; (f) Email; (g) PNR SMS; (h) Learning City; (i) Automated refund; (j)

Ticket Quota; (k) Travel Choice; (l) Seat Buster; (m) Ticketing Scripts; (n) Negotiated Fares; (o) Cruise; (p) Cruise; (q) Ticket Writer; (r) Satellite Ticket printing; (s) Central Ticketing Solution; and (t) Rail Software.

The headquarters of Amadeus are located-in-Madrid. Spain. The address of its headquarters is as follows:

Amadeus Global Travel Distribution

Salvador de Madariaga 1

28027 Madrid

Spain

Phones : + 34 91 582 0160

Fax : + 34 91 582 0188

E-mail : info@amadeus.net

Its regional offices are located at the following places

A Bangkok (for Asia pacific, Australia and New Zealand).

B Buenos Aires (for South America).

C Miami (for the USA, Canada, Central America and the Carribeans).

The company has a full-fledged network of National Marketing Companies (NMCs). Regional offices, mentioned earlier, provide support to these MNCs for marketing, help-desk support, customer service and co-ordination of commercial relations with the providers of Amadeus products in their respective regions.

On December 31, 2001, the Amadeus System was being used by 57,600 travel agencies around the world. It is the only GDS that offers airlines the possibility to externalise their sales and distribution efforts. This GDS has ISO 9001 : 2000 certification.

It also has obtained Standard 2000 through Bureau Veritas Quality International (BVQI) for the quality of its management practices. Mr Jose Antonio Tazon is the President and CEO of Amadeus Global Travel Distribution, Mr David V Jones is the Executive Vice President (Commercial) of the firm. Amadeus is known for its Global Distribution System (GDS).

It is a multinational firm that provides travel industry technology to various members. engaged .in the travel and tourism industry. The firm provides marketing, distribution and IT services to the travel industry. The computerised GDS of the firm is being used by:

- a airlines
- b hotels
- c car rental companies
- d insurance firms and
- e travel agents

throughout the world. This system links providers with subscribers (including travel agencies and corporate travel departments), Airline Ticket Offices (ATOs), City Ticket Offices (CTOs) and corporate/private customers (through web products).

Amadeus in india

In 1994, Amadeus launched its Indian branch in New Delhi. Mr Ankur Bhatia is die Managing Dliector of the Amadeus India. This firm is responsible for operations in the Indian subcontinent. Amadeus has 26 branch offices across the subcontinent.

It has software installations in more than 72 countries. Its offices are located in India, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh and Nepal. The headquarters of Amadeus India are located at New Delhi, India. The address of its Indian headquarters is as follows:

Amadeus India D4/4

Vasant Vihar

New Delhi-110057

Phone : +91 11 2614 6633

Fax: + 91 11 2614 4161

E-mail : info@amadeus.net

Contact Persons : Mr Karan Buddhiraja/Ms Sapna Anand

Amadeus Tollfree : 1600 111 200

Sales (Delhi Office): 2335 2266

Amadeus crs domain an introduction to vista

The latest product offering by Amadeus is Amadeus Vista. It is the first fully browser-based front-office booking system. It allows the user to work in the graphical page or cryptic environment. It has productivity-enhancing feature such as Smart keys, Speed Mode, Scripts, Split Screen etc. It is easy to learn and operate.

The transaction time in securing a booking is greatly reduced, if the travel agent uses this system. It is one of the most popular CJRS packages of the world. This CRS increases productivity and has become synonymous with excellent customer service. Its installation by the travel agency leads to the generation of additional revenues for the agency.

The system is Internet-based. It is easy to install and operate. All the utilities are menu-driven and can be used with the help of the click of a mouse. The pop-up menu system helps the user move to any part of the booking programme through Amadeus Vista. Processing is also fast and efficient. That is why, Amadeus Vista is being accepted by a large number of travel houses and tour operators around the globe.

Key productivity areas: Amadeus Vista increases the productivity of the user and hence, that of the organisation in which, it is installed. In the context of its operations, the following key productivity areas have been identified :-

A Summary PNR : Full view of all the booked items at all the times.

B Travel Choice : Automatic processing of policies and preferences.

C Value Pricer : Easy and fast access to the best available prices.

D Smart Keys : Eliminates keystrokes by programming repetitive tasks.

E Speed Mode : Booking time reduced by clicking on highlighted host displays.

F Command Line Recall : Saves time by re-selecting previously sent commands.

Amadeus vista and critical business issues: There are 4 critical business issues that Amadeus Vista proposes to address. These are as follows;

A Improving employee efficiency and productivity.

B Improving customer service.

C Harnessing revenue generation opportunities.

D Reducing costs.

Clearly, these are the areas in which, most of the corporate firms and travel agencies are trying to generate results. Hence, the focus area of Amadeus Vista has absolute continuity with those of the firms (especially, travel agents and tour operators) of the new millennium.

Preliminary operations of amadeus vista: Let us study how we can use Amadeus Vista to book seats of airlines, rooms of hotels and cars/ taxis. We shall also learn how insurance bookings are done through Amadeus Vista.

Accessing amadeus vista: As stated earlier, Amadeus Vista is an advanced browser-based booking tool. This package can be accessed through the Net. Amadeus provides full support to its valuable clients in this context.

They can contact the firm at the office address mentioned in this chapter. In order to access Amadeus Vista, please proceed as follows;

A Get the URL provided by your NMC.

B Get connected to the Net.

C Go to the URL provided to you.

D Go to the Welcome Page of the URL.

E Click on the Vista button.

Hardware/software requirements for amadeus vista

You have to be an authorised Vista user to make use of its various utilities. You would be given an Office ID and Password to get access to Amadeus Vista. Contact Amadeus India at the office address given earlier, if you are based in India. International buyers can contact at the Madrid address of the firm.

E-ticketing solutions and meta search options

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- reserve the Air ticket through internet
- book the ticket for cruise transport through internet.

Meta search

Definition: A meta search engine is an online information retrieval tool that has the data of a web search engine to produce its own results. Meta search engines take input from a user and immediately query such engines for results.

Book an Air-ticket through On-line i-Ticket

- 1 Select whether trip is one way trip or round trip.
- 2 Select the traveling dates for one way trip select the starting date and for round trip select the return date too.
- 3 Select the class required.
- 4 Select the source and destination cities from the scroll down through all major cities and towns in India.
- 5 Specify number of passengers including children and infants.
- 6 Click on search and view all available flights from different airlines on the particular date.
- 7 Select convenient flight and click Book button to go to the billing page.
- 8 Enter your personal details including email id and phone number in the billing page.
- 9 Select the mode of payment option whether credit card, debit card or net banking account.
- 10 Check your e-mail to receive the ticket and take print out
- 11 Carry ID proof along the ticket at the time of Check-in.

RAILWAY						CM257
RESERVATION / CANCELLATION REQUISITION FORM						
If you are a Medical Practitioner						
Please tick () in Box					Dr.	<input type="checkbox"/>
(You could be of help in an emergency)						
Train No & Name			Date of journey			
Class			No of Berth Seat			
Station from			To			
Boarding at			Reservation upto			
S.No.	Name in Block letter(not more than 15 chars)	Sex (M/F)	Age	Concession/Travel Authority No.	Choice if any	
1					Lower/Upper berth	
2						
3					Veg./Non-veg. Meal for Rajdhani/Shatabdi	
4						
5						
6						
CHILDREN BELOW 5 YEARS (FOR WHOM TICKET IS NOT TO BE ISSUED)						
S.No.	Name in Block Letters	Sex	Age			
1						
2						

E-Ticket and Paper Tickets

- 12 Select e-ticket and follow the same procedure of i-Ticket.
- 13 Check email you will receive the E-ticket within 24 hours.
- 14 Take a printout and carry the E-ticket with an id proof at the time of check-in.
- 15 Select paper ticket at the time of booking you will receive paper ticket via courier within 3 working days.

Through phone

- 16 Give the following information's (Box 1) during reservation through phone.

- 17 Pay the fare to the travel office after getting the payment details.

Reservation/cancellation requition form

Book the ticket for cruise transport through internet

- 1 Follow the procedure of Air ticket reservation
- 2 Fill the form given in the Fig 1
- 3 Select the cities restricted to the riverine and coastal areas

Air Ticket Reservation		
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> Passport photo of the person booking </div>		
Name		
Form No		
Address		
Ticket No	Source/ Destination	Ticket cost
Date		
Other Details		
Passport No		
Contact details[telephone number]		
Email id		
Son/ Daughter/ Wife of		

Reset Form

Market research and tour package formulation, assembling, processing and disseminating information in destination

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- gain knowledge about importance of marketing in tourism
- state the various market mix and market research method in tourism.

Marketing in tourism: There are a number of definitions of tourism marketing. Tourism marketing could be defined as the “Systematic and coordinated efforts exerted by the NTOs and/or the tourist enterprises on international, national and local levels to optimise the satisfaction of tourists, groups and individuals, in view of a sustained tourism growth.”

Krippendorff has defined marketing, in tourism as follows

Marketing in tourism is to be understood as the systematic and coordinated execution of business policy by tourist undertakings whether private or state owned at local, regional, national or international level to achieve the optimal satisfaction of the needs of identifiable consumer groups, and in doing so to achieve an appropriate, return.”

According to Poynter (1993), “tour marketing is a systematic process consisting of marketing objective, strategies, schedules, marketing medias, focused on specific market segment and based on a substantial return on investment.”

World Tourism Organisation (WTO) at Ottawa Seminar, has defined tourism marketing as “a management philosophy which, in the light of tourist demand, makes it possible through research, forecasting and selection of tourism products/services from suppliers. On the line with organisation’s purpose and tourist satisfaction.”

The following aspects can be identified from the above definitions:

- Tourism, marketing is a thought provoking process
- Identification and selection of target market
- Positioning and product life cycle are important

- Future tourism marketing strategies
- Innovative/proactive marketing

Importance of Marketing in Tourism

Marketing helps to create new customers by way of first identifying their needs and then trying to satisfy these. Customer satisfaction becomes a crucial part of travel sales.

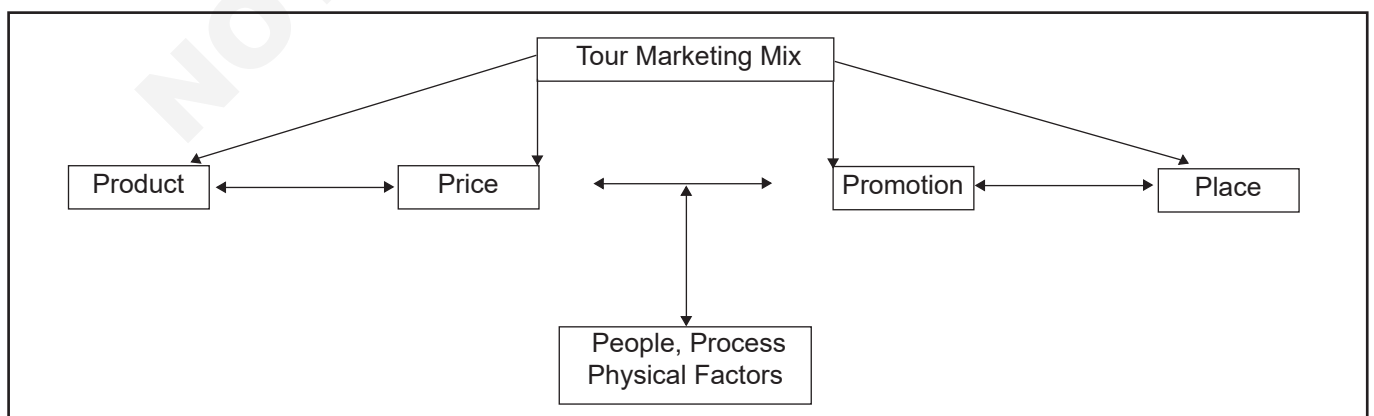
The first task of the travel marketer becomes identification of the customer needs in order to guide the development of the suitable products and services and the second task is to motivate all the potential customers, through various means; to purchase those products and services.

The objective of marketing in tourism can, therefore, be stated to be as attracting and motivating all the potential customers or users of tourist services to a particular destination and not to another.

Tourism marketing, therefore, begins by a detailed assessment of the actual and potential demand and, on this assessment, development of facilities and services for use by customers.

‘Tourist demand’ can be divided into ‘actual’ and ‘potential’; ‘actual’ demand represents those who actually travel to a certain tourist destination while ‘potential’ demand is the number of persons who fulfil the basic elements of travel and are, therefore, in a position to travel.

Marketing of tourist product has certain peculiar characteristics. Although general principles of marketing which have proved quite effective in the marketing of tourist product, there are certain differences in approach. These differences are because of the peculiar character of the tourist product.



Product

- Service
- Range
- Benefit
- Quality
- Brand Name
- Guarantee

Price

- Market Oriented
- Cost
- Penetration
- Credit terms
- List reductions
- Backward
- Skimming

Promotion

- Advertising
- Personal selling
- Direct marketing
- Sales Promotion
- Public relations
- Sponsorship

Place

- Location
- Convenience
- Vendors
- Accessibility
- Transport
- Channels

People, Process and Physical Evidence

- Roles People play
- Creativity
- Peripheral
- Customer satisfaction
- Customer involvement
- Simplicity

Product: Product is one of the five basic elements in the marketing mix. The effectiveness of planning, the marketing mix, depends as much as on the ability to select the right target market as one devising a product which will generate high levels of satisfaction.

The tourist has to believe that the product offers added value in order for it to be successful. Decisions regarding the formulation of product involve the following factors:

- 1 Services
- 2 Competitiveness of Competitors
- 3 Quality
- 4 Brand name
- 5 Features and benefits
- 6 Govt. rules and regulations
- 7 Carrying capacity of the tourist destination
- 8 Attitude of host population
- 9 Competitions
- 10 Socio - Economic development

Price: The pricing policy selected for tour package is often directly related to the performance of its future demand. Setting the right price is also crucial to the profitability of the tour enterprises. Thus, of all the decisions in marketing mix, pricing decisions are the hardest to make.

The reasoning behind this is that the seasonality of demand and perishability of the product. The price of

a tour package determining its life in the market. Thus, a tour planner should add value while determine the price of a package 'our. Moreover, the tour costing and pricing manager must considers, the following factors that influence price policies of a tour operator:

- 1 Extent of the competition
- 2 Psychological considerations
- 3 Special promotional price
- 4 Product Quality
- 5 Product distinctiveness
- 6 Methods of distributions

Taking into consideration above cities factors, a tour operator applies the following:

- 1 Penetration pricing
- 2 Skimming pricing
- 3 Rate of return pricing
- 4 Cost plus pricing
- 5 Market - oriented pricing
- 6 Backward pricing

Promotion: The aim of promotional activities is to create demand for a product or service. Promotion is a broad term that includes advertising, personal selling, public relations, publicity and sales promotion activities. To sell the tour package it is necessary to:

- 1 attract attention
- 2 create interest
- 3 create market
- 4 create desire
- 5 create lead
- 6 get action

The tour marketing manager, in order to ensure the efficiency in promotional effort should considers:

- 1 The full range promotional methods
- 2 Budget
- 3 Competitions
- 4 Evaluation of past promotional campaigns
- 5 Tourism trade and suppliers - attitude behaviour
- 6 Tourism vendors.

Place: Another decision for the tour marketing manager concerns what distribution channels will be used. This decision affect the other elements of the marketing mix because the tour package is one where no transfer of ownership takes place and the service is simply rented or consumed. This requires an effective distribution system. The selection of a suitable channel based on:

- 1 Analysing the product
- 2 Nature and extent of market
- 3 Intermediaries available opinions and reactions are analysed and where there is a sharp difference on an issue, interchanges are permitted and the final forecasts are presented.

- 4 **Sales Force Composite Method:** As per the sales force composite method, the sales forecasting is done by the sales force. It is also a judgement-based method. Each salesman develops the forecast for his respective territory, the territory-wise forecasts are consolidated at branch/area/region level; and the aggregate of all these forecasts is taken as the corporate forecast

It can be easily seen that the sale force composite method is similar to, but some what different from the jury method. The difference is chat while the jury method depends, on the judgement of a few executives, the sales force composite method seek to aggregate the judgements of the entire sales force.

It is a grassroots method'; the forecast originates at the grassroots-in micro level sales territories; the judgement of grass-roots level people; people who are closest to the marketplace forms the basis for the forecast.

- 5 **User Expectation Method/End Use Method:** As per the 'user expectation' or 'end use' method, the various users of the product under forecasting are listed first; then their individual demand of the product is ascertained; and from that data, the demand forecast for the product is consolidated. This method is alternatively known 'survey of buyers' intentions.

The survey of the buyers will given an idea of the total likely consumption of the product, the buying plans of the users and the likely market share for the company doing the survey.

The user survey can be made either on a sampling basis or on a census basis, depending on the size of the user group to be covered/Census survey will naturally provide a more reliable forecast.

- 6 **Market Share Method:** Sales forecast can be developed by yet another method- the market share method. The planned market share of the firm is the key factor in this method. The firm first works out the industry forecast, applies the market share factor and deduces the company forecast.

- 7 **Substitutional/Replacement Method:** A new product generally displaces some old products or old use patterns. When nylon came to India, it was a totally new product. Those who entered the nylon business knew that it would in Some way replace cotton, rayon, coir and jute.

But they did not know by what precise quantity would it do so. The product was new and it could substitute a variety of existing materials in a variety of ways. Taking rayon as an example, nylon displaced rayon in two ways:

- In textiles, nylon filament yarn (NFY) displaced rayon filament yarn
- In tyre cords, nylon tyre cord (NTC) displaced rayon tyre cord

- 8 **Market Test/Test Marketing:** The new product has to be tried out in selected market segments. Normally,

firms, go in for full-scale manufacture and marketing of the new product only based on the results of some experimental marketing.

Different Methods of Market Test: Different methods are available under market test, like:

- Sales wave research
- Simulated test marketing
- Test Marketing

Of these, test marketing is the most reliable method as it amounts to a full-fledged marketing programme, but on a pilot scale.

- 9 **Analytical and Statistical Methods:** A wide variety of analytical and statistical methods are available for forecasting a firm's scales. The firm can choose the most appropriate one depending on its forecasting needs. The analytical and statistical methods are given, here, below:

- i Simple Projection Method
- ii Extrapolation Method
- iii Moving Averages Method
- iv Exponential Smoothing
- v Time Series Analysis
- vi Regression Analysis
- vii Complex econometric models

Market Survey Method : Its purpose, is collecting specific data concerning the market that cannot be had from the company's internal records or from external published sources, of data. When a market survey is used for generating relevant market information and such information forms the basis of the sales forecasts, the forecasting method is referred to as the market survey method of sales forecasting.

Market survey as a technique of market research and a technique of data collection from field.

on a travel agency makes a reservation for the tourists by giving complete information regarding the number of tourists, date and time of arrival, length of stay and what is required by the individual/ crop.

Travel agencies use different types of reservation techniques. However, today Computerised Reservation System (CRS) is widely used today Worldwide to make insistent reservation.

Accommodation's Reservation: The travel industry interaction has shown that different tourists requite different types of accommodation for example American tourists want private baths; German, Australian, English, French, Italian and even the Indian outbound tourists have their own requirements concerning the accommodation. It has also observed that this requirement is different for business travellers, corporate travellers and others.

Generally, tours are sold on a two person per room basis, that is usually referred to in the industry as twin-

in-sharing. However, those wishing to have a single room are charged, a single room supplement.

Therefore, tour planner/manager must strike a balance in obtaining quality accommodations at a price that is affordable so that the largest market can be solicited for participation in the tour. Further, tour planner must take a familiarisation trip prior to the development of the client itinerary.

During the 'Fam Trip' the tour planner must identify the requirements of various lodging properties for tours that he is going to organise. He may have various sources for collecting information regarding hotels such as:

- Hotel and travel index
- Tour and travel planners
- Official hotel and resort Guide
- State and national tourist offices
- IATA index
- Others sources available as Hotels sales representatives, referral organisations, airline computer reservation systems and his own's reservation office.

Hotel reservation means an advance request for accommodation. The reservation is the important function of hotel management which consists of receiving, documenting and analysing room requests. It is also known as selling accommodations.

Mostly hotels perform this function through sales representatives, own's reservation office in different locations, travel agents, airlines, cruise companies and tour operators.

Before the reservation of accommodations, the tour planners and hotel managements enter into a contract. Practically, the negotiation for the price or room rate is based on two types of contracts between the tour planner and the hotel management. These are:

- Guarantee Contract
- Allocation Contract.

Generally, the request for reservation for a Foreign Independent Tour (FIT) or Group tour should be in writing, either in the letter form or on a preprinted reservation form and it should be sent as far as possible in advance. However, for individual domestic tours or Group domestic tours, telephone is the quickest and the most efficient method of making request for hotel reservations.

Some tour operators have devised their own types of hotel request forms and print it locally. The request forms are

usually in different parts, may be in three to five parts. An original and two duplicate copies are sent to the hotel. The hotel management then return one of the duplicate copy with either their confirmation their refused on the request. The third copy is replaced in the client's file.

The other copies are used in 'commission due' and book keeping purposes. The tour operators/tour planners make the reservation on the basis of following information:

- No. of people in a particular tour
- No. of rooms required
- Room type desired
- Client preference
- No. of Children
- Arrival Date

The modern tourism marketing stages has increased manifold. Which are listed below;

- a Capitalize on voice searching., (esp hotdiers are using smart hubs to offer voice search capabilities with in room).
- B Using the artificial intelligence for more personalised services to the hotel customer and enables analysis data for marketing purpose the service are offered 24x7 on all days.

To enhance guest Experience & satisfactory through chat boats. This technology allows for communication in multiple languages and the chat boat can be setup to attempt cross - selling and upselling which can help to increase revenue. This chat boat are increasingly used for customer service because they are able to reply to customer very quickly, even when staffs are not available.

Augment reality technology: The augmented relative technology is over laying digital information to real world. Setting against replacing then with.

3D environments: By using in smart phones the guest can feature interactive wall maps, which are able to offer significantly more tourist information.

Customer experience feedback: The guest is not paying for their products as services but for the expense they encountered while touring the places by the facilitations.

What is tourism marketing mix: By advertising sale promotion, public relation & personal selling are the elements of promotional mix people plays a vital role in tourism. Customer service from using in tourism. People mix includes staffs, customer, & others which create tourism environment.

Preparation of Itinerary and post tour managements

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- preparation of itinerary and post tour managements.
-

Preparation of itinerary: Itinerary is prepared by the travel agent in consultation with the guest for final approval. It will be helpful in proper time management of the holidays by travelling place, activities and ultimately no wastage of time.

To prepare itinerary

- Collect all related travel documents and information
- Open a blank document in text editor/word.
- Divide your itinerary is to sections.
- Drop information to section.
- Finalize the tour by double check the work.

Itinerary provides the detailed plan of journey - list of the places for sign seeing - accommodation - food and transport - all prepared and given to the gun the timing tour finalization.

Post tour management

- Report to the company of the actual happenings.
- Inform any unusual events taken place.
- Difficulty in handling exceptional situation at tourist place like (strike, bandh) etc.
- Submit the tour guide report with daily events.
- Submit necessary vouchers, receipts and bills related to the tour & at right the accounts.
- Submit report on coustomer satisfaction for sending to the guest.
- Submit the group photo taken for record & reference.

Indian History in Ancient, Medieval and Modern time and growth of travel and tourism

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- **state the growth and development of travel related activity**
- **learn about British rule & genesis of modern Tourism in India.**

History of Tourism in India

Tourism in the early period : In the early days, pilgrimage or pilgrim travel assumed great importance. Ashoka the great, travelled a great deal in his eagerness to spread the doctrines of Buddha. Throughout his travels, from Pataliputra to Lumbini on to Kapilavastu and Sarnath and finally to Gaya, Emperor Ashoka had special memorials set up at each spot and also rest houses where travellers could rest.

Uniqueness of Indian Culture : India is a land of diverse cultures. The variations in physical, climatic conditions and the extent of exposure to other cultures have greatly influenced the traditions and culture of the different region.

Further, the greatness of India has been in accepting the best from all the invaders and intermingling the new customs and styles with the existing - this is visible in all aspects - music, dance, painting, sculptures, architecture. Indian culture is unique because of its diversity and variety in physical, religious, racial, linguistic and artistic fields.

Indian cultural heritage dates back to 5000 years. Very few countries in the world has a social and religious structure which withstood invasions and persecution and yet kept its identity by being resilient enough to absorb, ignore or reject all attempts to radically change or destroy them.

Pre-historic Influence : The Indus Valley civilisation is the earliest known in the region. Although little is known about the rise and subsequent fall of the civilisation, the twin cities of Mohenjodaro and Harappa (now in Pakistan) are thought to have been ruled by priests and held the rudiments of Hinduism.

These civilisations were known to possess a sophisticated lifestyle, a highly developed sense of aesthetics, an astonishing knowledge of town planning and a script language that has remained undeciphered till date.

Ancient Influence: The coming of the Indo-European group around 1500 BC provided the final blow to the collapsing Indus Valley civilisation. At the dawn of Vedic ages, the Indo-European group came in from the North and spread through large parts of India bringing with them their culture and religious beliefs. The Four Vedas, or the important books of Hinduism, were compiled in this period.

In 567 BC, the founder of the Buddhist religion - Gautama Buddha - was born. During this time also lived Mahavira,

who founded the Jain religion. Two hundred years later, in the 4th century BC, Emperor Ashoka of the Maurya dynasty, one of the greatest King of Indian history, led the Magadhan Empire based at Pataliputra (present day Patna- and capital of Bihar) to take over almost all of what is now modern India.

Medieval Influence : The Gupta dynasty was the greatest to rule in the north after the Mauryas, heralding a period known as the 'Golden Age of India', while in the southern part of India several different empires —the Cholas, the Pandyas and the Cheras — spread and grew, trading with Europe and other parts of Asia till the end of the 1100s.

Christianity entered India at about the same time from Europe. Legend has it that St. Thomas the Apostle arrived in India in 52 AD. In approximately the 7th century AD, a group of Zoroastrians, or Parsees, landed in Gujarat and became a part of the large mix of religions in India today, each of which adds its important and distinctive flavour. In the 15th century, Guru Nanak laid the foundation of the Sikh religion in Punjab.

Mughal Influence : The Mughals came from Central Asia and soon held sway over most of the northern parts of the subcontinent. Mughal rulers introduced Central Asian art and architecture to India.

In addition to the Mughals and various Rajput kingdoms, several independent Hindu states, such as the Vijayanagara Empire, the Maratha Empire, and the Ahom Kingdom, flourished simultaneously in southern, western, and north-eastern India, respectively.

Colonial Influence : The Europeans -- Portuguese, French, Dutch, Danish and British -- started arriving in the early 1600s after Vasco da Gama successfully discovered a new sea route from Europe to India in 1498. In 1617, the British East India Company was given permission by Mughal Emperor Jahangir to trade in India. In the aftermath of India's First War of Independence in 1857.

Tourism in the modern period : Air India came into existence with the enactment of Air Corporations Act on 1 st August 1963, when the entire air transport industry in India was nationalised. Today, it has an extended network of air routes linking all the five continents of the globe.

Air India organises special programmes to give a wide publicity for projecting India. Soon, Indian Airlines began, with a view to establishing an air transport network to link the remotest places in India. Today, Indian Airlines has expanded its wings to nearby countries as well.

They have introduced many schemes and offers like the Discover India package, *. Leave Travel Concessions encouraged domestic tourism. Concessions for the youth and students also promoted travel within the country.

In the early 1960's The ITDC (India Tourism Development Corporation) was started to provide western comforts to International visitors. The ITDC played a major role as a catalyst in developing a modern superstructure (eg, The Ashoka group of hotels) for International tourists. The government set up infrastructure to promote tourism by establishing Air India and tourism promotion offices in London and Frankfurt.

The tourism cell in the Ministry of Aviation was upgraded into a department. The private sector was invited to establish luxury facilities for the high spending tourist. The first pioneer in this field was Mohan Singh Oberoi, who began his career in the hotel business with the Clarks Hotel in Shimla and the Grand Hotel in Calcutta.

The Progress of Tourism in India: (Development through successive five year plans)

There was also no allocation for tourism development during the First Five Year Plan. However, during the Second Five Year Plan (1956-61) tourism became a constituent of the Planning process with a token allocation of Rs.3.36 crores for both Central and State sectors put together.

The Third Plan witnessed the beginning of an era for the development of activities connected with tourism, particularly adventure tourism, by the establishment of a winter sports complex at Gulmarg in Kashmir. The India Tourism

Development Corporation (ITDC) was set up in 1966 to develop tourism infrastructure and promote India as a tourist destination. The approach during the Fourth and Fifth Plan was expansion and improvement of tourist facilities with a view to promote 'Destination traffic' as distinct from transit traffic.

Integrated development of selected tourist centres like Kovalam, Gulmarg, Goa, Kullu-Manali etc., received much attention and became the symbolic models of resort tourism in India Cultural Tourism was emphasised with development of Buddhist Centres and heritage monuments in India through master plans.

The Sixth Plan (1980-85) was a major landmark in the history of Indian Tourism. The first ever 'Tourism Policy' of the country was announced during 1982 which specified the development objectives and provided an action plan based on 'Travel Circuit' concept to maximise the benefits of tourism.

During the Seventh Five Year Plan (1985- 90) and the sector was accorded the status of an industry. It thus became the watershed plan for Indian tourism. The National Committee on Tourism set up by the Govt.in 1986 to evaluate the economic and social relevance of tourism in India and to draw up a longmeasure for ensuring accelerated growth of tourism.

On the basis of these recommendations a package of incentives were made available for tourism industries and the Tourism Finance Corporation of India (T.F.C.I) was set up to finance tourism projects.

"The development Plan for tourism during the Eighth Plan (1992-97) was based on the National Action Plan for tourism" presented in the Parliament on 5th May, 1992.

It proposed to achieve diversification of tourism product,accelerated growth of tourism infrastructure, effective marketing and promotional efforts in the overseas markets and removal of all impediments to tourism.

A major component of the Action Plan was the development of all inclusive 'Special Tourism Areas' and intensive development of selected circuits.

The Department of Tourism also constituted special Task Force for the promotion of Schemes/projects for the development of Tourism in the North Eastern States, Sikkim, J& K, Arunachal Pradesh and Hill districts of Uttar Pradesh and West Bengal, Senior Officers of the Department along with representatives of respective State Governments and industry visited these areas and action plans for North Eastern States, Jammu & Kashmir were prepared.

In order to give boost to foreign exchange earnings, employment and income generation through tourism activities, Expert House status was granted to tourism units in the Ninth Five Year Plan. Govt. also called for effective coordination of Public & Private efforts so as to achieve synergy in the development of tourism in India.

Art and architecture of tourism significance

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- learn about Uniqueness of Indian culture
- gather knowledge about influence of culture and heritage of India
- learn about culture tourism in India
- state the significance of Indian Art and Architecture
- find various places of Art and Architectural Importance in India.

Uniqueness of Indian Culture : Indian cultural heritage dates back to 5000 years. Very few countries in the world has a social and religious structure which withstood invasions and persecution and yet kept its identity by being resilient enough to absorb, ignore or reject all attempts to radically change or destroy them. The following are the cultural impacts of India during different period.

Cultural Tourism in India : Cultural tourism has been defined as ‘the movement of persons to cultural attractions away from their normal place of residence, with the intention to gather new information and experiences to satisfy their cultural needs’. These cultural needs can include the solidification of one’s own cultural identity, by observing the exotic “other”.

Cultural tourism includes tourism in urban areas, particularly historic or large cities and their cultural facilities such as museums and theatres. It can also include tourism in rural areas showcasing the traditions of indigenous cultural communities (i.e. festivals, rituals), and their values and lifestyle.

Cultural tourism India is the predominant factor behind India’s meteoric rise in the tourism segment in recent years, because from time immemorial, India has been considered the land of ancient history; heritage, and culture.

The government of India has set up the Ministry of Tourism and Culture to boost cultural tourism in India. The ministry in recent years has launched the ‘Incredible India!’ campaign and this has led to the growth of culture tourism in India to attract from the tourists.

India has had many rulers over the centuries and all of them made an impact on India’s culture. One can see the influence of various cultures in dance, music, festivities, architecture, traditional customs, food, and languages. It is due to the influence of all these various cultures that the heritage and culture of India is exhaustive and vibrant. This richness in culture goes a long way in projecting India as the ultimate cultural tourism destination given boost to tourism in culture in India.

The most popular states in India for cultural tourism are:

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| • Rajasthan | • Tamil Nadu |
| • Uttar Pradesh | • Uttaranchal |

Among the various states for cultural tourism in India, Rajasthan is the most popular. The reason for this is that Rajasthan is famous for its rich cultural heritage. The state is renowned for many magnificent palaces and forts which showcase the rich cultural heritage of Rajasthan.

The various folk songs and music also reflect the cultural heritage of Rajasthan. A large number of festivals and fairs are held in Rajasthan such as the camel festival, Marwar festival, and Pushkar festival. All these attract many tourists to Rajasthan for they get to see the rich culture of the state.

Tamil Nadu is also famous for cultural tourism in India, for it shows the Dravidian tradition and culture. It has many temples which mirror the rich cultural heritage of India. Dances give baratha natyam and Uttar Pradesh has a lot of tourist places which also testify to the rich culture of the country.

The most famous monument is the Taj Mahal in Agra. Cities like Varanasi, Allahabad, Vrindavan, and Ayodhya in Uttar Pradesh also attract a large number of tourists for they encapsulate beautiful Vignettes of India.

Uttaranchal is also famous for cultural tourism India. This state has the Himalaya mountains which are called the abode of the Gods. Many ancient temples are found in the Kumaon and Garhwal regions of the state.

Indian art and architecture : The art and architecture produced on the Indian subcontinent, which is now divided among India, Pakistan, and Bangladesh. In the Western world, notable collections of Indian art can be seen in the British Museum, in the Victoria and Albert Museum, and in the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston.

Introduction : Although a great deal of Indian secular art was produced, it was essentially made of perishable material and has not survived. What has survived in the medium of stone is religious art.

In both Buddhist and Hindu art, symbolism in gesture, posture and attribute contains many levels of meaning. In images of the Buddha, different hand positions (mudras) signify religious states, such as the Enlightenment (Nirvana), Meditation, and Preaching.

In Hindu sculpture, deities are frequently represented with many hands to indicate their power to perform multiple deeds at the same time, and the hands each carry their characteristic attributes.

Indus Valley Civilization : The Indus civilization produced many statuettes made of steatite and limestone. Some statuettes resemble the hieratic style of contemporary Mesopotamia, while others are done in the smooth, sinuous style that is the prototype of later Indian sculpture, in which the plastic modeling reveals the animating breath of life (prana).

Also found in this region are square steatite seals adorned with a range of animals, including naturalistically rendered bulls; ceramic storage jars with simple, stylized designs; toys with wheels; and figurines, which may be mother goddesses. Bronze weapons, tools, and sculptures indicate a sophistication in craftsmanship rather than a major aesthetic development.

Indian Painting : The most famous surviving Buddhist paintings are from the caves at Ajanta. Little is known of Hindu wall painting except for fragments at Ellora and Tanjore (see Thanjavur). The earliest Indian manuscript paintings are Buddhist, of the Pala dynasty; they have a delicate color.

The 13th to 15th century Jain manuscript illuminations, painted in vivid red, blue, and gold, are most easily recognized by the characteristic protruding farther eye. It illustrates a variety of Hindu subjects: the ragamala series (musical modes), the legendary epics and romances, and particularly Krishna's deeds. Rajput painting is characterized by lyrical landscapes, sinuous grace in the depiction of the human form, and an interest in perspective.

The Modern Era : Indian artists adapted Western techniques and produced gouache paintings to suit the tastes of European buyers. Patua scrolls, containing swiftly executed watercolor illustrations of many subjects, became one source for the revival of Indian themes during the 20th cent. A growing nationalist sentiment pervaded Indian art in the early decades of the 20th cent. Along with the conscious assimilation of Western styles.

Major modern artists include Abanindranath Tagore, Nandalal Bose, Jamini Roy, Amrita Sher Gil, N. S. Bendre, M. B. Samant, Francis Souza, I3hagwan Kapoor, M. F. Husain, Bhupen Khakhar, Ram Kinker, Dhanraj Bhagat, Amar Nath Sehgal, Chintamani Kar, and Amina Ahmad.

Colonial Architecture : With colonization, a new chapter in Indian architecture began. The Dutch, Portuguese and the French made their presence felt through their buildings but it was the English who had a lasting impact on architecture.

Indo Islamic Architecture : The medieval period saw great developments in the field of architecture. With the coming of Muslims to India, many new features came to be introduced in buildings. The development of Muslim Style of Architecture of this period can be called the Indo-Islamic Architecture or the Indian Architecture influenced by Islamic Art. The Indo-Islamic style was neither strictly Islamic nor strictly Hindu.

Ancient Architecture : Indian architecture is as old as the history of the civilization. The earliest remains

of recognizable building activity in the India dates back to the Indus Valley cities. Among India's ancient architectural remains, the most characteristic are the temples, Chaityas, Viharas, Stupas and other religious structures.

Cave Architecture : The cave architecture in India is believed to have begun in the third century BC. These caves were used by Buddhist and Jain monks as places of worship and residence. Initially the caves were excavated in the western India. Some examples of this type of cave structure are Chaityas and Viharas of Buddhists.

Rock Cut : The Rock-cut structures present the most spectacular piece of ancient Indian art specimen. Most of the rock-cut structures were related to various religious communities. In the beginning, remarkable Buddhist and Jain monuments were produced in areas such as Bihar in the east and Maharashtra in the west and later the pallavas created lot of root at exavated rock temples at manuplate.

Temple Architecture : In ancient India, temple architecture of high standard developed in almost all regions. The distinct architectural style of temple construction in different parts was a result of geographical, climatic, ethnic, racial, historical and linguistic diversities. Ancient Indian temples are classified in three broad types. This classification is based on different architectural styles, employed in the construction of the temples.

Various places of Art & Architectural Importance in India

With the establishment of Hindu kingdoms in South India, the south Indian school of architecture began to flourish. The most notable achievements of the Pallava rulers were the rock-cut temples of Mahabalipuram and the temples of Kanchipuram. The Chola, Hoyasala and Vijayanagar rulers also did remarkable job in the field of architecture. The temples at Thanjavur, Belur and Halebid bear testimony to the architectural excellence of the South Indian rulers.

In north India, there developed a new a different style of architecture. This was called as the Nagara style architecture. In central India, the Chandela rulers built a magnificent temple complex at Khajuraho. With the coming of the Muslim rulers, there developed a new architectural style in Indiath the Indo-Islamic architecture.

The Indo-Islamic style was neither strictly Islamic nor strictly Hindu. The architecture of the medieval period can be divided into two main categories. They are the Delhi or the Imperial Style and the Mughal Architecture.

It was followed by a new style of architecture that developed as a result of colonization of India. This style of architecture came to be called as Indo-Saracenic. The Indo-Saracenic architecture combined the features of Hindu, Islamic and western elements. The colonial architecture exhibited itself through institutional, civic and utilitarian buildings such as post offices, railway stations, rest houses and government buildings.

World heritage monuments and other prominent monuments of India

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- learn about heritage Tourism in India
- gather knowledge about various world heritage & other prominent Monuments of India.

Heritage tourism : The National Trust for Historic Preservation in the United States defines heritage tourism as “travelling to experience the places and activities that authentically represent the stories and people of the past,” and cultural heritage tourism is defined as “travelling to experience the places and activities that authentically represent the stories and people of the past and present.”

Heritage Tourism in India : Heritage tourism India has registered an immense growth in the last few years, India has always been famous for its rich heritage and ancient culture. So the onset of heritage tourism in India was long anticipated. India’s glorious past and cultural diversity make a potent blend which attracts millions of tourists each year to its heritage tourist attractions.

The government of India and the Ministry of Tourism and Culture encourage heritage tourism in India by offering several benefits to the Indian states that are particularly famous for attracting tourists.

India’s rich civilization long had which made heritage is amply reflected in the various temples, palaces, monuments, and forts that can be found everywhere in the country. This has led to the increase in India’s heritage tourism.

The most popular heritage tourism destinations in India are: Taj Mahal in Agra Mandawa castle in Rajasthan Mahabalipuram in Tamil Nadu Madurai in Tamil Nadu Lucknow in Uttar Pradesh Delhi, the Indian capital The maximum number of tourists who come to India visit the Taj Mahal for it is one of the 7 wonders of the world. It is made of marble which has intricate inlay work done in an exquisite and meticulous style.

The Mandawa castle in Rajasthan, built in 1775 reflects India’s rich heritage and attracts thousands of tourists each year to Rajasthan which seems especially popular for its antique paintings, jade jewelry, palaces, and costumes. Mahabalipuram has sculptural and architectural sites which are considered the greatest in India. Mahabalipuram has cave temples that have been carved from granite blocks and belong to the 7th century. This is the primary reason why many heritage tourists in India visit this place.

The tourism of heritage in India has also increased due to the interest of many foreigners in the temples of India. Madurai is known as the ‘temple city’ due to the presence of a large number of temples in the city. And for this reason, many tourists go and visit the place each year. The most important temple in Madurai is the Meenakshi temple.

Heritage tourism India has also been popularized because a lot of tourists go to Delhi which is not only the capital of India but also has many heritage sites.

The most famous heritage sites in Delhi are the Red fort, Jama Masjid, Humayun’s tomb, and Tughlaqabad fort.

Heritage tourism India has grown in recent years but there is scope for further development which can be attained only through combined efforts of the government of India and the tourism boards.

Historic monuments and temple

- The **Taj Mahal** is one of India’s best-known sites and one of the best architectural achievements in India, located in **Agra**, Uttar Pradesh.
- **Fatehpur Sikri** It was the first planned city of the Mughals and also the first one designed in Mughal architecture, an amalgamation of Indian architecture, Persian and Islamic architecture and was declared a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 1986.
- **Varanasi** The ghats of one of the oldest city of the world
- The **Mahabodhi Temple** is a 2000-year-old temple dedicated to Gautam Buddha in Bodh Gaya, Bihar. It is a UNESCO World Heritage Site.
- The **Nalanda** is located in the Indian State of Bihar, was a Buddhist centre of learning from 427 C.E to 1197 C.E partly under the Pala Empire.
- According to historical studies the University of Nalanda was established 450 C.E under the patronage of the Gupta emperors, notably **Kumaragupta**.
- The **Brihadishwara Temple in Thanjavur**, Tamil Nadu built by the Cholas. The temple is one of India’s most prized architectural sites.
- The **Airavateswara temple** is located in the town of **Darasuram**, near **Kumbakonam**, Tamil Nadu
- The **Shore Temple**, along with the collection of other monuments in **Mahabalipuram**, Tamil Nadu have been declared as UNESCO World Heritage Sites
- The **Harmandir Sahib** is one of the most respected gurudwara in India and the most sacred place for Sikhs. The gurudwara is located in Amritsar, Punjab, India.
- The **Baha’i temple** in **Delhi**, was completed in 1986 and serves as the Mother Temple of the Indian Subcontinent. It has won numerous architectural awards and been featured in hundreds of newspaper and magazine articles. (It is a/so known as the Lotus Temp/e.)
- The **Hawa Mahal** in **Jaipur** also known as Palace of Winds
- The **Taj Mahal Palace** is an icon of **Mumbai**
- The **Victoria Memorial** in **Kolkata**, built during the British Raj

- The **Chhatrapati Shivaji Terminus in Mumbai**, built for Queen Victoria

Some of the world top - UNESCO world heritage sites

- Nubian monuments - Egypt
- Cape floral region - South Africa
- Machu Picchu - Peru

- Great barrier reef - Australia
- Bruges - Belgium
- Yellow stone national park - USA
- The Great Wall - China
- The Tajmahal - India

Cultural Tourism resources - Indian classical and folk dance, Music and Musical Instruments, art and handicraft, fair and festivals

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- **learn knowledge of indian classical and folk dances of india**
- **state the music and musical instruments in india**
- **information about art and handicraft**
- **learn about fairs and festivals.**

Learn knowledge of indian classical and folk dances of india

In dance, India has one of the largest repertoires in the world. There are eight main classical forms : Bharata Natyam (Tamilnadu), Kuchipudi (Andhra Pradesh), Odissia (Odisha), Kathak (Bihar), Manipuri (Assam and Manipur) Mohini attam, Kathakali (Kerala) and Yakshaganam (Karnataka)

There are four minor classical forms, Chakiarkoothu, Konishattam, Kudiattam and Ottamthullal, all originating in Kerala. Distinct styles of folk dances are provided by a staggering multiplicity of races, linguistic and ethnic groups and religious and social organizations.

They have an unharnessed progressive growth because they are representative of the regional cultures. Folk art is identified with the common man's life, distinct from the classical form, which is clearly for the elite.

Indian dance scene can be categorized

Tribal dances

The important traditional "Brato" of Bengal is an invocational dance, favored by barren women, worshipping their presiding deity after their prayer for progeny is answered.

Fig 1



The "Bihu" of Assam is part of the Bihu utsav after the harvest season is over. Both men and women perform it in daylight. The dancers sing and form themselves in parallel rows or circles. Drums and pipes accompany the dance and music.

The Nagas have their Own harvest dance "Khambahim". It is a form performed by two separate groups of men and women each standing in a separate row "Akhu" is another similar form.

The Lakshadweep has its own folk dance form called the "Lava".

The Dadra and Nagar Haveli tribals have their charming form of "Tarpa" In which the dancers tap A their feet on moonlit nights, encircling the "Tarpakar" to dance past midnight, to the accompaniment of music. The "Bhavada" dance uses masks and colorful costumes in this region.

The State of Tripura. with its large tribal population of Riangs. who worship both tribal and Hindu Gods, subsists On agriculture. To ensure a good harvest they propitiate Goddess Lakshmi by a dance of young maidens called "Hawaii".

Andhra Pradesh houses many tribals like the Banjaras. Chenchus and Malhuns. In the "Dandaria dance", apart from instruments, time is also kept by striking sticks one against the other. The Banjaras and the lambadis have costumes of bright hues and skirts and blouses studded with small mirrors. Their Dance called "Bhanjara" has agriculture as the main theme, with the women going round and round, clapping with gestures suggestive of agrarian occupations.

In Tamilnadu.the Toda and the Kurumba tribals have rites and rituals and festivals all centered on agriculture. Kummi and Kolattam are the two most famous folk dances performed by the tribal women of Tamilnadu. in Kummi, claps keep the beat, while in Kollattam beat is maintained by striking two sticks.

Each dancer has two sticks often painted in bright colors. In "Pinna/ Ko/altam", some sections of the group systematically build up a visual pattern, plaiting colored ropes together, hung from a peg in the ceiling, synchronous with the music, in course of the dance, the "Pinna" or the plait is also slowly unwound to synchronise with the music and the ropes are back to their single-strand form, exactly when the dance and the music stop.

The Muslim community of Tamilnadu have a monopoly over the dance called "Pulli Atam" where men dress

elaborately like the stripped carnivore, with tail, claws, whiskers etc and dance in the streets. "Karagam" is another dance of Tamilnadu dedicated to the Goddess Mariamman, the Goddess of health and rain. Men and women balance pots of uncooked rice on their heads to the accompaniment of pipes and drums.

"Kunitha" is a generic term, symbolic of a ritualistic dance in Karnataka. In the 'punja Kunitha', a wooden structure is carried on the head with a deity within it. The "Dollu Kunitha" is a popular drum dance of Karnataka. The men play on large drums decorated with colored cloth, slung around their necks, beating on it as they dance.

Temple dances: "Padayani" or "Padeni" is associated with temples in Alappuzha, Kollam and Kotayam districts of Kerala and it is a very colorful spectacle. The word stands for a military formation in rows. Here it represents a series of divine and semi-divine impersonation by artistes wearing big masks of different designs and shapes.



In Goa, a Portuguese colony, "Ghode Mudne", horse presentation is very popular. Dancers in gorgeous attire, armed with swords, recapture the mood of valour and daring of the Goan warriors through movements and music.

Maharashtra is famous for devotional dances on the Krishna theme. The "dindi" and "Kalaa" describe Krishna's pranks. A vocalist sings to the accompaniment of the mridanga. Around them men and women dance and this takes place usually during the Ekadasi day of Karthik.

The hilly regions of North West have their "Tarpa nach" or 'Parvi Nach' to offer. "Tarpha" or "Pavri" is a wind instrument made of dried gourd and is associated with the Kokna tribals.

Gujarathi women appease their Goddess of fertility through a dance called "Garba". All the nine days of Navaratri festival, they perform this dance, carrying perforated earthen pots on their head with lighted lamps as they sing, clap and dance to a simple rhythm in circular formation of Goddess Durga. When men perform it, it is called "garbi".

The "bhangra" of Punjab is one of the most popular dances in India. It is performed by men during Baisakhi festival. The dancers do balancing tricks, which reveal their acrobatic skills. The dancers dress in colorful lungis and turbans. Women of Punjab perform the "gidda" which is also a group number popular during the festival of Teeyam to welcome the rains.

Haryana has its specialty in the form known as 'Dhamal' where the Daph is a circular drum played by male dancers. Men play the dance alone or with women. Lahoris another form of Haryana, performed by women alone after their fieldwork is over.

..... also boasts of many famous forms. The most important dances are Karma, Jatra, and Paika. On the Ekadasi day in the month of Bhadra, a branch of Karma tree is planted and pooja is done. Then Handia, a form of rice beer is offered and the men, women and children of the dance troupe dance without any pause for three days.

The tribes of Arunachal Pradesh have a varied tradition of dances, dance dramas, pantomimes and operas based on Buddhist lore. They wear masks representing animals, demons, gods, and goddesses and perform mostly in the monasteries during festivals. The dancers of Sikkim use masks for their Buddhist dances but they have an independent form, which deviates away from Indian traditions.

Classical Dances: All the seven or eight recognized forms of classical dance have one common root dating back to some 2000 years. It was Sage Bharata who meticulously organized and defined every conceivable element of the art of dance and put his rules and norms into his works. "Natya shastra" regarded as the 5th Veda. It belongs to 400 B.C. Oral transmission has preserved the interpretations of scholars and teachers of yore till the present times.

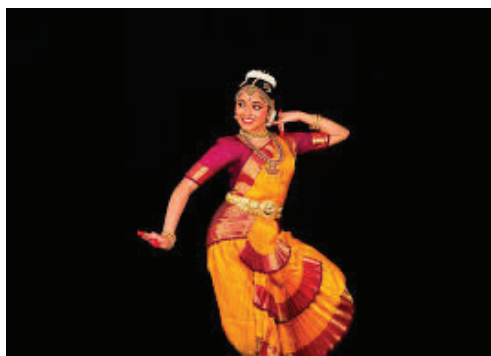
In ancient times an exclusive class of people dedicated their lives solely to dance and they were called Devadasis or Divine Servants. They were based in the temples and they were the authentic repertoires of the grammar and discipline of classical dances in India. The order of Devadasis gave room to the school of "Nattuvanars" or teachers to carry the banner of this divine art.

Bharatanatyam: According to popular belief, Brahma the creator devised Natya. The Rigveda gave the Lyric for it, the Sama Veda its tune, the Yajur Veda the expression or Abhinaya and the Atharveda came up with the "rasa" or the aesthetic part.

Nine rasas are defined with corresponding "Haste Madras". Nataraja Siva in cosmic dance is the deity of dance. Bharata Natyam is a blend of "Nrta" or pure

rhythmic element. “Nrtya” rhythm and expression combined) and “natya” (the dramatic element). “Nrtya” is expressed through the hands, posture, eyes, mouth, and facial muscles.

Fig 4



The format of a Bharathala Natyam uses an Alarippu, (invocation in nrta) Jathlswaram, (ritta in combination of svatas) Sabdam (love song). Varnam (perfect Wend of pure dance and abhinaya) in the first half. The latter half contains lighter items like ladam (mostly lyric, music, devotional, secular or romantic) and Javali (eroticism). The concluding piece is pure dance known as Tillana with a smattering of Sahitya or words.

Kuchipudi: The classical dance of Andhra Pradesh called Kuchipudi is said to have flowered from a village called Kuchelapuri or Kuchelapuram in Krishna district. From its birth around 300 B. C.

Fig 5



It has remained a continuous and living tradition of this region, performed by men of the Brahmin community, it is associated with religion and is presented only at certain temples during festivals. In recent years women have also been included into this dance. Solo performances are also given.

In the popular pot dance, the artist balances a water-filled pot on her head with her feet on the rim of a brass plate, which she has to move as she dances. Water should not spill from it. In another form, the dancer has to dip her toes in different pots of colored powder and as she dances, she has to trace out a colored picture on the dance floor.

Costumes and make-up are not very elaborate as in other dances. The music is carnatic and the mridanga. the violin and the clarinet are the accompaniments. The greatest contributors for the growth of Kuchipudi are Vedantarn

Lakshinarayana, Chinta Krsihnamurthy Tadeipalli Peraiah sashthy and Vempatti Chinna Satyam.

Mohini Attam: A heir to the heritage of the Devadasi School is Mohtni Attam, mainly performed in the temple precincts of Kerala. Older than Kathakali, Mohini Attam symbolizes the Enchantress, the form which Lord Vishnu once assumed, for the cause of the good. It is a solo performance.

Fig 6



The guiding theme of Mohini Attam is devotional love to Vishnu and Krishna in larger pad The steps are delicate and circular, the expressions subtle and placid. It Is a delicious blend of the abhinaya nuances of Bharata Natyam, the graceful movements and suppleness of limbs characterizing Odissi and the sober and attractive costumes special to it.

The typical ‘Kasavu’ sari of Kerala in captivating white with a gold border makes for the costume. The music is Carnatic. Manipravala (a combination of Malayalam and sanskrit) is adopted in the lyrics, mainly composed by Swati Tirunal and Iraitman Thampi nowadays the mridangam and Violin have replaced them.

Kathakali: Kathakali is perhaps the most refined, scientific and meticulously defined dance form of Kerala. The verse for it is called “Atta-Katha” and always relates to the Hindu Epics and mythologies, mostly the Ramayana and the Mahabharatha and the scripts are in Sanskritised Malayalam.

The mudras and the steps adhere painstakingly to the elaborately prescribed norms. No other form of dance has such a complicated variety of facial and body-make-up and costume. Sharp-colors are deeply painted on the face.

Fig 7



Odissi

The Devadas or the divine servants in temples who were solely responsible (or nurturing the traditional dances in India rendered Odissi in its traditional form. This dance is mentioned in the sculptural inscriptions in the Brahmesvara temples of Konark in Odisha.

Fig 8



Thanks to the Abhinaya Chandrika and research work in various dance traditions of Odisha, such as the Maharis, Gotipuas and Bhandanrtya and temple sculpture, it was revived in the 20th century. An interesting constraint here was the dance had to be performed by young boys. Entry to the stage was banned to anyone after the age of 18.

The "Trihanga", divides the body into three parts, head, bust and torso. It is the basic body grammar of Odissi. It takes after Bharata Natyam for hasta mudras" and "abhinaya". Krishna is often the central character of an Odissi presentation and there is also an under stress for Lord Jagannath, the presiding deity of Odisha.

The verses of the Geet Govinda, known as "Sapta-Padi", composed by Sri Jeyadeva- a devotional poet of the 13th century A. D. forms the basic of several pieces. The music is famous for its mellifluous flavor. The name of Guru Kelucharam Mohapatra stands out when we think of the Growth of this art form, in the last century.

Yakshagana

Fig 9



Yakshagana is the major form of Karnataka. The 'Bhootha'dance is another ritual prevalent in the state. Here the dancer paints his face with bright yellow colour.

He performs frenzied dances and is believed to get influenced by spirits. With dance, drama, music, colour. Yakshagana is a grand spectacle.

Stories from Ramayana and Mahabharata form the theme of Yakshagana. A typical Yakshagana dance recital starts with the entry of the musicians. The lead musician lends voice to the characters in a stylized manner. All-important characters enter the stage from behind a hand-held curtain. Yakshagana is traditionally performed during the night.

Know about Music & Musical Instruments in India

Indian music attempts to assign each of the standard notes in its octave (Sa, Re, Ga, Ma, Pa, Dha, Ni, Sa) to some sound in nature. Music, which is held as the highest level of sanctity finds exhaustive treatment in concept, theory and practice in the world's most ancient texts of wisdom, the Vedas. In India from ancient times, music: is treated with reverence befitting a divinity.

South Indian tradition recognized the "Sa, Re, Ga, Ma, Pa, Dha, Ni, Sa" or seven basic notes and later on the existence of 22 standards, based on the number of sound vibrations produced by a note every second called pitch, Raga is the soul of Indian music, with its uniqueness and aesthetic quality.

Associated with every Raga are a divine mood, belief, restrictions, and rituals. The major elements of a complete musical rendering in classical style may be said to be Sruti, (base note) Sahitya, (lyric) Raaga, (combination of notes) Laya (rhythm) and Tala (beats).

Sculpture and architecture have concrete works of past artisans, literature passes on from generation to generation at least in the oral form, dance has many sculptures of the past to quote on, but we are unable to glean much about the state of music in India from the ancient times. Music of Saraswati, Hanuman, Krishna's flute, Bharata's Natya Shastra and Sangeeta Ratnakara are the only sources on ancient music.

The North Indian school of music is called Hindustani and that of the South as Carnatic. These two systems have maintained their individuality, which got so deeply rooted that there appears to be a little chance of a merger, except during music festivals where they appear in the form of Jugalbandhis. Southern musical literature has been developed in Telugu, Tamil, Kannada and Malayalam while the Northern one is that of Hindi.

During the reign of Alauddin Khilji during the last few years of the 13th century. Hindustani music took a different course. The earliest form of Hindustani music called Dhrupa-Pada (Dhrupad), showed itself in India. Baiju Bawra, a wandering Sadhu, is credited with having popularized it, as also Nayak Gopal and Amir Khusru, musicians of the court of Alauddin.

The innovation of ragas by them and developed by Haridas Swami and later by his disciple, the legendary **Tansen of Akbar's court**, enriched the Dhrupad to a highly refined form.

Mirza Ghalib introduced the **ghazal**. Simple, melodious, romantic and soulful and popular among the common folks. The important periods of the development of Hindustani music are Allaudin Khilji's (1296-1316). Akbar's (1556-1603) and post Mughal (1760 onwards),

Rabindra Sangeet is another form of music developed by the great Rabindranath Tagore who churned out some 2500 lyrics. Rabindra Sangeet in Bengal.

Subramania Bharathi in the South used music and verse as powerful media to stir up the national sentiment. Rabindra Sangeets have a good integration of Carnatic, Hindustani and Western music.

Bharathi had an eye for nature so he put that all into his music and lyrics. The one feature, which is present in Bharathi and not so evident in Tagore, is the dedication to divinity. Goddess Sakthi was Bharathi's greatest obsession.

From the 18th to the 19th century period, the Southern musical Trinity, Syaama Sastri, Muthusamy Dikshidar and Tyagara/aflourished with their immortal compositions on their "Ishta Devatas" or their favorite deities, each one penetrating the heart of the listener.

Syama Sastri extolled Amba and Tyagaraja pleaded with Sri Rama in Telugu and Dikshitar paid obeisance to Devi In Sansknt. Subbararna Dikshitar ar (1839-1906) did great service to Camatjc music through various publications. In the same time other musicians like Veenai Dhanammal.

Mahavaidyantha Iyer and Arryakudi Ramanuja Aiyangar contributed i n great measure to the systematization and popularization of music in the South.



Aryahudi Ramanuja Iyer was responsible for bringing South Indian music concepts to the precise and concise "Katchen" format which is widely prevalent today in many temples. Other farnous musicians-lyricist composers of the South are Maharaja Swati Tirvnal of Travancorc. Mysore Vasudevachar Patngm Subramania Aiyar and Papanasam Slvan of the erstwhile Madras Presidency.







North India has also seen several stalwarts appearing on the scene in the 19th and 20th century. Ustad Faiyaz Khan of the Gaikwad court probably made the first attempt at fusion. The minstrels, Sufis and other wandering groups have also been responsible for promoting music like Baiju Bawara, Jeyadeva, Kabir, Surdas and Meera.

Indian Musical Instruments: In Hindustani music, the major stringed instrument is usually the sitar. a long necked fretted lute, or the sarod, a plucked lute without frets and with a considerable shorter neck than the sitar. Other major stringed instruments include tho Sarong, a short-necked bowed lute and the Surbahar, which is much like the sitar but is larger. Wind instruments include thi Shehnal, which has no Keys and the Bansuri, a Bamboo flute blown from the side and with six or seven holes. Rhythmic accompaniment is provided by the Tabla. a pair of small drums played with the fingers and the Tappura provides the Drone.

In Carnatic Music, the Veena, a long necked and fretted plucked lute with seven strings is commonly used. The veena takes the place of the Bansuri and the Nagaswaram, an oboe-like, double reed instrument with finger holes takes the place of the shehnai. The principal secondary instrument is the Violin. Several Percussion instruments are used to provide rhythmic accompaniment, most notably the Mridangam. a double conical two headed drum.




PERCUSSION INSTURMENTS

	<p>Dholak</p>	<p>Dholak is a very popular folk drum of northern India, Pakistan and Bangladesh as well. it is barrel shaped, at times a cylindrical drum, with skins no both sides.</p>
	<p>Dumroo</p>	<p>Dumroo is probably the oldest and traditional form of percussion instrument in India. Dumroo is the only remaining form of hour-glass drums which are seen in ancient Indian statues.</p>



	Ghatam	GHATAM replicated or conveys the meaning of the pot in Sanskrit. it is an ancient percussion instrument and ancient like other musical instruments mridangam, veena, etc it is manufacture mostly in Manamadurai Tamilnadu due to the clay type
	Ghungroos	Ghungroos are very famous Musical Instrument in India. Ghungroos are usually the small brass bells. it is a musical accessory used by performers of all classical dances.
	kanjeera	kanjeera is a very old and traditional instrument which is very popular in South Indian classical performances. kanjeera is secondary percussion which is played as an accompaniment with the mridangam
	Kartal	Kartal literally means rhythm of the hand which is made of wooden blocks with holes for the fingers and circular copper plates, pairs of Kartals are played with both hands.
	Khol	Khol is usually used traditionally for accompanying Bhajans and Kirtans. Its high skin is relatively small with a diameter of about 9- 10cm, which gives it a particularly high, piercing sound.
	Manjeera	Manjeera is basically a set of small cymbals and is a ubiquitous component of dance, music and bhajans. it is a very ancient instrument seen on ancient temple walls. Manjeera is the most inexpensive and easy to play instrument,

	Mridangam	The Indian Musical Instrument Mridangam is one the most popular classical instrument of South India. Mridangam accompanies vocal, instrumental and dance performances.
	Pakhawaj	The Pakhavaj in India is also called Madal, pakhavaj, pak-aj or Maradala, as it is a barrel-shaped two headed drum
	Tabla	Tabla is the most popular pair of drums in the Indian Sub- continent. Tabla is a pair of drums which consists of a small right hand drum called Dayan and a larger metal one called bayan.

WIND INSTRUMENTS

	Bansuri	Bansuri is basically a folk instrument, invariably linked to the lives and playfulnesses of Krishna. However, it was during the Bhakti movement that Bansuri raised to prominence.
	Harmonium	Harmonium usually belongs to the family of free-reed aerophones. The instrument is a small, table-top size organ which has bellows at that is pumped by one hand while the other hand plays the keyboard.
	Shehnai	Shehnai the instrument is believed to have introduced in India by the Muslims. Shehnai is the predominant double reed wind instrument used in North Indian music.

STRING INSTRUMENTS

	<p style="text-align: center;">Sarangi</p>	<p>Sarangi has a hollow body and made of teak wood adorned with ivory inlays. it consists of forty strings of which thirty seven are sympathetic.</p>
	<p style="text-align: center;">Sarod</p>	<p>Sarod is a popular Indian classical musical instrument which is similar to the Western lute in structure. Among the followers and connoisseurs of Hindustani classical music Sarod is one of the most important musical instruments.</p>
	<p style="text-align: center;">Sitar</p>	<p>Sitar is one of the most popular Indian classical instruments and it comes under the category of a chordophone in the lute family. Sitar had neck crafted from toon or teakwood and a resonator carved from a large seasoned gourd.</p>
	<p style="text-align: center;">Tanpura</p>	<p>Tanpura in India is a drone instrument of that accompanies Dhrupad singing and is the most fundamental of all instruments of India Classical Music.</p>
	<p style="text-align: center;">Veena</p>	<p>Veena the traditional instrument of India is also known as Saraswati Veenawhich is a musical instrument of South India. Veena is a classical instrument basically plucked stringed instrument that is used to accompany Carnatic music.</p>

Indian Crafts : Crafts are an integral part in the life of an Indian, despite the rapid social and technological changes that are taking place. In the Western world. special artists create craft objects and they are considered as luxury items.

Handicrafts can be defined simply as objects made by the skill of the hand and which carry a part of the creator as well as centuries of evolutionary tradition, it can range: from the simple clay- lamps to the diamond -studded jewellery items.

Handicrafts consists or objects created by skilled people

for religious rituals, like wedding and celebrations and for personal use as well as luxurious ones created by specialized craftsmen for specific requirements.

Handicrafts bring a great sense of grace to every home be il the poor hut or the opulent star hotel There is a timeless quality in these craft objects, for they have evolved over centuries and continue to be made even today with the same sentiment.

There are three main classifications of crafts

- Folk crafts
- Religious crafts
- Commercial crafts

People for their personal use, or for a limited client base create folk crafts. Folk embroideries done by the village women folk of India are a good example. There are craftsmen who are specialized in creating textiles or jewellery which meet the criteria set up by a particular group of people, usually a particular caste or community. They have their own distinctive designs and styles.

Religious crafts are developed around religious centers and themes. These craft items are connected with religious institutions and relevant ceremonies. Various religious places in India are specialized in particular craft items. For example, Varanasi and Kanchipuram in Tamilnadu specialize in weaving clothes for religious ceremonies, particularly silk materials. Similarly Puri in Odisha, which is a big pilgrim center, is connected with crafts like Patachitra - a painting on cloth and wood and stone carvings.

They even have sub groups, which work for particular groups, and their tools and techniques may vary. The Weavers, the Dyers, the Printers, the Goldsmiths and the Carpenters are some of the commercial craftsmen.

Durries: Long strips of durries are prepared specially for serving food for the guests during festivals and marriages. The durrie is a cotton-woven thick fabric meant for spreading on the floor and it is an indigenous floor covering with a variety of designs and patterns. Weaving of a durree is a common sight in almost all of the Indian villages.



In the states of Punjab and Haryana, the Jat women weave durrees for their personal use. Jaisalmer and Barmer in Rajasthan produce woolen durries. Uttar Pradesh is an important center for the commercial weaving of these durrees. The durrees produced here have geometrical patterns woven in strips, diamonds and lozenges.

Carpets: Pile carpets were probably introduced into India from Iran. During the Mughal period, this craft flourished in Agra, Bhadohi and Lahore. Kashmir developed this carpet industry in the 15th century. Here the carpet making closely follows the shawl-weaving tradition. It is specialized in designs based on Persian and Central Asian styles.

The important centers of carpet weaving in India are **Srinagar** in Kashmir, **Jaipur** in Rajasthan and **Amritsar** in

Fig 11



Punjab. **Mirzapur, Agra** in Uttar Pradesh and **Warangal** and **Elluru** in Andhra Pradesh & Bhadohi in varnati

Wood Works: Wood-carved temples are surviving till date in Himachal Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh in India, each region has developed its own style of structures and carvings. Local traditions and locally available wood varieties influence them a lot.

Number of folk forms has been developed in woodwork all over India. Toys for children, utility goods and religious objects are the main ones. Woodcarving also helps develop templates that today can be used for many things. Woodwork from India can give inspiration for decorating the home or designing.

Festival Crafts and Grass Crafts

Floor Decorations: Women decorate their home according to their own fantasies and ideas. This is one of the most expressive craft forms. The flowing linear patterns on the floor of beaten clay are worked with rice paste. Different states have different names for this: it is **Alpana** in Bengal, **Aripana** in Bihar and Uttar Pradesh, **Mandana** in Rajasthan and Madhya Pradesh, **Rangoli** in Gujarat and Maharashtra and **Kolam** in South India.

Fig 11



Festival Crafts

Ganesh Chaturthi, idols of Lord Ganesh are made in all possible shapes and sizes both by the women folk and also by skilled craftsmen. These idols would be immersed in holy rivers after the pooja. In Bengal, a number of vratas, fasts undertaken by women necessitates the making of clay images.

Fig 12



Folk wall murals: A number of ritualistic paintings are prepared on the walls of homes in India. Some are for festive occasions and others are associated with rituals. In Bihar, the murals on the house walls depict episodes from the Puranas.

In certain parts of Uttar Pradesh and Rajasthan, murals are prepared on the walls merely for the purpose of decorating or embellishing them.

Fig 13



Jewellery and Metalware

Regional Jewellery: The Tribals of Assam patronize silver jewellery but the others use mostly gold items. The Thurio earring, which has a most distinctive design of its own in the form of a lotus with a heavy stem, is a common item. It is made of gold and studded with rubies. Necklaces and pendants of other neighboring regions are also common here.

In west Bengal, silver and gold Jewellery are made. Delicate filigree works are practiced here. Tara Kama and Pan Kama are some of the finest pieces of jewellery, which are meant for the hair. The Tara Kantas are pins made in the form of flowers and stars. The Pan Karta is a betel leaf ornament, which is fixed at the center of the hair bun.

In Odisha, the dominant technique employed is that of granulation and filigree. Both gold and silver are patronized. Mainly arm jewels, necklaces, nose rings and anklets are prepared. Sompongis another nose ring, which is of the stylized pagoda type from which hangs delicately worked chains each ending in a small pipal leaf. Another peculiar jewel item of this area is the Banka worn on the forearm.

Punjab has hair ornaments that are different from the other parts of the country. Here the Tikka is flat and circular with small pendants hanging in the front of the Tikka.

The Pipal Patra made out of silver pipal leaves fastened to an enameled piece of silver is commonly worn by the women folk of this area. Here necklaces are formed out of large metal plates, which are engraved with traditional designs and filled with green and yellow enamel. The nose ornaments of this area are highly specialized. The large sized nath and balahi designs of single leaf are specials of this region.

Kashmir differs a lot from the other regions in jewellery. The most important designs here are for the ear ornaments. These are known as Kan Balls or Jhumka normally worn by the Muslim women on both the sides of their head. Then comes the common Zululand, a neck jewel item. Engraving and cut works are the important techniques used here.

In South India, wearing of silver jewellery is mostly associated with the tribals and the rest resort to gold items only. The Chettinad (of Tamilnadu) jewellery made of uncut rubies is one of the finest. The Addigai is an important neck item also made of uncut rubies set in gold. Mangal Matai, a long necklace made of mango shaped pieces studded with uncut rubies and diamonds is another specialty of this area.

Nowadays diamond jewellery has caught the fancy of the South Indian women. The Thalli, a necklace, which is worn during marriage, also has various patterns.

Kerala has a rich variety of gold designs but precious stones are very rarely used. Necklaces are available in various shapes and designs. The Garuda necklace is famous here.

North India is famous for a special form of jewellery called Meenakari combined with the Kundan technique. Very delicate stuff are developed using these techniques. First, a Basic form of the jewellery is created with hollow spaces allowed for the stones to be inserted. Then the Meenakar fills it with lac and engraves delicate designs on it. Lines are engraved to hold different colors.

First the colors, which require the maximum temperature, are filled in and fired. Then the other colors are applied and fired until both the sides are enameled properly. Then the Kundan worker places the stones in their respective area. The piece is then polished with a leather cloth. Different types of jewel items are prepared by this method and Jaipur is the main center specialized in this technique. This art is also practiced in Delhi, Lucknow and Varanasi.

In India, the mastery over the mining, smelting and working of metals developed from ancient civilizations. The ancient Indians used to make weapons of defence from the available metals.

Over the years the availability of metals increased and shaped vessels were developed gradually for personal kitchen purposes apart from tools and items of armor.

Fig 14



Fig 17



Fig 15



Fig 18



Fig 16



Pottery, Terracotta and Papier Mache Pottery

Fig 19



Fig 20



Fig 21



The art of handling of clay called Pottery was one of the earliest skills known to the Indians. From time immemorial, lumps of clay were hand-moulded to form toys and deities of worship. The advent of the Potters wheel gave man the task of making beautifully shaped pots for his personal use. The movement of the wheel and the pressure exerted by the hands on the clay gives new shapes and forms.

Fig 22



Terracotta

The rural parts of India commonly display terracotta animal figures in places of worship or under the mango or pipal trees in the vicinity of temples. The potters mostly do the terracotta figures. In some parts of Indian villages, the women folk create their own forms of Gods for worship and other decorative pieces for adorning their houses.

In Bihar, Bengal and Gujarat, during festivals, the women prepare clay figures to propitiate their Gods and Goddesses.

Fig 23



Fig 24



Fig 25



The relief-worked plaque of Moela in Rajasthan has a distinct style. Here on flat surface local deities are created with moulded clay. They are then fired and then painted brilliant colors.

Gorakhpur in Uttar Pradesh has villages where clay figures of animals are done.

Tamilnadu is famous for the terracotta figures of the Aiyandar Deity. The figures are huge and they are found standing guard at the entrances of villages protecting the insiders from evil spirits. Gujarat also has votive figures like horses with riders, etc.

Papier-Mache

Many craftsmen from Central Asia and Persia had accompanied Tamur Lane to India and were placed in Samarkhand as well. There this young dynamic Prince saw the strange craft made of paper pulp. He learnt the art and later when he became the king after his father's death, spread this art among the craftsmen of his region.

The base of this craft is paper pulp coarsely mashed and mixed with copper sulphate and rice-flour paste. Then moulded by covering the mould with a thin paper and then with layers of this mixture. The designers then sketch the designs intricately and finally it is lacquered and polished in bright colors. A touch of golden color is always found on all papier-mache products owing its root to the Persian design.

Fig 26



Textiles: India has a wide range of textiles of varied designs and manufactured by numerous techniques when compared to other countries in the world. The varied topography of India from the snowy mountains to the rich river valleys and from the lush forests to the arid deserts as well as the various cultures brought down here from the invaders have influenced the growth of a number of textile weaves.

Woolen Weaves: The shawls of Kashmir are well known throughout the world. They are made of superfine quality

Fig 29

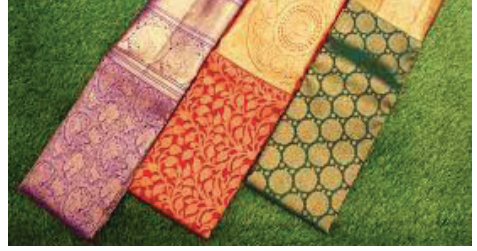


Fig 30



Fig 27



Fig 31

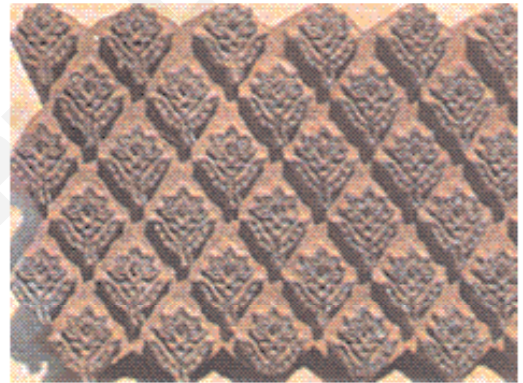


Fig 32



Fig 28



Fig 33



Fig 34



wool with intricate designs and excellent workmanship. They are reputed in the international market for several centuries. Kashmir makes a range of shawls like the Kani shawl, the double colored pashima, the soft Sanloosh, the majestic woolen shawl, the Dhussa, the men's long shawl with its woven border and the fine Ambli or embroidered shawls.

Fig 35



Exhibitions, Fairs and Festivals

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- learn about popular fairs and festivals musical concerts, trade Exhibitions and Art galleries in India and Worldwide.

Fairs and Festivals Of India

India is worldily known as a land vibrant celebration; one can see the culture and life of India during the celebrations of various fair and festivals, celebrated with high sprit in each and every town in India. By and large the flow of festivals continues through out the year in India.

There are noble cause and meaningful identity behind each fair and festival, based upon rituals, traditions, legends, monsoon, history, while many express devotion to the deities of different religions.

There are religious fair, historical fair, long life marriage based festivals, animal worship fair, cattle fairs, monsoon fair, changing season fair, all festivals denote vivacity, colour, high sprit, dedications, ebullience, peace, power, humanity messages, appetizing food, sports activities, artistic performance, prayers and rituals. Obviously, when it comes to tourism, fair and festivals are on the priority among the tourists to coincide the trip to witness amazing festivals of India.

The major Celebration in India include Holi, Id, Christmas, Diwali, PushkarMela, Ganapati, Navaratri, KumbhMela, Republic day, Pongal, Onam, SurajkundMela, Goa Carnival, Snake Boat Race, Desert Festival many more, and these fair and festivals reveals diverse regions, religions and communities.

During these celebrations of the fair and festivals, each of them reflects the life style and vigour of the people. Most of the celebrations are based on rituals of prayers, exchanging goodwill, decorating houses, wearing new clothes, Jewellery, music, singing, and dance and feasting..

All Indian fair and festivals have lots of diversity according to the culture, life style, language, religion of each states and region, like Durga Puja (Navaratri) is major festivals of West Bengal, Ganapati in Maharashtra, also in the western and eastern parts of India, Pongal in Tamilnadu, Onam in Kerala, Goa Carnival, Christmas and New Year in Goa, car Festival of Puri, Pushkar fair in Rajasthan, Snake boat fair in Kerala, Holi in North India, KumbhMela in Haridwar and Varanasi, republic day in Delhi, Diwali is the festivals which is celebrated with almost same sprit all over India and Dance festival in Manalbpur.

If someone wants to see the deep roots of the culture, belief, life style, living, food, art, traditions of India, the fair and festivals are the window to view the true colour of India.

Pongal

Pongal is one of the most wonderful and harvest festival of Tamilnadu. India being an agriculture country, where 70% of population of India live in villages and depends

on agriculture. Therefore most the big events of fair and festivals are related to cultivation. The festival like Pongal are celebrated in all over India with different name, identity and rituals.

Makar Sankranti: MakarSankranti is a Hindu festival. It is celebrated throughout India as a harvest festival when farmers bring home their harvest. It marks the beginning of the sun's journey from Dakshinayana to northern hemisphere (the Uttarayan) when it enters the sign of Makar (the Capricorn). The Festival introduces kite enthusiasts worldwide.

Holi : Also, known as Festival of Colors, Holi is the most anticipated festivals on the Hindu calendar. 'Holi' falls on the full moon, in the month of Phalgun, which spans the end of February and the beginning of March. Holi celebration begins with lighting up of bonfire on the Holi eve. Holi is a spring celebration and the exuberant ritual of putting color.

Tyagaraja festival : The Tyagaraja festival is celebrated in the memory of Tyagaraja. Tyagaraja, a South Indian composer and saint was born in 1767. He has composed a number of Telugu songs in praise of Lord Rama. Many young poets and musicians are inspired by this man's amazing work.

Every year, South Indian musicians assemble at Thiruvaiyaru- 13 kms from Tanjore, to sing in his praise. People, young and old, sing in perfect harmony. The melody is such that one cannot remain untouched by its sheer devotion and divine resonance.

Ganga SagarMela : GangasagarMeia is the largest and the most important fair celebrated in West Bengal. This fair is held where a nexus is formed by Ganga and Bay of Bengal. Hence the name GangasagarMeia. This festival is a major attraction for millions of pilgrims from all over India.

It is said that a dip in the Ganga purifies their 'self and thus 'punya' can be. A special 'puja' is performed which is offered to the Sun God as a thanksgiving for good harvest. It is also believed that the girls who take the holy dip get handsome grooms and the boys get beautiful brides.

Vasanth Panchmi : The ceremonial welcomes spring when people, colorfully attired, especially in bright shades of yellow, dance, sing and make merry. In West Bengal, 'Saraswati' - the goddess of learning is worshipped. The festival is celebrated with great fervor in the university town of Santiniketan.

Shivaratri : All over the country, Shivratri is observed as the night, when Lord Shiva danced the 'Tandav' his cosmic dance. Fasts and prayers mark the day and devotees throng the temples. The major Shaivite temples at Varanasi, Kalahasti (Andhra Pradesh) and Chidambaram (Tamil Nadu) are noted for their special celebrations.

Gangaur : The most important local festival in Rajasthan, Gangaur celebrations last for eighteen days. It is

dedicated to Gauri, a manifestation of goddess Parvati. The festival is celebrated by girls and married women throughout Rajasthan.

The images of Gauri are ornamented and offerings are made. This is also an auspicious day for young people to select their life partners. Colorful processions with the town band playing, horses and elaborate palanquins make it a fascinating spectacle.

Teppam : Teepam is widely celebrated every year in Tamil Nadu from mid-January to mid-February during the full moon month which in Tamil is known as Thai. Fantastically dressed and bejeweled images of the goddess Meenakshi and her consorts undaresvara are floated on rafts. All along the shore, the devotees chant hymns as a bevy of bands beat drums in tempo with their chants.

Desert Festival : The desert festival celebrated in the golden city of Jaisalmer has an aura of its own. The festival becomes lively with legions of puppeteers, acrobats, and folk dancers add splashes of color. Camel races are of great significance and camel polo is a big attraction. The turban-tying competitions and the best-dressed Rajput contests add to this three day long festival.

Nagaur Fair: Nagaur bustles with life during its annual cattle fair which is one of the largest in the country. Exciting games and camel races are part of the festivities. Owners of cattles from all over Rajasthan come and camp around the outskirts of Nagaur while they buy and sell animals.

This fair is also famous for the various sports events that are organized in it, Tug-of-war, camel races and cockfights. At nightfall, folk music and songs bring out a magnificent musical touch to the quiet ambience of the desert.

MahavirJayanti : Mahasivratri marks the festival of Mahavira, the founder of Jainism. It commemorates the birth of Mahavira. It is mainly celebrated by Jains with great zeal and enthusiasm. They visit sacred sites and worship Teerthankaras on this day. The festival is celebrated on a large scale in Gujarat and Rajasthan.

Ram Navami : Ramnavmi celebrates the birth of Rama, a human incarnation of Lord Vishnu. Ayodhya and Pondicherry, the places which are said to have witnessed the events of Ramayana, are the main centers for this festival. Temples are decorated and prayers are offered. Chariot processions of Ram, Seeta and Lakshman are taken out from the temples with great zest.

Good Friday : This Christian festival marks the memory of the crucifixion of Jesus Christ. Just as it is celebrated around the world, Good Friday is observed in India, too, in April every year. All Christians attend Mass held in the churches on this day. Following Good Friday comes Easter Sunday, which is also celebrated with great enthusiasm and joy.

Easter : Easter commemorates the resurrection of Jesus Christ. It represents the victory of life over death. Easter is a celebration of Christ's resurrection from the dead.

Vishu : Vishu is the New Year's Day for the Keralites. The New Year is supposed to bring better knowledge and understanding between all humans. The festival is celebrated with much joyous and happy minds and forgetting all the differences.

NauRoz : Nau Roz is Kashmir's New Year's Day. On this day, there is a general festivity and rejoicing throughout the state.

GoruBihu : The GoruBihu, the cattle festival is celebrated on the Hindu New Year's Day that is April or May. On this day, the cattle are washed and decorated. They are smeared with turmeric and are treated to Gur(Jaggery) and Brinjals.

NabaBarsha : This festival is the New Year's Day of the Bengalis. It welcomes the New year with early morning processions, songs and dance. Beautiful designs called Alpana are made on the floor by the housewife.

Gudi Padva : GudiPadva is widely celebrated in Maharashtra. The day is very auspicious for the people of Maharashtra. It is generally believed that any venture started on this day gives nothing but success.

Ugadi : Ugadi marks the beginning of a new Hindu lunar calendar with a change in the moon's orbit. It is believed that Lord Brahma started creation on this day. Ugadi is the Telugu New Year's Day. On this day mantras are chanted and predictions made for the New Year.

Puthandu : It is celebrated as the Tamil New Year's Day. At Tiruvadamarudur near Kumbakonam a big car festival is held.

Cheti : This festival reflects the tradition and culture of the Sindhis. It is celebrated as the birthday of Asht Dev. He is believed to be the community God of the Sindhis. His birthday falls on the second tithi (occasion) of Chaitra (the first month of the year according to the Hindu calendar). This day is considered to be very auspicious and is rejoiced with much pomp and splendor.

Buddha Purnima : Buddha Purnima, the birth anniversary of Lord Buddha, is celebrated by Buddhists all over India. But it is very popular in Sarnath and Bodhgaya. The Buddhists offer prayers in their temples on this day. The Buddha was born on a full moon day in the month of Vaisakh in 563 B.C. He achieved enlightenment as well as Nirvana on the same date.

Id-UI-Fitr : Id-ul-Fitr or Ramzan Id marks the end of Ramzan, the month during which the Muslims fast everyday. Ramzan means the 'festival of breaking the fast'. Fitr is derived from the word 'fatar' meaning 'breaking'. Ramzan Id is celebrated on a day when the new moon appears. Prayers are offered in mosques and Idgahs and elaborate festivities are held. The festival is celebrated by the Muslims with great fanfare.

Baisakhi : Held on first 'Baisakh' - the 13th April - Baisakhi is one of Himachal's most important festival. Rooted in the rural agrarian tradition, it bids a final farewell to winter. The Sikhs celebrate this as a collective birthday, filling the atmosphere with gaiety, music, dancing and good cheer.

This festival is an opportunity in villages to enjoy with sheer abandon because they know that a season of hard work follows soon after which is the time for harvesting corn and other grains.

KaragaNaba : The dramatic festival of Karaga begins from the Dharmaraja temple in Bangalore. A devotee is chosen and a Karaga or a clay pot is placed on his head. The pot represents Shakti, the mother-goddess of archaic strength. The devotee has to balance the pot as he has a staff and a sword that occupy his hands.

Meenakshi Kalaynam (Chitra Festival)

This 10 day festival takes place at the Meenakshi Temple in Madurai, to celebrate the mythical marriage between Siva and Meenakshi. The Meenakshi temple is one of the most spectacular excessive displays of architecture on earth.

The temple has nine towering gopurams and thousands of pillars, covered from top to bottom with some 30 million colorful carvings and gypsum images of gods, demons and animals.

Dhungri Forest Festival : The Dhungri Forest festival is celebrated at the Hadimba or Dhungiri temple in Manali. This four story wooden temple is located in the middle of a forest called the Dhungiri Van Vihar. The Goddess is worshipped by the local women, who arrive in their colorful dresses to perform the ritual dance before her in order to appease her.

Legend states that the king who commissioned the temple was so highly satisfied with the results that he cut off the craftsman's right hand to prevent him from duplicating it elsewhere.

Id-UI-Azha Or Id-UI-Zuha (Bakrid) : Bakrid is celebrated with ritualistic fervor particularly in Andhra Pradesh. Bakrid is an important festival of Muslims falling in the last month of Islamic Calendar. The significance of the festival is the commemoration of the ordeals of Prophet Ibrahim. On this day prayers are held and goats are sacrificed.

RathYatra : This spectacular chariot festival is held at the famous Jagannath Temple at Puri. Images of Lord Jagannath - the Lord of the Universe, his sister Subhadra and brother Balbhadra are taken out in procession in three immense chariots. The procession or RathYatra draws huge crowds from all over the country.

MelaHemisGompa : A big fair is held at HemisGompa about 50 kilometers from Leh, to celebrate the birthday of Padmasambhava, the founder of Lamaism. The ritual dances by masked dancers are the main attraction.

Teej : This Rajasthani festival is celebrated by the women, on the third day of the moonlit fortnight of Shravan, in memory of Goddess Parvati's departure to her husband's home.

Besides Rajasthan this festival is also celebrated in Bihar and Uttar Pradesh. In the morning Puja is performed. Later, in the evening Young ladies and girls dressed up in lehengas and chunaris to perform dandia dances.

Bonalu : The Bonalu festival is a major welcome for the people of the Telangana region. This festival is an old tradition and is celebrated with undiminished ebullience and religious ardency. This one-month long festival witnesses musical treats and ritualistic worship.

The word “Bonalu” has been derived from “Bhojanalu” meaning food, which is offered to the Goddess. The prayers are offered to the village deities Yellamma, Mahankali, Maisamma, Pochamma, Gundamma. It is also an annual thanks giving by the people to the Goddess for fulfillment of their vows.

Raksha Bandhan : RakshaBhandan is celebrated on the full-moon day in the month of Sravana (July-August). The festival of RakshaBandhan symbolizes love, affection and the feeling of brotherhood. On this day, sisters tie an amulet, the Rakhi, around the right wrist of their brothers praying for their long life and happiness.

Raksha means protection, and in some places in medieval India, where women felt unsafe, they tied Rakhi round the wrists of men they could count upon, regarding them as brothers. The tradition of tying a thread or “rakhi” around the wrist to convey different feelings has been coming down through the ages since the Vedic times.

Naga Panchami : Nag Panchami is observed on the 5th day of the bright half of Shravan (July-August). On this day, nag, cobras and snakes are worshipped with milk, sweets, flowers, lamps and even sacrifice.

The image of Nag deities made of silver; stone, wood are first bathed with water and milk, and then worshipped with the reciting of the mantras.

Jhapan (Manasa) Festival : This festival is dedicated to Goddesses Manasa, the daughter of Lord Shiva. She is believed to be the divine leader of the fertility cult of snake worship. More popularly, it is celebrated as a festival of snakes. The biggest attraction of this festival is the deadly cobra.

Nanda Devi Raj Jat : The serene mountains of the Chamoli district of Garhwal reverberates with a flurry of festive activity during the Nanda Devi Raj Jat Yatra, a royal pilgrimage through the precipitous mountains, that has been in vogue since time immemorial.

It is an important religious event mired in deep rooted religious tradition, folklore and mythology. The Yatra is associated with the legend of Nanda Devi, a Goddess held in reverence by the local inhabitants of the region.

Ganesh chaturti : This day is dedicated to the Lord Ganesh, the elephant-headed god of all good beginnings and success. Held annually, this festival is a ten day long event.

The images of Lord Ganesh are installed and worshipped and on the last day these are taken in processions to be immersed in flowing water. The seafront at Mumbai, packed with people, is a spectacular sight.

Onam : Kerala’s most important festival is celebrated in the honor of the ancient asura king Mahabali. The

occasion also heralds the harvest season. The decorating of houses with carpets of flowers, a sumptuous lunch and songs in praise of the golden reign of Mahabali, mark the ten day long festivities.

A major attraction of the Onam celebrations is the famed snake boat races along the backwaters at Champakulam, Aranmula and Kottayam.

Janmashtami : Janmashtami, the birth of Lord Krishna is celebrated with great devotion and eclat on the Ashtami of Krishna Paksh or the 8th day of the dark fortnight in the month of Bhadon, in the whole of north India.

Raslila, a tableaux depicting scenes from Krishna’s life especially the love for Radha, is performed. In the evening, bhajans are sung, which end at midnight, the auspicious moment when Lord Krishna was born.

Thereafter, arti is done, prasada distributed and flowers showered on the idol.

Muharram : Muharram is the opening month of the Hijra year. The 10th day of this month (May) is honored by the Muslims of Kerala. Muharram marks the martyrdom of Imam Hussain, grandson of Prophet Mohammed.

Taziyas which are bamboo and paper replicas of the martyr’s tomb, adorned with mica are carried throughout the streets of the city. The tragedy is expressed by mourners by beating their breasts and grieving over the murder of the Imam accompanied by drum beats. Fasting is an important ritual of this day.

Batkama: The festival of Batkama in Andhra Pradesh is the most aesthetic occasion. It is basically, a festival of flowers. Celebrated for about a month, the festival commences from the Ganesh Chaturthi and ends on the Dussehra Festival.

Flowers are arranged on a square wooden plank or a square bamboo frame with the size of frames in a conical shape to form an apex on top. This little floral mountain represents and is worshipped as Goddess Batkama.

Dussehra: Dussehra or Vijay Dashmi is a very popular Hindu festival, celebrated with eclat throughout the country. It is observed on the tenth day of the bright half of Ashvin (September-October). It is a ten-day celebration, commemorating the victory of Lord Rama over the demon king, Ravana.

‘Ramlila’ which is based on the epic story of Ramayana, is staged at various places in most of the cities and towns in northern India. During this performance the Ramayana is constantly recited accompanied by music. It presents a fine blending of music, dance, mime, and poetry before an enthusiastic and religious audience sharing every event of the story with the actors.

Id-E-Milad (BarahWafat) : During this festival sermons are delivered in mosques by learned men, focusing on the life and noble deeds of the Prophet who was born on the twelfth day of Rabi-ul-Awwal, the third month of the Muslim year.

The word ‘barah’ stands for the twelve days of the

Prophet's sickness. In some parts of the country, a ceremony known as 'sandal' rite is performed over the symbolic footprints of the Prophet engraved in stone.

Diwali : Diwali, the festival of lights, falls on 'Amavasya', the darkest night of 'Kartika'. It symbolizes the victory of good over evil and the lifting of the spiritual darkness that envelops the soul. The festival commemorates Lord Rama's return to his kingdom, Adyodhya after completing his 14 years of exile.

The word Deepawali which means rows of lighted diyas (earthen lamps), brings a glow to the humblest home or the grandest houses. Sweets and gifts are exchanged between families and friends amidst the bursting of crackers. Doors are left open on Diwali for Goddess Laxmi. The festive occasion also marks the beginning of the Hindu New Year.

Lord Ganesha who is the symbol of auspiciousness and wisdom worshipped along with Goddess Laxmi on this day.

Gurupurab: Gurupurab or Guru Nanak Jayanti is the birth anniversary of Guru Nanak who founded the Sikh faith. For two days and nights preceding the festival the GranthSaheb (Scriptures) is read.

On the day of the festival, the GranthSaheb is taken out in a grand procession. The celebrations at Amritsar are the most impressive. Prayer meeting and processions are carried out particularly in Punjab.

Pushkar Fair: This lovely and gigantic fair falls on the last day (Full Moon Day) of the Hindu month of Kartik (Oct - Nov) near the sacred lake of Pushkar. This beautiful lake surrounded by bathing ghats, has its religious significance, rooted in a myth.

The fair is primarily dedicated to Lord Brahma, the creator and one of the holy trinity. The colorfully dressed people enhance the exuberant mood of the fair. The fair is the biggest camel market. Thousands of pilgrims gather here, to take a dip in the holy lake. Puppet shows are the other major crowd - pullers.

NagulaChatvithi : NagulaChavithi is celebrated on the fourth day after Deepavali, which falls on a New Moon day. On this day serpents are worshipped with great devotion and religious fervor. On this day women and children observe fast and worship snake god. Dressed in their festive best, they offer milk at the snake hills.

On this day there is a great demand for snake hills. Some complete the ritual at home placing a picture or idol of a snake. NagulaChavithi is celebrated twice a year during the months of Karthika and Sravanam. 'Nagula' means of the snakes and 'Chavithi' is the fourth day after every New Moon or Full Moon day.

Navratri : This celebration in honor of the goddess, the mother of the world, begins on the first day of Ashvin, and goes on for nine days. The goddess is the personification of Power, or "Shakti". She is known by many names: "Kali", "Laxmi", "Sarasvati", "Chandi-ka", "Durga", "Bhavani", "Ambika", "Ashtabhuj" (eight hands).

Her main task is to punish the wicked. She is engaged in war, and weapons are in her hands. She sits on a lion. Her weapons are the "shul" (pike), "chakra" (wheel), "parshu" (axe) and "talvar" (sword). Kali is known as "Mahisha-surmardini", the slayer of the demon Mahishasur. The fight against the demon begins on the first day until he is defeated on the ninth day. **VAIKUNTH EKADASHI** There are in all 24 Ekadashis observed by Hindus during the year.

VaikunthEkadashi is observed in November and is celebrated in the honor of Goddess Ekadashi. People fast and pray to the goddess. In Maharashtra, pilgrims march in a procession, singing bhajans or devotional songs and assemble at the Vithal Temple in Pandharpur.

Sonepur Livestock Fair: The Sonepur Fair is held on KarthikPurnima (the full moon day) in the month of November in Sonepur (Bihar), on the banks of river Ganga. It lasts for a fortnight and the cattle are decorated for the occasion. It is Asia's largest cattle fair where anything can be bought right from elephants to camels, buffaloes, goats and all sorts of four-legged creatures.

The fair becomes a virtual explosion of colors, music, dances, magic shows, cattle, merchants and handicrafts as people from all over the world congregate to participate in this huge event. It has all the fun and hue of a popular fair, which has religious connotations as well and is enjoyed with a lot of jest and fanfare by all.

Christmas: Christmas is celebrated in India with great fervor. All the major Indian cities wear a festive look. Shops and bazaars are decorated for the occasion and offer attractive bargains.

Carol singing, get-togethers and the exchanging of gifts enhance the Christmas spirit. Christmas parties launch off celebrations for the New Year, thus retaining the festive mood for at least a week.

KumbhMela: The KumbhMela is considered to be one of the most important religious events in India. The origin of the festival lie in the ancient belief in the conflict between the gods and the demons over the possession of the "AmritKumbh", a pitcher filled with nectar.

This fair is celebrated in 4 places - Haridwar, Allahabad, Nasik and Ujjain. People, from all over the world, come to participate in this momentous event, drawn by their curiosity about the exotic traditions and the religious mysticism of India. A large number of sadhus gather on the banks of the Ganges to take a dip in the holy river and people bath at the 'HarkePauri' Ghat at Haridwar on this auspicious occasion.

The noise baffles all description, the shout and cries of ash-smearing sadhus come mingled with the neighing of horses, the trumpeting of elephants, the grunts of camels, the bellowing of bulls, and as if these are not enough, there are gongs and drums beating, trumpets blaring, conchshells blowing and bells ringing.

Music Concert of India: A concert is a live performance of music in front of an audience. The performance may be by a single musician, sometimes then called a recital,

or by a musical ensemble, such as an orchestra, a choir, or a musical band.

Famous Exhibition & convention Centers in India

Andhra Pradesh

- HITEX Exhibition Center (Hyderabad)
- Hyderabad International Convention Centre (HICC) (Hyderabad)
- Leonia International Centre for Exhibitions & Conventions (Hyderabad)
- Ravindra Bharathi (Hyderabad)
- Shilpakala Vedika (Hyderabad)
- VPR Centre for Exhibitions & Conventions (Andhra Pradesh)

Bihar

- Shri Krishna Memorial Hall (Patna)
- Patna International Convention Centre (Patna)

Gujarat

- Mahatma Mandir (Gandhinagar)
- Gujarat University Convention & Exhibition Center, Gandhi Corporation (Ahmedabad)

Karnataka

- Bangalore International Exhibition Centre (Bangalore)
- Bangalore Palace (Bangalore)
- Dr. TMA Pai International Conventional Centre (Mangalore) (South Kanara)

Kerala

- Vythiri Village Convention Center (Kerala) (Kerala)

- Al Saj Convention Centre (Trivandrum)
- CIAL Trade Fair and Exhibition centre (Kochi)
- Lulu Convention Centre (Thrissur)
- International Conference Center (Thuravoor) (Angamali)

Maharashtra

- Bombay Convention & Exhibition Centre (Mumbai)
- International Convention Centre, Pune

Madhya Pradesh

- Brilliant Convention Centre (Indore) National Capital Region (NCR)
- India Habitat Centre (New Delhi)
- Pragati Maidan (New Delhi)
- Vigyan Bhavan (New Delhi)

Tamil Nadu

- Chennai Trade Centre

West Bengal

- Science City (Kolkata)
- Milan Mela Prangan (Kolkata)
- Nazrul Mancha (Kolkata)
- Sukanta Mancha (Kolkata)
- Kolkata International Convention Center, New Town (Kolkata)
- International Financial Hub Convention Center (Kolkata)

Religious Tourism Recourses - Major religions of India

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- **learn about Pilgrimage Tourism in India**
- **state the major religions of India- Hinduism, Islam, Chirstian, Buddhism, Sikhism & Jainism**
- **study about famous shrines, centres of major religion of India.**

Pilgrimage tourism in India

Pilgrimage tourism in India is extremely popular. The Hindus flock to take a dip in the holy rivers, the Sikhs walk up to a height of 4329 meters through the difficult terrain to reach the Hemkund Sahib. The cradle of Buddhism, devotees from the world over frequent the holy city of Sarnath.

Haridwar, or the door to God, at the foothills of Shivaliks, is a pilgrim destination for the Hindus. The aarti held every evening at the Har-ki-pauri, with innumerable floating diyas and flowers is a must for all, something not to be missed. The yatra to the char-dhams comprise visit to holy places of Badrinath, Kedarnath, Gangotri and Yamunotri.

The char dham yatra is a major attraction for tourism in India. Rishikesh, in the laps of the Himalayas happens to be the common point for all the four pilgrim spots

besides being sacred itself. The sources of the two most sacred rivers of India Ganga and Yamuna, Gangotri and Yamunotri are amongst the four shrines in the Himalayas.

The pilgrim spot of Devprayag, located at the confluence of the Alaknanda and the Bhagirathi rivers besides is renowned for the Raghunathji temple. Similarly, the town of Uttarkashi is situated on the banks of the river Bhagirathi and its Vishwanatha temple, devoted to Lord Shiva, attracts several pilgrims.

Further up at Gaurikund, the visit the famous Gauri temple and bathe in the hot water pond. The package is completed with visit to Joshimath, Badrinath and Govind Ghat.

The holy city of Varanasi is situated on the banks of Ganga. Its name has been derived from the two steams flowing through it namely, Varuna and Assi. Pilgrims to the holy land, follow the age-old tradition of bathing and performing puja at the ghats.

The Alamgir Mosque or the Beni Madhav Ka Darera close to the main city is an example of the beauty of amalgamation of the hindu and mughal styles of architecture.

The Buddhists too have several pilgrim spots in the country that are associated with the birth and teaching places of Buddha. Lumbini is noteworthy for being the birthplace of Buddha. The city of Sarnath popular amongst the Buddhist as the spot for His first sermon, which revealed the eight-fold path after His enlightenment. Lord Buddha had attained Enlightenment under the Bodhi tree in Bodhgaya, which too is a pilgrirrage for the Buddhists.

Famous shrines, centres of major religion of India

Amarmath: Amarmath Temple is a sacred Hindu shrine located in Kashmir and surrounded by beautiful Himalayan valleys. This ancient cave temple, dating to more than 5000 years ago, is devoted to Lord Shiva-one among the Holy Trinity of Hinduism. The temple is situated on Mount Amamath which is about

Badrinath: Situated in the midst of the glorious Himalaya Mountains, Badrinath never fails to mesmerize visitors because of its serene beauty. But it is not just beauty that marks its importance; Hindus believe that it is one of the holiest places in the world. It is believed that this is where Lord Narayana resides and

Jagat Shri Brahma Temple: The famous Hindu shrine dedicated to Jagatpita (Father of the world) Brahma Mandir is situated at Pushkar, in the state of Rajasthan, India. The temple is dedicated to God Brahma, the Creator-the foremost in the Holy trinity of Hinduism. Despite being one of the important deities of Hinduism, there are very

Chamunda Temple: Chamunda Devi Temple is located in the state of Himachal Pradesh, India. It is a famous Hindu shrine dedicated to Goddess Chamunda, which is just another aspect of Goddess Shakti bodied fearsomely and created with the sole purpose of eradicating all evil from earth. The shrine is very strikingly seated

Galta Temple: Galta Temple, the temple of Sun, is located at a distance of 10 km from Jaipur, the capital city of the state of Rajasthan, India. Jaipur is famous for its architectural excellence which is beautifully illustrated through the multitude of buildings and monuments there-many of them being famous tourist attractions.

Gangotri: A visit to the Gangotri would consist of the beautiful snow-capped mountains, pure springs of water and rocky terrains. A look from top, at the point where the river originates, rarely comprises of any greenery. While, one can visit the temple and get a darshan of the Ganga at the Gangotri itself, it is an altogether divine

Kamakhya Temple: The Kamakhya Temple is one of the 108 'Shakti Peethas' making it the most acclaimed Shakti shrines in the country. It is dedicated to goddess Sati, an embodiment of goddess Durga.

Kashi Vishwanath Temple: Kashi Vishwanath temple is the holiest existing temple for the Hindus. The most famous Hindu temples dedicated to Lord Shiva and is

located in Varanasi (earlier Banaras), Uttar Pradesh, India. Every Hindu is expected to go there at least once in his/her lifetime to pay homage to this ancient shrine.

Kedarnath: Located 3584 metres above sea level, Kedarnath is a scenic small town in the Himalayas and lies in the state of Uttarakhand, India. Being a part of the Chota Char Dham (Mini Four Abodes, a form of Hindu Pilgrimage), Kedarnath temple is held in very high regard and reverence by the Hindus.

Mahabaleshwar Temple Gokarna: Shri Samsthana Mahabaleshwara Deva temple is located on the shores of the Arabian Sea in the holy town of Gokarna. Situated on the west coast of India in North Karnataka or Uttara Kannada district, it is one of the major Hindu pilgrim centres of South India. This temple enshrines the Atma Lingam of Lord Shiva.

Mahakaleshwar Temple : The Mahakaleshwar Temple is an important and scared abode of Lord Shiva. Several tourists flock this shrine from different parts of India and the world. The temple is one of the twelve 'Jyotirlingams' in the country and is also highly revered by Hindu devotees. The holy sanctuary is found along the banks of the Rudra

Mathura Vrindavan : Mathura and Vrindavan are the famous twin cities known to glorify the life of Lord Krishna. Mathura is the birthplace and Vrindavan, the place where Krishna spent most of his early life. Thus these two locations are of great significance to the Lord's devotees. A visit to Mathura is usually accompanied by a trip to Vrindavan,

Padmanabhaswamy Temple : Padmanabhaswamy Temple is the one out of the 108 most holy temples of Lord Vishnu that is situated at the East Fort in Thiruvananthapuram, the capital of Kerala. Thiruvananthapuram literally means the 'land of Shree Anantha Padmanabhaswamy', which originates from the name of the temple itself and thus,

Rameshwaram Temple : The Rameshwaram Temple is one of the most famous Hindu shrines in the country. It is tucked away at the tip of the Indian isthmus on the Pamban Island. This holy place is an important pilgrimage site as it happens to be one of the twelve 'Jyotirlingas'. The shrine comprises of a main deity in the shape of a 'linga' called Sri

Shri Mahavirji Temple : Shri Mahavirji Temple, also known as Atishya Kshetra, is located in the Chandanpur Village of Karauli district in Rajasthan. The village rose to prominence after the antique idol of Lord Mahavira, the twenty-fourth Tirthankaras of Jains, was unearthed from the soil. Thus, it was renamed as 'Shri Mahavirji'. After this incident,,

Somnath : Somnath, home to the 'Aadi Jyotirling Sri Somnath Mahadev', is a holy place for Hindus. Although Somnath literally means "The Moon God", this shrine is actually dedicated to Lord Shiva and is believed to be home to one of the twelve Jyotir Lingas. Somnath is located on the western cost of India, nearVeraval in Gujarat.

Trimbakeshwar Temple : The Trimbakeshwar temple is one of the most highly venerated and sacred pilgrimage sites in India. It is also said to be the cradle of the River Godavari as main reasons that this shrine is declared to be holy is due to the fact that the quires is Trimbak one of the twelve jyotir lingas.

Vaishno Devi : Shri Mata Vaishno Devi is one of the most important Hindu shrines in the world receiving more than 8 million devotees every year The temple, located in the picturesque hills of Jammu & Kashmir in India, it is a cave temple seated at an altitude of 5200ft in a three-peaked mountain known as Trikoot.

The temple has a longest corridor

Yamunotri : Amongst the most famous and pious pilgrim spots is the Yamunotri, situated in the midst of the beautiful and majestic Himalayas. Visitors say that the beauty of this shrine is breathtaking, irrespective of the number of times they have visited it. Hindus from all over the country travel here to pay homage to the origin of the River.

The golden temple and amristar : The unparalleled reflection of the pious golden edifice onthe ambrosial nectar (lake) and the horde of pilgrims loitering in the shrine complex urge one to visit this popular religious place in India. Built by the fourth Sikh Guru, Ramdass Sahib Ji, Gurudwara Harmandir Sahib is the most important Sikh pilgrimage site to visit in India. The golden gilded temple commemorates a number of Sikh historical events. A bringer of peace, the Golden Temple is nothing short of a legacy in India.

Is one of the most scenic locations in the country, Hemkund Sahib. Hemkund Sahib has a pentagonal structure. The scenic beauty of the place is worth mentioning as this shrine is Buddha delivered His last sermon here and announced His Nirvana. Similarly, there are a number of other spots for pilgrimage tourism in India.



For the Sikhs one of the most revered shrines is the Hemkund Sahib. Pilgrims trek to a height of 4329 meters to pray at the world's Highest Gurudwara. The pilgrimage starts at the base camp of Govind Dham. Devotes visit the Sri Guru Nanak Dev ji gurudwara at Manikaran known for the hot water springs with healing properties.



Fig 6



Amarnath Cave

Fig 7



Varanasi (Kashi)

Fig 8



Hemkund Sahib

Indian Religions : India is a land of diversities. This diversity is also visible in the spheres of religion. The major religions of India are Hinduism (majority religion), Islam (largest minority religion), Sikhism, Christianity, Buddhism, Jainism, Zoroastrianism, Judaism and the Baha'i Faith.

India is a land where people of different religions and cultures live in harmony. This harmony is seen in the celebration of festivals. The message of love and brotherhood is expressed by all the religions and cultures of India.

Whether it's the gathering of the faithful, bowing in prayer in the courtyard of a mosque, or the gathering of lamps that light up houses at Diwali, the good cheer of Christmas or the brotherhood of Baisakhi, the religions of India are celebrations of shared emotion that bring people together.

Hinduism : Hinduism is the oldest religion in the world. Hinduism is world's third largest religion after Christianity and Islam. Hinduism is the dominant religion in India, where Hindus form about 84 per cent of the total population. Hinduism is also known as "Sanatan Dharma" or the everlasting religion.

Adi Shankaracharya

One of the greatest philosophers of India, Adi Shankaracharya founded the Advaita Vedanta, which is one of the sub-schools of Vedanta. Adi Shankaracharya whole-heartedly believed in the concept of the Vedas but at the same time advocated against the rituals and religious practices that were over exaggerated.

Buddhism : At present Buddhism is one of the major world religions. The philosophy of Buddhism is based on the teachings of Lord Buddha, Siddhartha Gautama (563 and 483 BC), a royal prince of Kapilvastu, India. After originating in India, Buddhism spread throughout the Central Asia, Sri Lanka, Tibet, Southeast Asia, as well as the East Asian countries of China, Mongolia, Korea, Japan and Vietnam.

Christians : Christianity is one of the prominent religions in India. At present there are about 25 million Christians in India. It is interesting to note that the Christian population in India is more than the entire population of Australia and New Zealand or total population of a number of countries in Europe.

Islam : One of the prominent religions of India, Islam forms about 12 per cent of India's population. Though India's contact with Islam had begun much earlier, the real push came in the 8th century when the province of Sindh was conquered. Though the Muslims form only 12 per cent of the total population of India but the influence of Islam on Indian society is much stronger.

Jainism : Jains form less than one percent of the Indian population. For centuries, Jains are famous as community of traders and merchants. The states of Gujarat and Rajasthan have the highest concentration of Jain population in India. The Jain religion is traced to Vardhamana Mahavira (The Great Hero 599-527 B.C.).

Lord Mahavira : Lord Mahavira is often credited with the advent of Jainism in India. However, Jainism existed even before Lord Mahavira was born. He is supposed to be the twenty-fourth (last) Tirthankara according to the Jain philosophy. A Tirthankara is an enlightened soul who is born as a human being and attains perfection through intense meditation.

Sikhism : Sikhs form about 2 per cent of Indian population. In comparison to other religions, Sikhism is a younger religion. The word 'Sikh' means a disciple and thus Sikhism is essentially the path of discipleship. The true Sikh remains unattached to worldly things.

Guru Nanak Dev : Sri Guru Nanak Dev Ji is credited with starting the Sikh religion. He was the first Guru of the Sikhs and is worshipped next to God. His sole aim in life was to unify the Hindus and Muslims and form a universal religion of brotherhood and compassion. He

believed that true salvation could be achieved only by devotion of thought and excellence of conduct.

Zoroastrian : Though the total number of Zoroastrians in Indian population is very less yet they continue to be one of the important religious communities of India. According to the 2001 census, there were around 70,000 members of the Zoroastrian faith in India. Most of the Parsis (Zoroastrians) live in Maharashtra (mainly in Mumbai) and the rest in Gujarat.

Ajmer Sharif in Ajmer : Khwaja Moinuddin Chishti lay in peace here, listening to people's wishes and fulfilling them. Once you enter through the gate of the Dargah a queer peace takes over you. A sacred shrine in Ajmer, Dargah Sharif is visited by millions of devotees every year from all over the world. The Dargah for many reasons captivates one's heart; there is certainly something that is magical about this place that people from different faith come and worship here.

Although the dargah is always crowded, the best time to visit Ajmer Sharif is during the Urs festival. The place comes to life during this festival that is held annually.

Velankanni Church: Religious tour in India would be incomplete if you miss out on Velankanni Church, situated in the Nagapattinam district of Tamil Nadu. Like many gothic style churches Velankanni Church or the Basilica of Our Lady of Good Health has graceful architecture but what attracts tourists the most to this church is the construction history of the Church.

Fig 9



Ajmer Sharif in Ajmer

Fig 10



Velankanni Church

Believed to have been built by a Portuguese sailor who survived a violent sea storm as a gratitude to the Supreme Power, this church is indeed one of the important pillars of faith in India. Each year The Feast of the Nativity of Mary is celebrated here and is attended by millions of devotees from around the globe.

Goa: Goa by no means is a cliché pilgrimage destination in India; however, the number of churches in Goa justifies why it should be in the list of religious tourism places in India. A legacy of the Portuguese civilization that ruled the state for over a very long period, the Churches in Goa are worth exploring.

Fig 11



Along with being an epitome of Christian faith, these edifices contribute largely to the architectural collection of India. Amongst the most famous churches in Goa are Basilica of Bom Jesus, Church of the Lady of Immaculate Conception, Church of St. Lawrence and Church and Convent of St. Francis of Assisi.

Shirdi: Forget about religion, caste, creed and other forms of discrimination, Shirdi in Maharashtra is the gateway to sheer spirituality. All his life the highly revered Sai Bab a preached about One God (Sab Ka Maalik Ek) and thus earned himself many followers. Today, his native place,

Shirdi is thronged by multitude of devotees irrespective of religion, color or creed seeking peace, spirituality and paying homage to this great saint. Therefore, Shirdi is one of the most visited religion places in India. It is very well connected by road, rail & air.

Fig 12



Shirdi

Study of national Parks and wildlife sanctuaries, Bird sanctuaries, Tiger and crocodile project sites of India

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to
 • **brief study of National parts & wild life.**

National parks in India are IUCN category II protected areas. India's first national park was established in 1936 as Hailey National Park, now known as Jim Corbett National Park, Uttarakhand. By 1970, India only had five national parks. In 1972, India enacted the Wildlife Protection Act and Project Tiger to safeguard the habitats

of conservation reliant species. Further federal legislation strengthening protections for wildlife was introduced in the 1980s. As of April 2012, there were 112 national

parks. All national park lands then encompassed a total 39,919 km² (15,413 sq mi), comprising 1.21 % of India's total surface area.

A total of 166 national parks have been authorized. Plans are underway to establish the remaining scheduled parks. All of India's national parks are listed below alongside their home state or territory, area and the date that they were established.

See Protected areas of India for an overview of all Indian protected

List of national parks

Name	State	Established	Area (in Km ²)	Notability
Balphakram National Park	Meghalaya	2013	220	Wild water buffalo, red panda, elephant and eight cat species, including the tiger and marbled cat
Bandhavgarh National Park	Madhya Pradesh	1968	446	Highest known Tiger population in India, White Tiger, 1336 species of endemic plants
Bandipur	Karnataka	1974	874.20	Chital, gray langurs, Indian giant squirrel, Gaur, leopard, Sambar deer, Indian elephants, honey buzzard, red-headed vulture and other animals.
Bannerghatta National park	Karnataka	1974	106.27	
Indra Gandhi wildlife sanctuary and national park	Tamilnadu	1989	117.10	
Indravati	Chhattisgarh National Park	1981	1258.37	Wild Asian Buffalo, Tiger Reserve, Hill Mynas
Jaldapara National Park	West Bengal	2012	216	
Jim Corbett National Park	Uttarakhand	1936	1318.5	
Kalesar National Park	Haryana	2003	100.88	
Kanha	Madhya National Park	1955 Pradesh	940	

Name	State	Established	Area (in Km ²)	Notability
Kanger Ghati National Park	Chhattisgarh	1982	200	
Kasu Brahmananda Reddy National Park	Telangana	1994	1.42	
Kaziranga National Park	Assam	1905	471.71	Indian rhinoceros, UNESCO world heritage site
Keibul Lamjao National Park	Manipur	1977	40	only floating park in the world
Keoladeo National Park	Rajasthan	1981	28.73	UNESCO World Heritage Site
Khangchendzonga National Park	Sikkim	1977	1784	
Kishtwar National Park	Jammu and Kashmir	1981	400	
Kudremukh National Park	Karnataka	1987	600.32	
Madhav National Park	Madhya Pradesh	1959	375.22	
Mahatma Gandhi Marine National Park	Andaman and Nicobar Islands		1983	281.50
Mahavir Harina Vanasthali National Park	Telangana	1994	14.59	
Manas National Park	Assam	1990	500	UNESCO World Heritage Site
Mandla Plant Fossils National Park	Madhya Pradesh	1983	0.27	
Marine National Park,	Gulf of Kutch Gujarat	1980	162.89	
Mathikettan Shola National Park	Kerala	2003	12.82	
Middle Button Island National Park	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1987	0.64	
Mollem National Park	Goa	1978	107	
Betla national park	Jharkhand	1986	231.67	Tiger, Sloth Bear, Peacock, Elephant, Sambar Deer and other animals.
Bhitarkanika National Park	Odisha	1988	145	Mangroves, Saltwater crocodile, white crocodile, Indian python, black ibis, wild pigs, rhesus monkeys, chital and other animals
Blackbuck National Park, Velavadar	Gujarat	1976	34.08	
Buxa Tiger Reserve	West Bengal	1992	760	

Name	State	Established	Area (in Km2)	Notability
Campbell Bay National Park	Andaman and Nicobar Island	1992	426.23	
Chandoli National Park	Maharashtra	2004	317.67	
Dachigam National Park	Jammu and Kashmir	1981	141	Only area where Kashmir stag is found
Darrah National Park	Rajasthan	2004	250	
Desert National Park	Rajasthan	1980	3162	
Dibru-Saikhowa National Park	Assam	1999	340	
Dudhwa National Park	Uttar pradesh	1977	490.29	
Eravikulam National Park	Kerala	1978	97	
Galathea National Park	Andaman and Nicobar islands	1992	110	
Gangotri National Park	Uttar pradesh	1989	1552.73	
Gir Forest National park	Gujarat	1965	258.71	Asiatic Lion
Gorumara National Park	West Bengal	1994	79.45	
GovindPashu Vihar Wildlife Sanctuary	UttaraKhand	1990	472.08	
Great Himalayan National Park	Himachal pradesh	1984	754.40	UNESCO World Heritage Site
Gugamal National Park	Maharashtra	1987	361.28	
Guindy National Park	Tamil nadu	1976	2.82	
Gulf of Manner Marine National Park	Tamil nadu	1980	6.23	
Hemis National park	Jammu and Kashmir	1981	4400	
Harike Wetland	Punjab	1987	86	
Hazaribagh	Jharkhand	1954	183.89	
Mouling National park	Arunachal Pradesh	1986	483	
Mount Abu Wildlife Sanctuary		Rajasthan	1960	288.84
Mount Harriet National Park	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	46.62		important bird area as attributed by Bird Life International, new species tree frog named Rana Charles Darwini
Mrugavani National Park	Telangana		9.1	

Name	State	Established	Area (in Km2)	Notability
Mudumalai Nation Park	Tamil Nadu	1940	321.55	
Mukurthi National Park	Tamil Nadu	2001	78.46	
Murlen National Park	Mizoram		200	
Nambapha National Park	Arunachal Pradesh		1984	1985.24
Nameri National Park	Assam	1978	137.07	
Nanda Devi National Park	Uttarakhand	1982	630.33	UNESCO World Heritage Site
Nandankanan Zoological Park	Odaisha	1960	4.006	
Navegaon National Park	Maharashtra		133.88	
Neora Valley National Park	West Bengal	1986	88	
Nokrek National Park	Meghalaya		47.48	UNESCO World Biosphere Reserve
North Button Island	Andaman and			
National Park	Nicobar Islands	1979	144	
Ntangki National Park	Nagaland	1993	202.02	
Orang National Park	Assam	1999	78.81	
Palani Hills National Park	Tamil Nadu		736.87	
Panna National Park	Madhya Pradesh	1981	542.67	
Papikonda National Park	Andra Pradesh	2008	1012.85	
Pench National park	Madhya Pradesh	1977	758	
Periyar National Park	Kerala	1982	305	
Phawngpui Blue				
Mountain National Park	Mizoram	1992	50	
Pin Valley National Park	Himachal Pradesh	1987	807.36	
Rajaji National Park	Uttarakhand	1983	820	
Nagarhole National Park	Karnataka	1988	643.39	
Rani Jhansi Marine	Andaman and			
National Park	Nicobar Islands	1966	256.14	
Ranthambore National Park	Rajasthan	1981	392	
Saddle Peak National Park	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1979	32.55	
Salim Ali National Park	Jammu and kashmir	9.07		
Sanjay National Park2	Madhya Pradesh	1981	466.7	

Name	State	Established	Area (in Km2)	Notability
Sanjay Gandhi National Park	Maharashtra	1969	104	
Sariska Tiger Reserve	Rajasthan	1955	866	
Satpura National Park	Madhya Pradesh	1981	524	
Silent Valley National Park	Kerala	1980	237	
Sirohi National Park	Manipur	1982	41.30	
Similipal National Park	Odisha	1980	845.70	Tiger ,Leopard, Asian elephant,sambur,barking deer , gaur, jungle cat, wild boar and other animals
Singalila National Park	West Bengal	1986	78.60	
South Button Island National Park	Andaman and Nicobar Island		5	Dugong,dolphin water monitor Lizard, Blue whale
Sri Venkateswara Park	Andhra Pradesh	1989	353	
Sultanpur National Park	Haryana	1989	1.43	
Sundarbans National Park	West Bengal	1984	1330.12	UNESCO World Heritage Site
Tadoba National Park	Maharashtra	1955	625	
Valley of Flowers National Park	Uttarakhand	1982	87.50	
Valmiki National Park	Bihar	1976	898.45	
Vansda National Park	Gujarat	1979	23.99	

Proposed and commissioned national parks

Several new national parks have been proposed by State Governments in India, and are pending an approval, and after which they will be commissioned, and demarcated. Important national parks which have already been commissioned include:

- Glazing National Park
- Enderarment National Park [citation needed]
- Srinagar national park Park [citation needed]

Wildlife sanctuaries of India

India has 515 animal sanctuaries referred to as Wildlife sanctuaries Category IV Protected Area) Among these,

the 41 Tiger Reserves are governed by Project Tiger, and are of special significance in the conservation of the tiger. Some wildlife sanctuaries are specifically named Bird Sanctuary, e.g. Keoladeo National Park before attaining National Park status. Many National Parks were initially wildlife sanctuaries. The conservative measures taken by the Indian Government for the conservation of Tigers was awarded by a 30% rise in the number of tigers in 2015.

Wildlife sanctuaries are of national importance to conservation, usually due to some flagship faunal species, are named National Wildlife Sanctuary, like the tri-state National Chambal (Gharial) Wildlife Sanctuary for conserving the gharial.

Year	Name	State	Area (KM2)
	Spike Isand wildlife sanctuary	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	211.7
1985	Interview Island wildlife sanctuary	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	133
1987	Landfall Island wildlife snactuary	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	29.48
1983	Lohabarrack Salt water crocodile sancturay	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	22.21
1987	Defence Island wildlife sanctuary	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	10.49
1987	Cinque Island wildlife sanctuary	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	9.51
1987	Flat Island sanctuary	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	9.36
1987	Buchaan Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	9.33
1977	Barren Island Wildlife sanctuary	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	8.1
1987	Kyd Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	8
1987	Shearme Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	7.85
1987	Paget Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	7.36
1985	Tilanchang Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	6.83
1977	Narcondum Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	6.81
1987	West Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	6.4
1987	East Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	6.11
1987	Ranger Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	4.26
1987	Swamp Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	4.09
1987	East (Tingling) Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	3.55
1977	North Reef Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	3.48
1987	Benett Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	3.46
1987	Talabaicha Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	3.21
1987	Point island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	3.07
1987	Bondoville Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	2.55
1987	Table(delgarno)Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	2.29
1985	Battimalve Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	2.23
1987	James island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	2.1
1987	Reef island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.74
1987	Table (excelsior)island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.69
1977	South senitinel island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.61
1987	Sandy Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.58
1987	Roper Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.46
1987	Pitman Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.37
1987	South brother Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.24
1987	South reef Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.17
1987	Bluff Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.14
1987	Sir Huge rose Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.06
1987	Temple Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.04
1987	Ross Island	Andaman and Nicobar Islands	1.01
1970	Nelapattu Bird Sanctuary	Andhara pradesh	4040

Year	Name	State	Area (KM2)
1978	Nagar junsagar-srisilarm Tiger Reserve	Andhara Pradesh and telangana	3568
ND	Gundla Brahmeswaram wildlife Sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	1194
1963	Kolleru Lake	Andhra Pradesh	673
ND	Rollapadu wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	614
1978	Papikonda wildlife sanctuary(2)	Andhra Pradesh	591
1989	Sri ventkaeswara National Park	Andhra Pradesh	353
1976	Pulicat lake bird sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	327.33
ND	Sri lankalleswara wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	464.42
ND	Koundinya wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	357
1978	Coring wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	235.79
2013	Krishna wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	194.81
1972	Kambalakonda wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	71
2012	Lanjamadugu wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	36.29
1977	Pakhui tiger reserve	Andhra Pradesh	861.95
1991	Dibang wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	4149
1989	Kamlang wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	783
1980	Mehao wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	281.5
1989	Eaglenest wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	217
1978	Dering memorial wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	190
1978	Itanagar wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	140.3
1989	Sessa orchid sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	100
1991	Kane wildlife sanctuary	Andhra Pradesh	55
1995	Talley valley wildlife sanctuary	Arunachal	337
1905	Kaziranga nation park	Assam	430
1980	Bornadi wildlife sanctuary(3)	Assam	26.22
1989	Dipor bil	Assam	40
1985	Garampani wildlife sanctuary	Assam	6.05
1997	Hoollongapar gibbon sanctuary	Assam	2098.62
1928	Manas nation park	Assam	391
1934	Sonai rupai wildlife sanctuary	Assam	175
1985	Nameri nation park	Assam	137.07
1985	Orang nation park	Assam	72.6
1979	Laokhowa wildlife sanctuary	Assam	70.14
ND	Pabha wildlife sanctuary	Assam	49
1987	Pobitora wildlife sanctuary	Assam	38.83
1997	Barela salim ali zubba saheni wildlife sanctuary	Bihar	1.96
1976	Bhimbandh wildlife sanctuary	Bihar	681.9
1976	Gantam budha wildlife sanctuary	Bihar	259.48
1978	Kaimur wildlife sanctuary	Bihar	1342.22
1989	Kanwar lake bird sanctuary	Bihar	63.11

Year	Name	State	Area (KM2)
1987	Nagi dam wildlife sanctuary	Bihar	7.91
1985	Nakti dam wildlife sanctuary	Bihar	206.4
1978	Rajgir Wildlife sanctuary	Bihar	35.84
1978	Udypur wildlife sanctuary	Bihar	8.74
1978	Valmikinagar gangetic dolphin sanctuary	Bihar	880
1990	Vikramshila Gangetic Dolphin Santuary	Bihar	50
1998	Sukhna	Chandigarh	25.42
1975	Achnakmar wildlife sanctuary	Chandigarh	557.55
1983	Bhairamgarh wildlife sanctuary	Chandigarh	138.95
1976	Barnwapara wildlife sanctuary(4)	Chandigarh	244.66
1972	Udanti wildlife sanctuary(5)	Chandigarh	232
1978	Semarsot wildlife sanctuary(6)	Chandigarh	430.36
1974	Sitanadi wildlife sanctuary(7)	Chandigarh	556
1978	Tamor pingla wildlife sanctuary	Chandigarh	608.55
1983	Pamed wildlife sanctuary	Chandigarh	262
1975	Badalkohi wildlife sanctuary	Chandigarh	104.35
1972	Gomarda reserve forest	Chandigarh	277.82
ND	Indira priyadarshini	Delhi	13.2
1967	Bhagwan mahavir	Goa	148.52
1972	Bondla Wildlife Sanctuary	Goa	8
1979	Salim Ali Bird Sanctuary	Goa	1.8
1982	Shoolpaneshwar Wildlife Sanctuary	Gujarat	607.7
1989	Balaram-Ambaji wild life santuary	Gujarat	542.08
1986	Kutch Desert Wildlife Sanctuary	Gujarat	7506.22
1973	Indian Wild Ass Sanctuary	Gujarat	4953.7
1965	Gir Forest National Park	Gujarat	1153.42
1981	Narayan Sarovar Sanctuary	Gujarat	765.79
1980	Marine National Park, Gulf of Kutch	Gujarat	293.03
1979	Barda Wildlife Sanctuary	Gujarat	192.31
1978	Jessore	Gujarat	180.66
1990	Purna	Gujarat	160.84
1990	Jambughoda	Gujarat	130.38
1969	Nal Sarovar	Gujarat	120.82
1982	Ratanmahal	Gujarat	55.65
1989	Paniya	Gujarat	39.63
1988	Rampuru	Gujarat	15.01
ND	Khijadiya	Gujarat	605 ha
ND	Dhumkhal	Gujarat	ND
1988	Thol bird sanctuary	Gujarat	153
1987	chautala	Haryana	113.96

Year	Name	State	Area (KM2)
1978	Bir shikargarh	Haryana	10.93
1982	Rupi bhabha sanctuary	Himachal Pradesh	354.14
1962	Sechu tuan nala Wildlife Sanctuary	Himachal Pradesh	655.32
1962	Tundah Wildlife Sanctuary	Himachal Pradesh	419.48
1962	Kugti Wildlife Sanctuary	Himachal Pradesh	330
1983	Pong Dam Sanctuary	Himachal Pradesh	322.7
1962	Nargu Wildlife Sanctuary	Himachal Pradesh	243.13
1962	Bandli	Himachal Pradesh	239.47
1962	Gobind Sagar & Naina Devi	Himachal Pradesh	120.67
1976	Chail	Himachal Pradesh	110.04
1949	Gamgul Siahbehi	Himachal Pradesh	105.46
1962	Darlagahat	Himachal Pradesh	98.71
1962	Shikari Devi	Himachal Pradesh	71.19
1976	Tirthan	Himachal Pradesh	68.25
1954	Kanawar	Himachal Pradesh	61.57
1985	Churdhar	Himachal Pradesh	56.59
1962	Raksham chitkul	Himachal Pradesh	38.27
1962	Nain Devi	Himachal Pradesh	37.19
1962	Talra	Himachal Pradesh	36.16
1962	Majathal	Himachal Pradesh	31.64
1954	Manali Sanctuary	Himachal Pradesh	31.27
1949	Kalatop & Khajjar	Himachal Pradesh	30.69
1962	Lippa Asrang	Himachal Pradesh	29.53
1962	Daranghati	Himachal Pradesh	27.01
1954	Khokhan	Himachal Pradesh	17.6
1958	Simbalbara	Himachal Pradesh	17.2
1954	Kais	Himachal Pradesh	12.2
1957	Renuka	Himachal Pradesh	4.02
1963	Shilli	Himachal Pradesh	110.0
ND	Karakoram Wild life Sanctuary	Jammu and Kashmir	1800
1987	Lachipora	Jammu and Kashmir	800
1987	Over-Aru	Jammu and Kashmir	425
1988	Kanji Wild life Sanctuary	Jammu and Kashmir	250
1987	Gulmarg	Jammu and Kashmir	186
1987	Hirpora Wild life Sanctuary	Jammu and Kashmir	341
1981	Surinsar -Mansar	Jammu and Kashmir	39.58
1981	Nandini	Jammu and Kashmir	33.72
2008	Achabal	Jammu and Kashmir	0.50 km ²
1987	Limber	Jammu and Kashmir	26
ND	Tongri	Jammu and Kashmir	20

Year	Name	State	Area (KM2)
1981	Ramnagar	Jammu and Kashmir	12.9
ND	Hokarsar	Jammu and Kashmir	10
1987	Baltal	Jammu and Kashmir	3
1987	Changtang Wild life Sanctuary	Jammu and Kashmir	4000
1976	Dalma Wild life Sanctuary	Jharkhand	193.22
1977	Gautam Budha Wild life Sanctuary	Jharkhand	121.14
1977	Hazaribagh Wild life Sanctuary	Jharkhand	186.25
1985	Koderma Wild life Sanctuary	Jharkhand	177.95
1978	Lawalong Wild life Sanctuary	Jharkhand	211.03
1976	Mahuadand Wild life Sanctuary	Jharkhand	63.26
1976	Palamau Wild life Sanctuary	Jharkhand	752.94
1990	Palkot Wild life Sanctuary	Jharkhand	182.83
1984	Parasnath Wild life Sanctuary	Jharkhand	49.33
1978	Topchanchi Wild life Sanctuary	Jharkhand	12.82
1978	Udhwa Lake Bird Sanctuary	Jharkhand	5.65
1974	Mookambika Wild life Sanctuary	Karnataka	247
1974	Melkote Temple	Karnataka	49.82
1974	Nugu Wild life Sanctuary	Karnataka	30.32
1974	Ghataprabha Bird Sanctuary	Karnataka	29.78
1985	Arabithittu Wild life Sanctuary(8)	Karnataka	13.5
1985	Adichunchanagiri Wild life Sanctuary(9)	Karnataka	0.88
1974	Bhadra Wild life Sanctuary	Karnataka	492.46
2011	Bhimgad Wild life Sanctuary	Karnataka	190.42
1987	Biligiriranga Swamy Temple Wildlife Sanctuary	Karnataka	539.58
1974	Brahmagiri Wildlife Sanctuary	Karnataka	181.29
1987	Cauvery Wildlife Sanctuary	Karnataka	510.51
ND	Dandeli Wildlife Sanctuary	Karnataka	834.16
ND	Gudavi Bird Sanctuary	Karnataka	0.74
ND	Mandaqadde Bird Sanctuary	Karnataka	0.005
ND	Melukote Temple Wildlife Sanctuary	Karnataka	45.82
1987	Pushpagiri Wildlife Sanctuary	Karnataka	102.59
1940	Ranganthittu Bird Sanctuary	Karnataka	0.67
1974	Ranibennur Blackbuck Sanctuary	Karnataka	119
1972	Sharavathi Valley Wildlife Sanctuary	Karnataka	413.23
1974	Shettihalli Wildlife Sanctuary	Karnataka	395.6
1974	Someshwara Wildlife Sanctuary	Karnataka	88.4
1987	Talakaveri Wildlife Sanctuary	Karnataka	105
1950	Periyar National Park	kerala	472
1973	Waynad	kerala	344.44
1973	Parambikulam Wildlife Sanctuary	kerala	285

Year	Name	State	Area(KM2)
1958	Neyyar	kerala	128
1958	-Peecht-Vazharu Wildlife Sanctuary	kerala	125
1984	Chimmony Wildlife sanctuary	kerala	105
1984	Shenduruny	kerala	100.32
1984	Chinnar	kerala	90.44
1976	Idukki	kerala	77
1984	Aralam	kerala	55
1983	Pepppara	kerala	53
1983	Thattekkad Bird Sanctuar	kerala	25
1847	Kumarakom	kerala	0.567
2010	Malabar Wildlife Sanctuary(10)	kerala	74.21
1977	Bori Wildlife Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	518.25
1978	Bagdara Wildlife Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	478.9
1983	Phen Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	110.24
1981	Ghatigaon Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	512
1974	Gandhi Sagar Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	368.62
1981	Karera Wildlife Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	202.21
1981	Ken Ghariyal Santuary(11)	Madhya Pradesh	45
1955	Kheoni Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	134.778
1974	Narsingharh Wildlife Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	57.19
1978	National Chambal Sancturay	Madhya Pradesh	320
1975	Nauradehi Wildlife Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	1034.52
1977	Pachmarhi Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	461.85
1983	Panpatha Wildlife Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	245.84
1981	Kuno Wildlife Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	344.68
1976	Ratapani Tiger Reserve	Madhya Pradesh	688.79
1975	Snajay- Dubri Wildlife Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	364.69
1976	Singhori Wildlife Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	287.91
1981	Son Ghariyal Sanctuary(12)	Madhya Pradesh	41.8
1983	Sardarpur Sanctuary	Madhya Pradesh	348.12
1985	Melghat	Maharashtra	597.23
1986	Tadoba Andhari Tiger Project	Maharashtra	625.4
1985	Koyna Wildlife Sanctuary	Maharashtra	423.55
1958	Radhanagari Wildlife Sanctuary	Maharashtra	371.88
1986	Kalsubai Harishchandra	Maharashtra	361.71
1986	Jaikwadi	Maharashtra	341.05
1986	Painganga	Maharashtra	324.62
1979	Great Indian Bustard Sanctuary	Maharashtra	8496.44
1985	Chandoli Nation Park	Maharashtra	308.97
1986	Gautala Autramghat Sanctuary	Maharashtra	260.61

Year	Name	State	Area(KM2)
1969	Yawal	Maharashtra	177.52
1970	Nagzira	Maharashtra	152.81
1986	Chaprara	Maharashtra	134.78
1985	Bhimashankar	Maharashtra	130.78
1986	Nandpur Madmeshwar	Maharashtra	100.12
1986	Aner Dam	Maharashtra	82.94
1988	Katepurna	Maharashtra	73.69
1986	Phansad Wildlife Sanctuary	Maharashtra	69.79
1970	Bor	Maharashtra	61.1
1970	Tansa	Maharashtra	30.41
1987	Malvan Marine	Maharashtra	29.12
1985	Sagershwar	Maharashtra	10.87
ND	Dakna Kolkaz	Maharashtra	1677
ND	Ghodazaro	Maharashtra	159
ND	Yedshi Ramling Ghat(13)	Maharashtra	22.37
ND	Wainganga	Maharashtra	ND
1989	Yagoupokpi Lokchao	Manipur	184.8
1981	Nongkhylllem	Meghalaya	29
ND	Bhagmara	Meghalaya	ND
	Siju	Meghalaya	
1985	Dampa Tiger Reserve	Mizoram	550
1991	Khawnglung	Mizoram	41
1991	Ngengpui	Mizoram	150
1983	Fakim	Nagaland	64.2
1875	Intanki	Nagaland	202.02
ND	Pulebatze	Nagaland	ND
1988	Badrama Sanctuary	odisha	304.03
1981	Baisipalli Wildlife Sanctuary	odisha	168.35
1984	Balukhand Konark	odisha	71.72
1975	Bhitarkanika	odisha	70
1982	Chandaka Dampara	odisha	175.79
1987	Chilika Bird Sanctuary	odisha	1100
1987	Nalbana Bird Sanctuary	odisha	1100
1985	Debrigarh Wildlife Sanctuary	odisha	346.91
1978	Hadgarh	odisha	191.06
1992	Karlapat	odisha	147.66
1981	Kotgarh	odisha	399.05
1984	Kuldiha Wildlife Sanctuary(14)	odisha	300
1985	Lakhari valley	odisha	185.87
1982	Khalasuni	odisha	116

Year	Name	State	Area(KM2)
1976	Satkosia Gorge Wildlife Sanctuary	odisha	795.52
1979	Simlipal National Park	odisha	845.7
1986	Sunabeda Wildlife Sanctuary	odisha	600
1962	Ushakothi	odisha	ND
1952	Bir Motibagh	Punjab	ND
1975	Abohar	Punjab	188.24
1972	Bir Bunnerheri	Punjab	ND
1952	Bir GurdialPura	Punjab	62.05
1982	Harike Lake	Punjab	43
1960	Mount Abu Wildlife Sanctuary	Rajasthan	288.84
1985	Baretha	Rajasthan	192.76
1983	Bhensrodgarh	Rajasthan	229.14
1983	Chambal	Rajasthan	210.00
1955	Darrah Wildlife Sanctuary[151	Rajasthan	293.43
1930	Garhial	Rajasthan	45.20
1956	Jaisamand	Rajasthan	52
1955	Jaswant Sagar Wildlife Sanctuary	Rajasthan	ND
1980	Jawahar Sagar	Rajasthan	100
1983	Keladevi Wildlife Sanctuary	Rajasthan	676
1971	Kumbhalgarh	Rajasthan	578.26
1980	Nahargarh	Rajasthan	50
1983	Phulwari Wildlife Sanctuary	Rajasthan	511.41
1982	Jamwa Ramgarh Wildlife Sanctuary	Rajasthan	300
1982	Ramgarh Vishdhari Wildlife Sanctuary	Rajasthan	307
1955	Sariska Tiger Reserve	Rajasthan	866
1984	Sawai Mansingh	Rajasthan	103.25
1983	Shergarh	Rajasthan	98.71
1979	Sita Mata Wildlife Sanctuary	Rajasthan	422.94
ND	Sundha Mata	Rajasthan	107
ND	Tal Chhapar Sanctuary	Rajasthan	ND
1983	Todgarh Rawali Wildlife Sanctuary	Rajasthan	495.27
1955	Van Vihar	Rajasthan	59.93
1984	Barsey Rhododendron Sanctuary	Sikkim	51.76
1984	Fambong Lho	Sikkim	51.76
1984	Pangolakha Wildlife Sanctuary	Sikkim	51.76
ND	Kyongnosla Alpine Sanctuary	Sikkim	ND
1987	Meanam	Sikkim	35.34
1988	Shingba Rhododendron	Sikkim	32.5
1988	Kalakkad Mundanthurai Tiger Reserve	Tamil Nadu	895
1988	Kalakkadu	Tamil Nadu	223.58

Year	Name	State	Area(KM2)
1988	Karikili	Tamil Nadu	ND
1940	Mudumalai National Park	Tamil Nadu	321.55
2001	Mukkurthi	Tamil Nadu	78.46
1967	Point Calimere	Tamil Nadu	17.26
ND	Pulicat Lake Bird Sanctuary	Tamil Nadu	153.67
2008	Sathyamangalam Wildlife Sanctuary	Tamil Nadu	1411.6
1988	Shenbagathoppu Grizzled Squirrel Wildlife Sanctuary	Tamil Nadu	480
2007	Vallanadu	Tamil Nadu	16.41
1936	Vedantangal	Tamil Nadu	0.3
1977	Vettangudi	Tamil Nadu	ND
1953	Eturnagaram Wildlife Sanctuary	Telangana	803
1965	Kawai Wildlife Sanctuary	Telangana	893
1977	Kinnerasani Wildlife Sanctuary	Telangana	655.41
1978	Manjira Wildlife Sanctuary	Telangana	20
1952	Pakhal Wildlife Sanctuary	Telangana	879.3
1952	Pocharam Forest & Wildlife Sanctuary	Telangana	130
1980	Pranahita Wildlife Sanctuary	Telangana	136.02
1978	Shivaram Wildlife Sanctuary	Telangana	36.29
1988	Gumti Wildlife Sanctuary[16]	Tripura	389.54
1987	Sepahijala	Tripura	18.53
1987	Trishna	Tripura	170.56
1967	Asan Bradge Bird Watching	Uttar kand	4.559
1957	Chandra Prabha Wildlife Sanctuary	Uttar Pradesh	78
1982	Kaimoor Sanctuary	Uttar Pradesh	500.75
1976	Katarniaghat Wildlife Sanctuary	Uttar Pradesh	400
1977	Ranipur Sanctuary	Uttar Pradesh	230.31
1987	Sohagi Barwa Sanctuary	Uttar Pradesh	428.2
1972	Kishanpur Wildlife Sanctuary	Uttar Pradesh	227.12
1986	Hastinapur Sanctuary	Uttar Pradesh	2073
ND	Mahavir Swamy	Uttar Pradesh	ND
1900	Nawabganj	Uttar Pradesh	ND
1987	Samaspur	Uttar Pradesh	ND
1989	Okhla Bird Sanctuary	Uttar Pradesh	4.00
1990	Sandi Bird Sanctuary	Uttar Pradesh	3.09
1979	National Chambal Sanctuary	Uttar Pradesh	635
1986	Askot Musk Deer Sanctuary	Uttarakhand	599.93
1988	Binsar	Uttarakhand	45.59
1954	Govind Pashu Vihar Wildlife Sanctuary	Uttarakhand	481.04
1972	Kedarnath Wild Life Sanctuary	Uttarakhand	975.24
1987	Sonanadi Wildlife Sanctuary	Uttarakhand(17)	301.18

Year	Name	State	Area(KM2)
1976	Singalila National Park	West bangal	362.4
1986	Buxa Tiger Reserve	West bangal	251.89
1976	Murti Wildlife	West bangal	127.22
1976	senchal	West bangal	38.88
1976	Lothian Island	West bangal	38
1976	Haliday Island	West bangal	5.95
1977	Bibhutibhushan	West bangal	0.68
1977	Bethudahari	West bangal	0.67
1977	Ballabhpur	West bangal	2
1998	Chapramari	West bangal	27
1949	Gorumara	West bangal	7.9
1964	Jore Pokhri	West bangal	2
1959	Mahananda	West bangal	159
1980	Parnadhan	West bangal	0.68
1980	Ramnabagan	West bangal	0.04
1985	Raiganj	West bangal	1.30

India is a home for many beautiful species of birds local as migrant birds. The National Bird of India "Peacocks" Great Indian bustard, Indian Horn-bill, Kingfishers and Indian Eagle "Garuda", a Sacred Bird of Hindus, The Great Indian Horn-bill is the Largest amongst all the horn-bills found in the dense forests of Arunachal Pradesh.

There are over 1200 species of birds found in India. so one can enjoy birding or bird watching in India, Kulik (Raiganj) Bird Sanctuary is one of the largest bird sanctuaries in Asia. Nawabganj is one of the luckiest sanctuaries that have such enormous range of wildlife creatures in India is an ideal tourist destination for birding, twitching and Bird watching in India. Twitching is referred to those who travel long distances to see rare birds that would be called as twitcher.

The famous Bharatpur Bird Sanctuary also known as Keoladeo Ghana National Park is situated in Rajasthan. Bharatpur bird sanctuary is one of the best bird sanctuaries in India and one of the finest bird parks in the world. Apart from the Great Thar Desert.

Big forts and beautiful lakes, Birds of Bharatpur sanctuary are one of the major tourist attractions in Rajasthan. Thousands of rare and highly endangered birds come here during the winter season. The Bharatpur bird sanctuary is paradise for the bird lover's to watch some of the most exotic birds in the world.

Sultanpur bird sanctuary is home for several colorful winged migratory species, located at Gurgaon district of Haryana. Its small area comprising with shallow freshwater Sultanpur lake. where 100 of migratory bird species visit to feed every year. The Sultanpur National Park also known for its rich variety of wild animals and flying predators along with beautiful birds.

The Salim Ali bird sanctuary is home to many varieties of local and migratory birds, situated in Chorao Island along the river Mandovi in Goa. Salim Ali Bird sanctuary is one of the best known bird sanctuaries and very famous bird sanctuary in India. It is one of the smallest bird sanctuaries where flying Sparrows, Beautiful peafowl parrots, pelican Indian giant squirrel and other rare species of fauna can be spotted. Beyond the Beaches of Goa, Salim Ali bird sanctuary is one of the major tourist attractions in Goa.

Kumarakom bird sanctuary also known as Vembanad bird sanctuary is situated in Land of attraction Kerala, near to the famous Vembanad lake it offers a home to a large number of migratory birds like Flycatcher Teal, Siberian Crane.

Parrots and Wood Beetle, by riding a houseboat will be the best way for birdwatching in Kerala. It is a favorite spot for migratory birds and paradise for the bird lovers. Another bird sanctuaries in Kerala are Mangalavanam and Thattekad bird sanctuary. Situated on the banks of the Periyar river and famous for some of the rarest species of birds and other unique fauna.

Ranganthittu bird sanctuary is situated near to the banks of the Kaveri river in Karnataka. The exotic migratory birds like night Ibis, Egret, Partridge, Heron, River Tern, Snake Bird, stone Plougher are the attraction for the tourist.

This is an important tourist destination of Mysore and is located about 20 kilometers from the famous Brindavan garden lies adjoining the Krishnarajasagara dam.

The Vedanthangal bird sanctuary is the oldest bird sanctuary in India, situated in Tamil Nadu. The Vedanthangal lake region attracted a variety of birds

such as pintail, garganey, grey wagtail, blue-winged teal, common sandpiper, One sixth of landmass of Tamil Nadu is covered with forests, which is paradise for animal lover and bird watchers. Kunthakulam bird sanctuary and Pulicat lake bird sanctuary are also famous for bird watching situated at border of Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu,

kaundinya bird sanctuary is one of the best bird sanctuaries in India, situated near Chittoor in Andhra Pradesh. The habitat is rugged with high hills and deep valleys and Kaigal and Kaundinya are two beautiful streams, which flow through the sanctuary.

Kaundinya sanctuary offers the best of wildlife and bird watching in India. Kolleru lake bird sanctuary also offers variety of migratory birds to its largest fresh water Kolleru Lake .

chilka lake bird sanctuary is very popular among tourists, located near Puri in Orissa The Chilka lake is the most beautiful brackish water lake in Asia and famous for a rich variety of birds. Chilka Lake serves as a bird sanctuary and is the largest wintering ground for migratory birds in India. The pear-shaped Chilka lake is one of the best bird watching spots in India.

The Mayani bird sanctuary is globally reckoned for its gigantic range of species for migratory birds situated in Satara district of Maharashtra. Many migratory birds pass through the area such as flamingos from Siberia come in large numbers. It is one of the most prominent and famous bird sanctuaries in India,

Nal Sarovar bird sanctuary comprising of a huge lake and ambient marshes, is situated in Ahmedabad, Gujarat. Nal Sarovar bird sanctuary is the largest wetland bird sanctuary in Gujarat, and one of the largest in India, spot birds like Flamingos, Pelicans, Spoonbills, Avocets, Coots, Pintails.

Small Cormorants, small Grebes and Shovelers, it is counted as one of the busiest tourist attraction spots in India. One of the famous sanctuaries in Gujarat is Porbandar Bird Sanctuary. The Gulf of Mannar Marine National Park is India's first marine national park in the Indian Ocean at Gujarat.

Crocodile Conservation in India

Biological information on crocodiles

The crocodiles are large aquatic tetrapod reptiles. They live throughout the tropics in Africa, Asia, the Americas and Australia. They are cold-blooded creatures.

The crocodiles live mostly in freshwater habitats such as rivers, lakes, wetlands and sometimes in brackish water. They feed mostly on vertebrates - fish, reptiles, and mammals

However, 17 out of the 23 species of crocodylians around the world are endangered today due to man's folly

Crocodiles in India

In India, crocodiles are both revered and loathed as some consider them religious and others consider them a menace.

India does not have alligators, instead we have **three species** of crocodiles and one of which is unique to Indian subcontinent is the **gharial** (*Gavialis gangeticus*). The adult male has a bump at the end of the snout resembling an earthen pitcher or ghara, hence the name gharial.

The other two are the mugger or marsh crocodiles and the salt water or estuarine crocodiles.

About Gharial: Gharial is evolutionarily the most unique crocodylian in the world being a specialized river dwelling fish-eater, but harmless to humans. It lives in deep fast-flowing rivers.

Gharials are endemic to the Indian sub-continent. Once found abundantly in all the

Burma and Bhutan. Nepal has only a remnant breeding population. In India too, the major breeding populations are confined to two rivers only, Girwa and the Chambal.

The two rivers run along the borders of Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh and Rajasthan. A few non-breeding populations exist in small pockets in other rivers in India.

Threat to Gharial : Gharial is listed as 'Critically Endangered' in the IUCN Red List of Endangered Species.

Between 2007 and 2008, over 100 Gharials in the Chambal perished in a mystery die-off attributed to a nephro-toxin possibly originating from contaminated fish in the Yamuna.

The Gharial is under increasing pressure for survival due to a combination of factors like:

- **Habitat alteration and destruction:** A combination of land-use changes and exploitation such as sand-mining, riverside agriculture, livestock grazing, and hydrological modifications such as building of dams for water diversion.
- **Prey depletion:** Over harvesting of fish stocks. Construction of dams and barrages obstructing dispersal and migration of fish .
- **Direct mortality:** Drowning of Gharial in fishing nets. Its nest destruction and local egg- collection.
- **Pollution and siltation:** Pollution and siltation of rivers damage fish stocks, and are also believed to be the direct cause of the catastrophic die-off of 2007 -2008 in the Chambal.
- **Hunting:** In the past, Gharial was hunted for skin, trophies and use in indigenous medicine.

Conservation efforts in India

In 1970, the Government of India accorded the highest level of protection to Gharial by bringing it under Schedule 1 of the Wild Life Protection Act, 1972.

By the time crocodile hunting was banned in India in 1972, Gharials were on the verge of extinction.

In 1976 project Crocodile was initiated with support from the United Nations

Project tiger: Project Tiger was launched in 1973 by the Government of India under its then Prime Minister Indira Gandhi. The project aims at ensuring a viable population of Bengal tigers in their natural habitats and also to protect them from extinction and preserving areas of biological importance as a natural heritage forever represented as close as possible the diversity of ecosystems across the tiger's distribution in the country.

Funds and commitment were mastered to support the intensive program of habitat protection and rehabilitation under the project. The government has set up a Tiger Protection Force to combat poachers and funded relocation of villagers to minimize human-tiger conflicts.

During the tiger census of 2006, a new methodology was used extrapolating site-specific densities of tigers, their co-predators and prey derived from camera trap and sign surveys using GIS.

Based on the result of these surveys, the total tiger population has been estimated at 1,411 individuals ranging from 1,165 to 1,657 adult and sub-adult tigers of more than 1.5 years of age.[2] Owing to the project, the number of tigers has improved to 2226 as per the latest census report released on January 20, 2015.[3]

Objective : Project Tiger was identified to limit factors that leads to reduction of tiger habitats and to mitigate them by suitable management.

- Sivalik -Terai Conservation Unit
- North East Conservation Unit
- Central Indian Conservation Unit
- Western Ghats Conservation Unit

About : The Indian tiger population at the turn of the 20th century was estimated at 20,000 to 40,000 individuals. The first country-wide tiger census conducted in 1972 estimated the population to comprise a little more than 1,800 individuals, an alarming reduction in tiger population.[1]

In 1973, the project was launched in the palamau Tiger Reserve, and various tiger reserves were created in the country based on a core buffer' strategy. Project Tiger

is administered by the National Tiger Conservation Authority. The overall administration of the project is monitored by a steering committee headed by a director. A field director is appointed for each reserve, who is assisted by a group of field and technical personnel.

For each tiger reserve, management plans were drawn up based on the following principles:

- Elimination of all forms of human exploitation and biotic disturbance from the core area and rationalization of activities in the buffer zone
- Restricting the habitat management only to repair the damages done to the ecosystem by human and other interferences so as to facilitate recovery of the ecosystem to its natural state
- Monitoring the faunal and floral changes over time and carrying out research about wildlife

By the late 1980s, the initial nine reserves covering an area of 9,115 square kilometers (3,519 square miles) had been increased to 15 reserves covering an area of 24,700 km² (9,500 sq mi).

Wireless communication systems and outstation patrol camps have been developed within the tiger reserves, due to which poaching has declined considerably. Fire protection is effectively done by suitable preventive and control measures.

Voluntary Village relocation has been done in many reserves, especially from the core, area. Live stock grazing has been controlled to a great extent in the tiger reserves. Various compensatory developmental works have improved the water regime and the ground and field level vegetation, thereby increasing the animal density.

Controversies and problems

The Forest Rights Act passed by the Indian government in 2006 recognizes the rights of some forest dwelling communities in forest areas. This has led to controversy over implicational of such recognition for tiger conservation. Some have argued that this is problematic as it will increase conflict and opportunities for poaching. As of 2019, there are 50 Tiger reserves in India covering an area of 37,761 Km² and 2967. Tiger live in India.

Major Hill Stations, Islands, rivers and river Islands of India

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- **major hill stations, Islands in India & Abroad.**

The Indian subcontinent has seven principal mountain ranges and the largest of all is the Himalayas that lies in the northern part of India. Then there is Shivalik range that also lies within the same region has some famous hill stations that include Dalhousie, Kullu, Shimla, Nainital and many more.

Most of the hill stations in India were developed by the British, around a central mall, to get respite from the oppressive summer heat. Many have picturesque lakes as their focal point, making them excellent places for boating activities.

Most of the hill stations in India are located in Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Sikkim, West Bengal, Arunachal Pradesh and Meghalaya in the Himalayas and in Maharashtra, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and Kerala in Western ghats. Some of the hill stations in India are listed below by state.

Since all these hill stations are world famous they are frequently visited by tourists on a summer vacation tour. Due to this almost all of the above hill stations are well connected by rail, road and air services to major Indian cities.

History: The British Raj, and in particular the British Indian Army, founded perhaps 50 of the 80-odd hill stations in the Indian subcontinent; the remainder were built by various Indian rulers over the centuries as places of leisure or even as permanent capitals. They established the stations to escape the blistering heat of the long Indian summer.

Purpose: Several hill stations served as summer capitals of Indian provinces, princely states, or, in the case of Shimla, of British India itself. Since independence, the role of these hill stations as summer capitals has largely ended, but many hill stations remain popular summer resorts.

Andhra Pradesh

- Bhadrachalam
- Araku Valley
- Lambasingi
- Himalaya darshan
- Ananthagiri Hills
- Horsley Hills
- Nallamala Hills

Arunachal Pradesh

- Along
- Itanagar
- Tawang
- Mutafa hills
- Bomdila
- Khonsa
- Pankaj

Assam

- Shillong

Chhattisgarh

- Chirmiri
- Amarkantak Lapha hill
- Chorla Ghat
- Mainpat

Gujarat

- Saputara

Haryana

- Morni Hills

Himachal Pradesh

- Barog
- Bir-Billing Paragliding Site
- Chamba
- Chitkul
- Churdhar Sanctuary
- Dalhousie
- Dharamsala
- Jogindernagar
- Kangra
- Keylong, Lahaul Valley
- Kiarighat
- Kullu
- Manali
- Nahan
- Baijnath
- Chail
- Dharamkot
- Haripurdhar
- Kalpa
- Kasauli
- Khajjiar
- Kufri
- Mcleodganj
- Mashobra
- Palampur

- Ponta Sahib
- Rewalsar
- Sangla
- Shimla
- Thaneek Pura
- Reckong Peo
- Sarahan
- Sundar Nagar
- Solan

Jammu and Kashmir

In Jammu region

- Bhaderwah
- Patnitop

In Kashmir region

- Aru
- Pahalgam
- Yusmarg
- Gulmarg
- Srinagar
- Sonamarg

In Ladakh region

- Leh

Jharkhand

- Hazaribagh
- Netarhat
- Ranchi

Karnataka

- Agumbe, Shimoga District
- Manipal, Udupi District
- Kodachadri, Shimoga District
- Sagara, Shimoga District
- Talaguppa, Shimoga District
- Biligiriranga Hills, Chamarajanagar District
- Chikkamagaluru, Chikkamagaluru District
- Kemmangundi, Chikkamagaluru District
- Kudremukh, Chikkamagaluru District
- Madikeri (Coorg), Kodagu District
- Nagarhole (Coorg), Kodagu District
- Somwarpet (Coorg), Kodagu District
- Virajpet (Coorg), Kodagu District
- Nandi Hills, Chikkaballapur district
- Kollur, Udupi District
- Male Mahadeshwara Hills, Chamarajanagar District

Kerala

- Ayyampuzha, Ernakulam District
- Kodanad, Ernakulam District
- Kuttampuzha, Ernakulam District
- Malayattur, Ernakulam District
- Thattekkad, Ernakulam District
- Devikulam, Idukki District
- Munnar, Idukki District
- Mattupetty, Idukki District
- Chinnakanal, Idukki District
- Ramakkalmedu, Idukki District

- Nedumkandam, Idukki District
- Udumbanchola, Idukki District
- Painavu, Idukki District
- Kumily, Idukki District
- Thekkady, Idukki District
- Kuttikkanam, Idukki District
- Peermade, Idukki District
- Vagamon, Idukki District
- Aralam, Kannur District
- Iritty, Kannur District
- kanjirakolly, Kannur District
- Vaithalmala, Kannur District
- Ranipuram, Kasaragod District
- Aryankavu, Kollam District
- Kulathupuzha, Kollam District
- Thenmala, Kollam District
- Kottancheri Hills, Kasaragod District
- Mundakayam, Kottayam District
- Poonjar, Kottayam District
- Kodencheri, Kozhikode District
- Peruvannamuzhi, Kozhikode District
- Thamarassery, Kozhikode District
- Thiruvambadi, Kozhikode District
- Thusharagiri, Kozhikode District
- Vellarimala, near Thiruvambady in Kozhikode District
- Nilambur, Malappuram District
- Agali, Palakkad District
- Nelliampathi, Palakkad District
- Charalkunnu, near Kozhencherry in Pathanamthitta District
- Chittar, Pathanamthitta District
- Gavi, near Sabarimala in Pathanamthitta District
- Maniyar, near Sabarimala in Pathanamthitta District
- Seethathode, near Sabarimala in Pathanamthitta District
- Ponmudi, Thiruvananthapuram District
- Vithura, Thiruvananthapuram District
- Athirapally, Thrissur District
- Malakkappara, Thrissur District
- Vazhachal, Thrissur District
- Vettilappara, Thrissur District
- Kalpetta, Wayanad District
- Lakkidi, Wayanad District
- Mananthavady, Wayanad District
- Muthanga, Wayanad District

- Sulthan Bathery, Wayanad District
- Tirunelli, Wayanad District
- Vythiri, Wayanad District
- Agasthiyamalai
- Parambikulam, Palakkad District

Madhya Pradesh

- Pachmarhi
- Shivpuri
- Amarkantak
- Kundeshwar

Maharashtra

- Amboli
- Igatpuri
- Karjat
- Lavasa
- Mahabaleshwar
- Panchgani
- Toranmal
- Bhandardara
- Chikhaldara
- Jawhar
- Khandala
- Lonavala
- Matheran
- Panhala
- Malshej Ghat

Meghalaya

- Cherrapunjee
- Shillong
- Jowai

Mizoram

- Aizawl
- Champhai
- Reiek
- Lunglei
- Hmuifang

Nagaland

- Pftusero

Odisha

- Daringbadi
- Koraput

Punjab

- Pathankot

Rajasthan

- Mount Abu
- Kumbhal Gargh

Sikkim

- Gangtok
- Lachung
- Pelling
- Yuksom
- Nathula
- Tashi View point
- Yumthang
- Rabdentse Ruins
- Phensang Monastery
- Tashiding Monastery
- buddha park
- Gyalshing
- Namchi
- Rangpo
- Zuluk
- Enchey monastery
- Ganesh tok
- Guru-Dongmar Lake
- Soreng
- Phodong Monastery
- samdruptse

Tamil Nadu

- Coonoor(Nilgiris)
- Kodaikanal (Dindigul)
- Kothagiri(Nilgiris)
- Sirumalai(Dindigul)
- Topslip or Anaimali hills (Coimbatore)
- Valparai(Coimbatore)
- Yelagiri(Vellore)
- Yercaud Located in shevaroy hills (Salem)
- sathuragiri(Virudhunagar)
- Manjolai estate (Tirunelveli District)
- Nalumukku estate (Tirunelveli District)
- Kurangani Hills
- Javadi Hills(Vellore)
- Kolli Hills(Namakkal)
- Meghamalai(Theni)
- Ooty((Nilgiris)
- Kozukkumalai

Uttarakhand

- Almora
- Auli
- Bageshwar
- Bhimtal
- Chamoli
- Chaukori
- Dehradun
- Dhanaulti
- Garhwal
- Kausani
- Landour
- Lansdowne
- Mukteshwar
- Mussoorie
- Nanda Devi
- Pauri
- Tarkeshwar Mahadev
- Rishikesh
- Askot
- Badrinath
- Berinag
- Binsar
- Champawat
- Chopta
- Didihat
- Gangolihat
- Joshimath
- Kedarnath
- Haridwar
- Lohaghat
- Munsiyari
- Nainital
- Naukuchiatal
- Pithoragarh
- Ranikhet
- Rudraprayag

List of Islands in India

- Andaman Islands
- Great Andaman
- Sentinel Islands
- Barren Island
- Little Andaman

Andhra Pradesh

- Bhavani Island, Vijayawada
- Diviseema
- Hope Island (India)
- Sriharikota

Nicobar Islands

- Great Nicobar
- Car Nicobar

Islands of Mumbai Harbour

- Butcher Island (Mumbai)
- Elephanta Island
- Cross Island
- Middle Ground

- Oyster Rock
- Salsette Island

Tamil Nadu

- The Island, Gov Chennai
- Srirangam Island
- Quibble Island, Chennai

Gulf of Mannar Marine National Park

The islands (listed southwest to northeast) include four in the Tuticorin group:

- Vaan, 16.00 ha N 8.83639°N 78.21047°E
- Koswari, 19.50 ha 8.86879°N 78.22506°E
- Vilanguchalii, 0.95 ha 8.93815°N 78.26969°E, now 1m below mean low tide level as a result of excessive coral mining.
- Kariyachalli, 16.46 ha 8.95409°N 78.25235°E;

Three in the Vembar group:

- Uppu Thanni, 22.94 ha, elevation 4 m 9.08921°N 78.49148°E
- Puluvin Challi, 6.12 ha, elevation 5.5 m 9.10320°N 78.53688°E
- Nalla Thanni, 101.00 ha, elevation 11.9 m (recently populated)
- 9.10667°N 78.57885°E;

seven in the Kilakarai group:

- Anaipar, 11.00 ha, elevation 2.1 m 9.15294°N 78.69481°E
- ValiMunai, 6.72 ha, elevation 1.2 m 9.15354°N 78.73052°E
- Poovarasani Patti, 0.50 ha, elevation 1.2 m 9.15413°N 78.76695°E
- Appa, 28.63 ha, elevation 6.4 m 9.16582°N 78.82596°E
- Talairi, 75.15 ha, elevation 2.7 m 9.18133°N 78.90673°E
- Valai 10.10 ha, elevation 3.0 m 9.18421°N 78.93866°E
- Mulli, 10.20 ha, elevation 1.2 m 9.18641°N 78.96810°E;

and seven in the Mandapam group:

- Musal, 124.00 ha, elevation 0.9 m 9.19912°N 79.07530°E (recently populated)
- Manoli, 25.90 ha 9.21564°N 79.12834°E
- Manoli-Putti 2.34 ha 9.21581°N 79.12800°E
- Poomarichan 16.58 ha | 9.24538°N 79.17993°E
- Pullivasal, 29.95 ha 9.23699°N 79.19100°E
- Kurusadai, 65.80 ha 9.24690°N 79.20945°E was recently populated.

River islands

Kaveri River

- Srirangapatna
- Shivanasamudram

- Sri Ranga

Others

- Bet Dwarka, Gujarat
- Diu
- Kavvayi
- Majuli fluvial island
- Netrani Island
- Munroe Island, Kollam, Kerala
- Sagar Island (West Bengal)
- Sriharikota
- Vashee, Goa
- Willington Island, Kochi, Kerala
- Vallaradam, Kochi, Kerala
- Wheeler Island (India)
- Chorao, Goa
- Divar, Goa
- Lakshadweep
- Minicoy Island
- St. Mary's Islands
- Vypin, Kochi, Kerala

- South Talpatti Island -a three-mile-long island that was disputed to be owned by both India and Bangladesh. The Associated Press reported it submerged in March 2010.

Regional variations: The term “towhead” implies a small islet or sandbar within a river (most often the Mississippi River) having a grouping or thicket of trees, and is often used in the Midwestern United States. Many rivers, if wide enough, can house considerably large islands. The term “towhead” was popularised by Mark Twain’s Adventures of Huckleberry Finn.

In England, a river island in the Thames is referred to as an “ait” (or “eyot”).

Largest river islands in the world

Note: Includes some river islands that also have an ocean coast.

Most Populations river islands

Name	Area (km ²)	Country	River
Marajó	40,100	Brazil	Amazon River / Pará River
Ilha do Bananal	19,162	Brazil	Araguaia River
Tupinambarana	11,850	Brazil	Amazon River
Ilha Grande de Gurupá	4,864	Brazil	Amazon River
Uarini Island	2,339	Brazil	Uarini River, Amazon River
Boven Digul	2,171	Indonesia	Digul River, Kawaga River
Richards Island	2,165	Canada	Mackenzie River
Krasnoslobodsk	2,002	Russia	Volga River, Akhtuba River
Hatiya Island	1,508.23	Bangladesh	Meghna River
Camargue	1,453	France	Grand Rhone, Petit Rhone
Bhola Island	1,441	Bangladesh	Meghana River
Majuli	1,250	India	Brahmaputra River
Ile a Mofil	1,250	Senegal	Senegal River
Zhongshan Dao	1,055.42	China	Pearl River
Chongming Island	1,041.21	China	Yangtze River
Dibru Saikhowa	765	India	Brahmaputra River
Sandwip Island	762.42	Bangladesh	Meghna River
Great Br?ila Island	720.2	Romania	Danube
Sumba Island	500[3]	Democratic	Republic of Congo
Congo River	499	Montreal	Canada
Danube	Manpura Island	Manipura	Bangladesh
Csepel Island	257	Hungary	Danube
Île Jésus	242	Canada	Rivière des Mille Îles, Rivière des Prairies
Hisingen	199	Sweden	Göta älv
Mosqueiro	191	Brazil	Amazon River
Mbamou Island	180	Congo-Brazzaville	Congo River
Davis Island	120	United States	Mississippi River

Name	Population	Area (km)	Country	City	River
Zhongshan Dao	2,00,000(2008)	59	China	Macau,Zhongshan,Zhuhai	Pearl River
Montreal	1,854,442	499	Canada	Montreal	St.lawrence River
Manhattan Island	1,634,795	59	United States	New York city	Hudson River/East River
Velky Zitny ostrov	226446(2001)	1888	Slovakia	Several	Danube
Vasilievsky Island	202,650(2002)		Russia	St.Petersburg	Bolshaya neva/malaya neva
Lulu Island	168,162		Canada	Richmond	Fraser
Csepel Island	166,953(2012)	257	Hungary diverse	Danube	Danube River
Majuli	160,000	553	India	Assam	Brahmaputra River
Hisingen	130,000	199	Sweden	Gothenburg	Gota alv
Wihelmsburg	49,132 (2006)	35.3	Germany	Hamburg	Elbe
Mosqueiro	27,000	191	Brazil	Belem	Para river

Important Sea Beaches of India- Mumbai, Puri, Goa, Chennai, Trivandrum and Kerala

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- state the sea beaches of India in different places like Mumbai Puri,Goa,Chennai,Trivandrum & Kerala.

India has a wide range of tropical beaches with silver/golden sand to coral beaches of Lakshadweep. States like Kerala and Goa have exploited the potential of beaches to the fullest. However, there are a lot many unexploited beaches in the states of Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, Maharastra, Tamil Nadu and Karnataka. These states have very high potential to develop them as future destinations for prospective tourists. Some of the famous tourist beaches are:

- Beaches of Vizag, Andhra Pradesh
- Beaches of Puri, Odisha
- Beaches of Digha, West Bengal
- Beaches of Goa
- Kovalam Beach, Kerala
- Marina Beach, Chennai
- Elliot's Beach, Chennai
- City Beach, Pondicherry
- Beaches of Mahabalipuram
- Beaches in Mumbai
- Beaches of Diu
- Beaches of Midnapore, West Bengal
- Beaches of Andaman and Nicobar Islands
- Beaches of Lakshadweep Islands

West coast

Gujarat

The beaches along the western state of Gujarat are:

- Chorwed Beach
- Diu Beach
- Umbirgam Beach
- Tithal Beach
- Mandvi Beach - Mandvi - Kutch

Maharashtra : The state of Maharashtra has

Mumbai

- Aksa Beach
- Akshi Beach
- Alibaug Beach
- Band Stand
- DadarChowpatti

Fig 1



Manori Beach, Mumbai

Fig 2



Ganapatipule Beach, Ratnagiri

Fig 3



Tarkarli Beach, Malvan

- Girgaum Chowpatty Beach
- Gorai Beach
- Khim Beach
- Madh island's beach
- Manori Beach
- Juhu beach
- Marve Beach

Fig 4



Malgund Beach, Maharashtra

- Uran Beach
- Versova Beach

Fig 5



Pransad Beach, Maharashtra

Rest of Maharashtra

Acharya Beach

- Adgaon Sea Beach
- Anjarlay Beach
- Arevare Seaface and Beach
- Arnala Beach
- Bhatye Beach
- Bhudal Beach
- Dabholi Beach
- Devgad Beach
- Diveagar Beach
- Ganapatipule Beach
- Harihareshwar Beach
- Hedave Beach
- Kashid Beach
- Kondavli Beach
- Kotharwadi Beach
- Kuravde Beach
- Ladghar Beach
- Maigund Beach
- Mandvi Beach
- Mithamumbari Beach
- Murud Harnai Beach
- Nadivade Beach
- Padale Beach
- Padavane Ambolgad Beach
- Palande Beach
- Palshet Beach
- Redi Beach
- Sagareshwar Beach
- Shiroda Velagar Beach
- Shreewardhan Beach
- Srikar Beach
- Suruchi Beach
- Vasai Tambaldeggh Beach
- Tarkarli Beach
- Varavde Beach
- Vijaydurg Beach
- Agardanda Beach
- Aravi Beach
- Bankot Beach
- Bhogve Beach
- Chivla Beach
- Devbag Beach
- Dhokamle Beach
- Ganeshgule Beach
- Guhagar Beach
- Harne Beach
- Kalvi Beach
- Kelwa Beach
- Kondura Beach
- Kunkeshwar Beach
- Kurlevadi Beach
- Madban Beach
- Malvan Beach
- Mervi Beach
- Mochemad Beach
- Murud Janjira Beach
- Narvan Beach
- Palghar Beach
- Rajori Beach
- Revdanda Beach
- Vaingani Beach
- Veias Beach
- Welneshwar Beach

Goa : The beaches in the state of Goa are listed below.

- Agonda Beach
- Arambol Beach
- Baga Beach
- Calangute Beach
- Caveiossim Beach
- Anjuna Beach
- Ashvem Beach
- Benaulim Beach
- Candolim Beach
- Chapora Beach

- Colva Beach
- Majorda Beach
- Miramar
- Morjim Beach
- Sinquerim Beach
- Varca Beach
- Dona Paula
- Mandrem Beach
- Mobor Beach
- Palolem Beach
- Vagator Beach

Karnataka

- Karwar Beach, Karnataka
- Om beach, Gokarna
- Murudeshwara
- Kudle beach
- Kaup (village)
- Mangalore Beaches

Fig 6



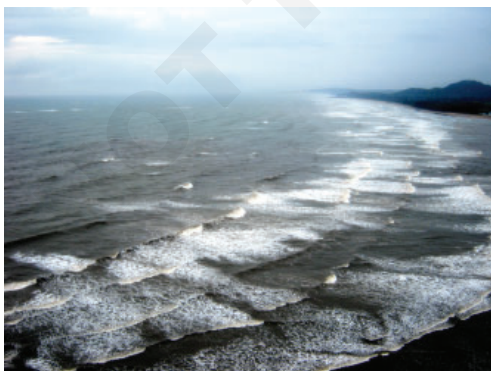
Kudle Beach Karnataka

Fig 7



Malpe Beach udupi

Fig 8



Murudeshwara Beach Karnataka

Panambur

- NITK Beach
- Tannirubhavi Beach
- Ullal

Fig 9



Kudle Beach Karnataka

- Sasihithlu Beach
- Someshwar Beach
- Maravanthe
- Malpe Beach, Udupi
- St Mary's Island, Karnataka
- Trasi
- Gopinath Beach

Kerala : The beaches in Kerala state are

- Aiappuzha Beach
- Chavakkad Beach, Thrissur
- Cherai Beach

Fig 10



Kollam Beach

- Fort Kochi beach, Cochin
- Kappad
- Kollam Beach
- Marari beach
- Muzhappilangad Beach, Thalassery
- Payyambalam Beach
- Snehatheeram Beach, Thrissur
- Shangumughom Beach, Trivandrum
- Thekkumbhagam-Kappii Beach, Paravur
- Thirumullavaram Beach, Kollam
- Varkala, Trivandrum
- Kappkadavu
- Kovalam, Trivandrum
- Meenkunnu Beach

Fig 11



Mamallapuram Beach Tamil Nadu

Fig 12



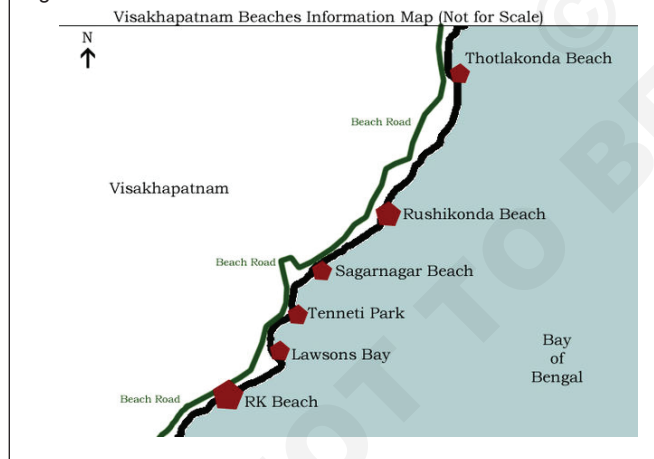
**Shankumugham Beach
Thiruvananthapuram Kerala**

East coast

Andhra Pradesh: The following are the beaches in andhra pradesh,India

- Baruva, Srikakulam
- Bhavanapadu, Srikakulam
- Kalingapatnam Beach, Srikakulam

Fig 13



- Kallepalli, Srikakulam
- Mogadalapadu, Srikakulam
- Sagarnagar beach, Visakhapatnam
- Bheemunipatnam beach
- Thotlakonda beach, Visakhapatnam
- Rushikonda Beach, Visakhapatnam
- Ramakrishna Mission Beach, Visakhapatnam
- Tenneti Park Beach, Visakhapatnam

- Yarada Beach, Visakhapatnam
- Yanam Beach, Yanam
- Vakalapudi beach, Kakinada
- Uppada Beach, Uppada (East Godavari district)
- Manginapudi beach, Machilipatnam
- Suryalanka Beach, Bapatla
- Vodarevu Beach, Chirala
- Rama Puram Beach, Chirala
- Mypadu Beach, Neilore
- Koduru beach, Nellore

Odisha : The beaches in Odisha are

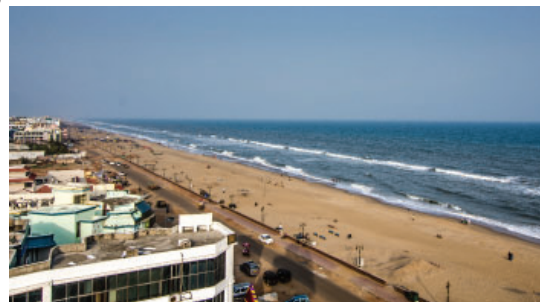
- Chandipur Beach
- Konark Beach
- Talsari Beach
- Satpada Beach
- Paradeep Beach
- Gahirmatha Beach
- Ramachandi Beach
- Baliharachandi Beach
- Gopalpur-on-Sea
- Astaranga Beach
- Pata Sonapur Beach
- Baleshwar Beach
- Satabhaya Beach
- Puri Beach
- Malud Beach

Fig 14



vizag Beach Andhra Pradesh

Fig 15



Pondicherry

- Promenade Beach
- Mane Beach
- Plage Paradiso (Paradise Beach)
- Auroville Beach
- Karaikal Beach
- Yanam Beach
- Serenity Beach

Tamil Nadu : The beaches in the southern state of Tamil Nadu are:

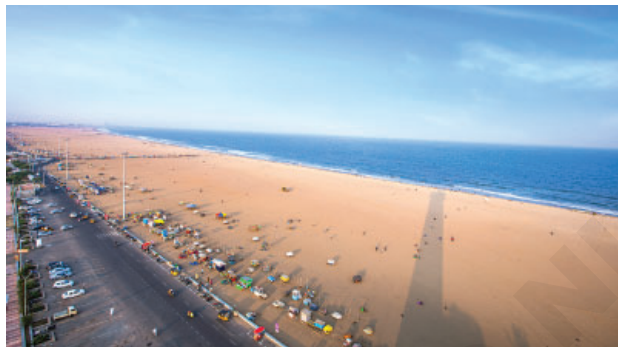
- Marina Beach, Chennai
- Golden Beach, Chennai
- Adyar Beach, Chennai
- Thiruvanmiyur Beach, Chennai
- Elliot's Beach, Chennai

Fig 16



Elliot's Beach, Chennai

Fig 17



Marina Beach, Chennai

Fig 18



- Santhome Beach, Chennai
- Thiruvottiyur Beach, Chennai
- Kovalam Beach, Kovalam
- Mahabalipuram Beach, Mahabalipuram
- Ennore Beach, Ennore
- Silver Beach, Cuddalore
- Kanyakumari Beach, Kanyakumari
- Tiruchendur Beach, Tiruchendur
- Kayalpattinam Beach, Kayalpattinam

Fig 19



Gulf of Mannar Dhanushkodi

- Velankanni Beach, Velankanni
- Poombukar (Mayavaram) Beach Poombukar
- Pondicherry Beach
- Porto Novo Beach, Parangipettai
- Tranqbar Beach, Tharangambadi
- Nagapattinam Beach
- Sikarim sagar Beach

West Bengal

The beaches in West Bengal are:

- Digha Beach
- Bakkhali Beach
- Mandarmani Beach
- Sankarpur Beach
- Junput Beach
- Tajpur, West Bengal Beach

Others

- Adhiyamaan Beach, Rameshwaram, Tamil Nadu
- Aimbaug Beach, Maharashtra
- Andaman & Nicobar
- Besant Nagar Beach, Chennai, Tamil Nadu
- Beypore, Kerala
- Chavakkad Beach, Thrissur, Kerala
- Diu, Daman and Diu
- Golden Beach, Chennai, Chennai, Tamil Nadu
- Radhanagar, Andaman 121
- Saddam Beach, Kerala
- Sindhudurg, Maharashtra
- Vishakhapatnam Beach, Andhra Pradesh

Fig 20



Adventure Sports - Existing trends and places

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- brief knowledge of existing trends & places of importance for Air based adventure sports of India
- state the best time to visit those places.

Air Based Adventure sports in India

Aero sports are a part of most adventure sport which has gained popularity in India. Air sports are the best adventure sport which should try to experience the thrill in air and breathtaking views of the countryside. As of now Aero sports are still in its infancy in India.

The basic techniques of hang gliding, launching, turning, landing. India offers excellent locations for all types of flying sports such as paragliding, hang gliding and ballooning. Aerobatics and Gliding are not as much popular, compare to other flying recreational activities in India.

Paragliding: The recreational flying sport, paragliding is a fun, thrill and safe way to experience flight in its simplest form. There are two types of paragliding, single and tandem, with tandem paragliding one can enjoy the thrill of flying without learn n it. Many schools and flying clubs in India are offering courses in paragliding and all other aero sports.

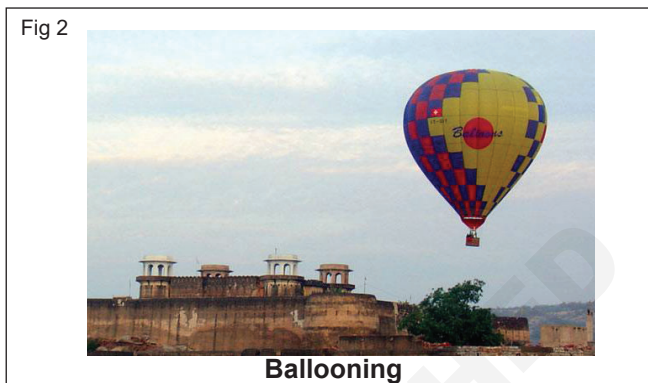
The main destinations for paragliding in India range from hilly to coastal regions and from planes to desert regions, Sanasar, An undiscovered haven in Jammu is the hub of paragliding in India.



Ballooning: Hot air ballooning is most adventures sports, which can take you to enjoy the great heights in sky. Hot air ballooning as an adventure sport is quite new or still in its infancy in India.

The hot air ballooning is adventures, fun, thrill and most exciting way to discover the sky, and have the bird's eye view of the land from a height. Rajasthan "The Royal State Of India" is one of the best destination for Hot air ballooning in India.

During pushkar camel fair, hot air ballooning is one of the major attraction of adventures travel of Rajasthan.



Hang Gliding: The extreme open sky hang gliding adventures sports is most exciting and affordable solution for most people who has desire to fly.

The extreme Sports can enjoy from great hills living to the coastal region almost throughout the year. Hang gliding is a unique way to fly solo in air like a bird. There are many great flying locations around India, Kangra valley and Dharmakot in Himachal Pradesh are one of the famous destinations for hang gliding in India.



Para Motoring: Para motoring is one of the popular aero sports in India. It consists of a frame that combines the light weight 2 stroke engine with a pusher prop strapped on your back, it is also known as powered paragliding. The ultimate adventure come into picture, when you flying over the virgin jungle, mountains, rivers and local villages.

Sky Diving: The most thrill open sky adventures sport is also known as parachuting or parachute jumping. Sky divine is has a very limited scope in India compare to other air sports. Parachuting is the action of exiting an aircraft or jumping off of a tali structure, and returning to earth.

The sports authority of Gujarat is in the process of developing the state as a destination for adventure aero sports. especially skydiving. Indian parachuting, federation which promote and organizes sky diving in India.



Best time to visit those places : By and large, summer is when the Himalayan sites- those in Himachal, for instance- are at their best; and winter is when the sites

in peninsular India are best for aero sports. The only time aero sports come to a standstill is during the monsoon, when wind and rain can make it a dangerous activity.

Training : Much more training is required for aero sports than for a number of other sports like trekking or swimming. Sports like skydiving, paragliding and hang gliding need a few days' training, in which trainees are taught the essentials of rigging up and dismantling a glider, aerodynamics, air safety, wind and land conditions, and so on. Theoretical training is followed by dry runs, then by short hops which do not rise high in the air and cover very short distances.

Physical fitness is top priority for anybody who's keen on aero sports. You've got be in good condition, and not overweight. Suffering from vertigo is obviously a no-no when it comes to aero sports.

A few institutions in India offer training in paragliding and hang gliding and other aero sports. The length of courses varies, with private companies offering a short 4-day course which just about manages to get you flying. What's recommended, instead, is a good course from a reputed association that specializes in aero sports training.

What to bring: Warm clothing and a windcheater are a must, as the higher you rise, the lower the temperature falls, and it can get quite cold. Make sure you are wearing sturdy ankle-support shoes, long trousers, and gloves. A pair of sunglasses and a liberal splash of suntan lotion are highly recommended too.

Whatever you need in the way of bedding and other 'essentials'- mineral water, food, medicines, etc- will depend upon where you're going. Larger cities and towns like Bangalore, Mumbai and Manali have virtually everything you'll need, but if you're headed further out, to Billing and smaller places, it makes sense to carry stuff you can't do without.

Importance for Land based, water based and aero based adventure sports of India

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- explain the knowledge of existing trends & places of importance for Water based adventure sports of India
- state the best time to visit those places.

Water Sports Activities In the water

- Swimming, including pool swimming and open water swimming
- Diving off springboards or off platforms
- Modern pentathlon includes epee fencing, pistol shooting, swimming, a show jumping course on horseback, and cross country running
- Rescue swimming is swimming with the goal to rescue other swimmers or the practice thereof.
- Snorkeling is the practice of swimming at the surface (typically of the sea) being equipped with a mask, fins, and a short tube called a snorkel.
- Synchronized diving
- Synchronized swimming is a hybrid of swimming, gymnastics, and ballet.
- Triathlon, a multi-sport event involving the completion of three continuous and sequential endurance events, usually a combination of swimming, cycling and running
- Waboba is played with a waboba ball on beaches or in pools.
- Water aerobics is aerobics in the water.
- Water polo is a team sport played in water.

On the water

- Barefoot skiing is waterskiing with no skis
- Boating is the use of boats
- Boat racing is the use of powerboats to participate in races
- Bodyboarding is similar to surfing, but the board is smaller and the person (normally) lies down on the board
- Cable skiing is similar to wake boarding but with cables for artificial maneuvering
- Canoeing
 - Canoe polo
- Dragon Boat Racing teams of 20 paddlers racing
- Fishing is the recreation and sport of catching fish
- Flyboard
 - Flowriding
- Jet Skiing
 - Kayaking
- Kiteboarding
- Kitesurfing on flat water using a kite for propulsion
- Parasailing where a person is towed behind a vehicle (usually a boat) while attached to a parachute
- Picigin, kicking around a small ball on shallow waters.
- Rafting
 - Rowing
- Sailing using the wind for propulsion
- Sit-down hydrofoiling is riding on the water with a hydrofoil attached to a ski
- Skimboarding is a boardsport in which a board is used to ride on an incoming wave
- Skurfing is where the participant “skurfs” behind a boat on a surfboard
- Stand up paddle surfing a surf style board with a paddle, used in flat water or waves
- Surfing downhill on ocean waves or artificial waves in a wave pool
- Wakeboarding is similar to water skiing, but using only one board attached to the feet
- Wakeskating is similar to wakeboarding, but the board is not attached to the feet
- Wakesurfing is a mix between wakeboarding and surfing
- Waterskiing is using skis to slide over the water while being pulled by a boat or other device
- White water rafting
- Windsurfing on flat water using wind for propulsion in combination with sails
- Yachting sailing on yachts, day sailing, cruising or Yacht racing

Under water

Under water Recreational diving

- Cave diving
 - Deep diving
- Free-diving
 - Ice diving

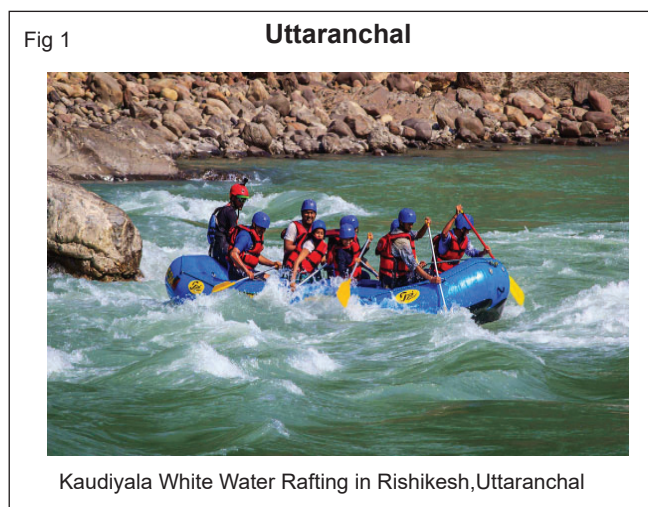
- Spearfishing
- Underwater archaeology, particularly activity involving wreck diving
- Underwater photography, including underwater videography, is photography done underwater. Numerous contests worldwide are arranged every year. Digital cameras have revolutionized how many divers participate.
- Underwater videography

Under water sports

Main article: Underwater sports

- Aquathlon (underwater wrestling)
- Finswimming
- Free-diving
- Sport diving (sport)
- Spearfishing
- Underwater football
- Underwater hockey (octopush) is a game played underwater which has with some similarities to hockey. Two teams of players use short wooden curved sticks to move a heavy puck across the pool bottom to the opponents' goal.
- Underwater ice hockey
- Underwater orienteering
- Underwater photography (sport)
- Underwater rugby is a game played underwater which has some similarities to rugby football. Two teams try to score goals by sending a slightly negatively buoyant ball into the opponents' goal placed on the bottom of the pool.
- Underwater target shooting

Water Sports in India: With its large lakes, gushing white streams and blue ocean waters, India offers the adventure enthusiasts a scope to splash and dive in with captivating beaches and valleys surrounding these.



Uttaranchal, Kerala, Goa, Andaman-Nicobar and Lakshadweep are the top 5 India destinations for water sports like white water rafting, water skiing, canoeing & kayaking, scuba diving, snorkeling, angling and fishing. The 2,525 stretch of the Ganges rising from the western Himalayas creates great opportunities for diverse water sports.



Preparing the self for mental and physical challenges and you will enjoy the best adventure holiday in India. The following are the top 5 best destinations in India for experiencing diverse water sports in an adventurous way.

Cuddled in the Himalayan ranges, Uttaranchal is a feast for the senses. Trees, forest lands, flora & fauna, and the untamable white water of the Ganges elevate the charm of this place where it can rightly be compared to the heaven's garden as described in ancient scriptures.

Rishikesh in Uttaranchal is best known for white water rafting. In a holiday vacation to Rishikesh you can enjoy camping, trekking, rock climbing or mountaineering along with taming the white water in a rafting excavation. Those who love to face the challenges of nature, kayaking in Rishikesh is the best bet for them. Whitewater river rafting stretch of the Ganges from Kaudiyala to Rishikesh has 12 major rapids over 36 kilometers.

Kerala water sports include canoeing, catamaran sailing, Para sailing, scuba diving, snorkeling and wind surfing. With its 44 rivers, numerous lakes and lagoons, Kerala has placed itself among the best holiday destinations in India. Tourists can also enjoy the famous Snake Boat Race and Nehru Trophy Boat Race in Kerala in the summer season. A perfect summer destination with numerous scopes for relaxation and enjoyment, Kerala is ideal for leisure as well as family vacationing in India.

Goa: Vastly popular for its sunbathed beaches aside Arabian Ocean and its vibrant lifestyle, Goa is an ideal destination to try some of the best water sports in the country.

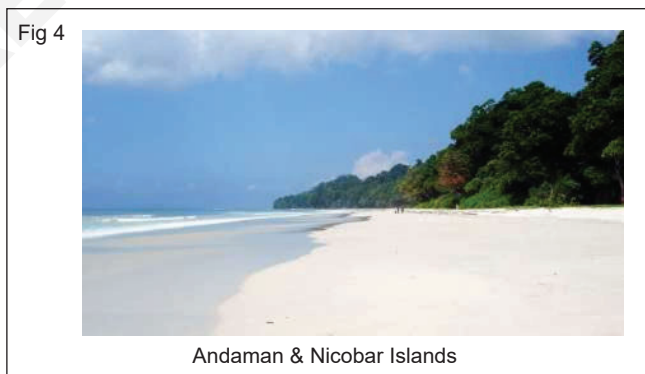
Attracting as much as 20 million visitors every year, the enchanting scenic beauty of the place makes an adventure vacation in Goa complete with its offering of water sports like fishing, jet siding, parasailing, scuba diving, water skiing, wind surfing and dinghy sailing.



The world under the clean water of the Arabian Ocean can be best enjoyed in a scuba diving session in Goa. Goa also serves in its platter lucrative sightseeing destinations and dazzling night life which really mounts to the expectation of every global nomad.

Andaman and Nicobar: Andaman & Nicobar Islands which has special surprises of nature, culture and colors for its visitors. Bestowed with some of the most delectable and gorgeous islands on the face of earth, this place holds a promise of enthralling holiday per excellence.

A holiday in India gets an adventurous pinch with water sports activities in Andaman & Nicobar that includes snorkeling, scuba diving, glass bottom boating, water skiing and many more. The luxury resorts in Andaman & Nicobar are famous for their rejuvenating therapies and massages.



Lakshadweep: Blessed by the Mother Nature, Lakshadweep is best known for snorkeling. A deep plunge into the blue ocean water and you can become a part of the rainbow colored world beneath. Perfect for honeymoon, adventure and group tours, Lakshadweep is also rich with its historical heritage.

White water rafting: White water rafting enthusiast can always head to the early stages of the Ganga, which offers the exhilarating Alakananda and Bhagirathi rivers. For exceptional river running experiences one can try the Indus snaking through Ladakh and the Zaskar and Chenab in Kashmir. Sutlej, Beas (in Himachal Pradesh), Teesta (in Sikkim), and Yamuna offer sporting challenges to Water sports enthusiasts.

Fig 5



The Arabian Sea - Lakshadweep Islands

Sports Club at Port Blair), Kashir (Manasbal Lake, Dal lake and Nagin lake) etc.

Fig 7



Sailing : Kerala (Alappuzha beach, Kovalam Beach), Goa Beaches Andaman & Nicobar Islands, Lakshadweep Islands, Mumbai, Tamilnadu (Tarsha Sports Complex) etc are exciting destinations for sailing.

Snorkeling : Major destinations for snorkeling are Andaman and Nicobar (Andaman Water Sports Complex, Corbyn’s Cove Tourism Complex, Mahatma Gandhi Marine National Park, Havelock).

Scuba Diving : Lakshadweep and Andaman and Nicobar islands are ideal places for scuba diving. Besides, all the places used for snorkeling can also be utilized for suba diving.

Kayaking and Canoeing : Major Kayaking and canoeing sites in India include, the beaches of Goa, Karnataka and Kerala, Nainital’s lake Paradise, Mumbai beaches, Goa, Karnatata and kerala, Nainitial’s like Paradise, Mumbai beaches, Dal Lake, Srinagar’s Nagin Lake, Srinagar’s Manasbal lake etc.

Fig 6



Best season for river rafting is from April to September while the most popular stretch for the sport is on the Ganges, near Rishikesh in Uttaranchal.

The Kaudiyala Rafters camp hosted by The Garhwal Mandaf Vikas Nigam (GMVN), an Uttaranchal Government undertaking, Conducts River rafting courses at Kaudiyala, 38 kms from Rishikesh.

Water- skiing: The various water skiing destinations in india include Goa (Asan Barrage Water Sports Resort, Calangute Beach, Goa Dona Paula Beach, Goa Cavellossim Beach, Goa Condolim Beach, Goa Bogmalo Beach, Goa Sinquerim Beach), Andaman & Nicobar Islands (Water Sport Complex at Diglipur, Island Water

Existing trends and places of importance for Land Based adventure sports in India

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- state the knowledge of Existing trends & places of importance for land based adventure sports of India
- state the best time to visit those places.

Arunachal Pradesh

Biking Tours (Fig 1)

Fig 1



One-Horned Rhino Spotting in Kaziranga National Park:

While in the Kaziranga National Park in Assam, take an enthralling Elephant Safari and step into the enchanting world of the One-horned Rhinos! In addition to this exotic as well as endangered species, you can also spot other majestic wildlife like the Indian Tigers and Wild Buffaloes (Fig 2).

Wildlife Safari in Nameri National Park:

This national wildlife protected area is the home to several endangered and exotic wildlife species. To name a few, you can easily spot Tiger, Elephant, Leopard, Wild Boar, Gaur, Himalayan Black Bear and others. Housing more 300 species of birds and around 600 types of flora, it is also a paradise for nature lovers and shutterbugs (Fig 3).

Fig 2



Fig 3



Bungee Jumping in Jagdalpur, Chhattisgarh

Udann Dongor Trek in Goa : A moderate graded trek in the party capital of the country, this trek is an ideal trek for the beginners who hunt for adrenaline kicks in Goa. The trek involves ascending through scenic and rugged trails and reaches up to a height of 600m (Fig 4).

Fig 4



Himachal Pradesh, Cycling in the Kangra Valley

Challenge and push your own limit with a cycling trip in the Kagnra Valley of Himachal Pradesh. Pedalling 260km at a height of 4,940ft can easily get you high on adrenaline. (Fig 5)

Deotibba Hampta Pass : A moderate trek that can be taken throughout the year, this trek takes you through a fascinating range of trails. While in some places it passes through barren lands, lush forests, at other points, it will take you through scenic meadows, windy trails and snow clad peaks (Fig 6).

Fig 5



Fig 6



Skiing in Kurfi : Whether you are a beginner or a pro, skiing in Himachal Pradesh will surely make you fall in love with the snows! Among all the skiing destinations, Mahasu and Narkanda are the two most popular skiing destinations in the state (Fig 7).

Fig 7



Kareri Lake Trek: Hiking through the narrow passes, challenging terrains, evergreen forests and rugged trails, you can witness the magical beauty of the Kareri Lake in Himachal Pradesh. Standing at a towering height of 10,863ft, a trek to the Kareri Lake will introduce you to the pristine and untouched beauty of the Himalayas (Fig 8).

Karnataka, Camping in Bheemeshwari: Located within the close proximity of the Mutati Forest Range, Bheemeshwari proves to be an enthralling camping destination in Kamataka. Nestled amidst lush and captivating forests and adorned by the stunning Cauvery River, camping in Bheemeshwari is truly an experience of the wild (Fig 9).

Fig 8



Rajasthan, Desert Camping in Jodhpur: For those, who crave for fun and adventure in the arid deserts of Rajasthan, Jodhpur proves to be an ideal destination. Also known as the ‘Sun City’, the adventure junkies can opt for desert camping along with bonfire, barbeque dinners and village tours in Jodhpur (Fig 12).

Fig 9



Fig 12



Flying Fox in Rishikesh: One hour of this enthralling activity and you would surely wish to do it once again! One of the most trending adventure activity in Rishikesh, Flying Fox is indulges sliding down through a zipline, while harnessed firmly with a safety cable. While participating in this awe-inspiring activity, you can have a quick bird’s eye view of Rishikesh’s opulent and stunning beauty (Fig 13).

Elephant Safari in Kothamangalam: On a visit to the Kodanad elephant Orphanage in Kothamangalam, you can enjoy an enthralling ride with the jumbos. Not just this, you can also learn how to feed, take care and nurture this massive animals and also give them a wash during this visit (Fig 10).

Fig 13



Fig 10



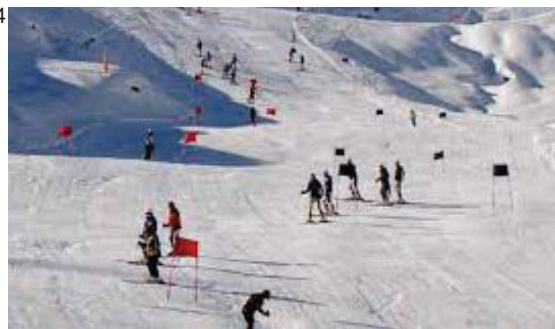
Skiing in Auli: Come winter, the Garhwal Himalayas in Auli paint themselves with the natural white of the snows. During this season, adventure junkies from all over the world throng the Himalayas and enjoy the thrill ride with their skis. Favourable slopes, thick layer of snow and scenic views all around makes it for a memorable skiing experience in Auli (Fig 14).

Meghalaya, Caving in Meghalaya: Nestled away in the North-East corner of India, Meghalaya is truly a treasure trove! Hidden in this state are some of the most enchanting caves, hills, waterfalls and mountains. The Khasi Hills and the Jaintia Hills are two of the popular hills, where one can indulge into caving and discover the mystical beauty of the state. Among the caves, Krem Mawkhyrdop, Krem Dam, Krem Lympud and Krem Mawjymbuin are the most popular caves (Fig 11).

Fig 11



Fig 14



Tourism promotional festivals of India

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- understand the package related to fairs and festival of India.

India is the land of fun and frolic. The Indians celebrate the various fairs and festivals to the extent that there are more number of fairs and festivals in a year than the total number of days. The rites and the rituals followed by the Indians, the enthusiasm and faith that are constant features add to the charm of the fairs and festivals.

Most the Indian festivals are regional, seasonal or religious. The unity of the diverse country like India can be seen at the national festivals of the Republic day (26th January), Independence Day (15th August), Gandhi Jayanti i.e. the birth anniversary of the father of the nation (2nd October) and Children's Day i.e. the birth anniversary of Jawaharlal Nehru (14th November).

The entire population of the nation rejoices on these occasions that are landmarks events in the history of the nation and reveal the integration. On Republic Day the colorful parade with tableaux from 01 the different states and the daring display of developments by the three wings, army, navy and air force held near the India Gate in Delhi is amazing as well as novel.

There is a big list of the religious festivals that are celebrated in India. In the secular country of India people light up their homes with as many lights on Diwali as on Christmas, the fireworks are as loud as on Onam. The colors of Holi are spread across the castes and creeds.

Hindus commemorate the birth anniversaries of their deities as Ram Navami, Maha Shivratri, Janam Ashtami similarly, the Sikhs remember their gurus on Gurburab. On the occasion of Raksha Bandhan an unspoken pledge is exchanged between, a brother and sister cementing their fraternal relationship.

List of Fairs and Festivals Packages

1 Kolayat Festival Tour

Duration: 5 Days / 4 Nights

Destination Covered: Delhi - Mandawa - Bikaner - Jaipur

Kolayat Festival Tour

Overview : Kolayat Festival Tour is planned to let you explore the Kolayat festival that reminds you of the living traditions of ancient India.

Pilgrims bathe in the Kolayat Lake on the day of the Kolayat festival and wash away their sins.

Also enjoy the Deepmala ritual in which hundreds of oil lamps are lit and left to float on leaves over the placid waters of the Kolayat Lake.

Trip Highlights

- Excursion to the majestic havelis of Mandawa including Ihunjhunwala Haveli, Hanuman Prasad Goenka Haveli, Gulab Rai Ladia Haveli, Goenka Double Haveli, Murmuria Haveli, and the Mohan Lal Saraf Haveli
- Explore the Shekhawati enjoying one hour camel ride
- Visit the major tourist hotspots of Bikaner covering Junagarh Fort, Raj Ratan Bihari Temple, Rasik Shiromani Temple and the Karni Mata Temple.
- Guided tour to Gajner Palace and the Camel breeding center, at Bikaner
- Darshan at Karni Mata temple
- Attend the Kolayat Festival on Kartik purnima at the Kolayat village.
- Enjoy performances featuring Rajasthani music and dance, competitions of wrestling, tug of war, and camel decoration during the festival

Day 1: Delhi

After arrival at Delhi airport, meet our representative who'll guide you to one of our listed hotels. Check-in at the hotel. Overnight stay.

Day 2: Delhi - Mandawa

Next morning after breakfast proceed to reach Mandawa. As you reach Mandawa, get accommodated at one of our listed hotels. After resting and relaxing for a while set off on an excursion to the magnificent Mandawa Havli. The intricately painted walls of this place and the detailed work will enthrall you to the fullest.

Some of the other popular havelis that must be visited include .Ihunjhunwala Havli, I-lanuman Prasad Goenka Haveli, Gulab Rai Ladia Haveli, Goenka Double Haveli, Murmuria Haveli, and the Mohan Lal Saraf Haveli. In the evening pay a visit to the Shekhawati area followed by one hour camel ride. Enjoy an overnight stay at the hotel.

Day 3: Mandawa - Bikaner

After breakfast, drive straight to Bikaner- "The camel City". Upon reaching Bikaner, checkin at one of our listed hotels. After straightening your backs for a while proceed for a full day excursion to some of the major tourist hotspots of Bikaner covering Junagarh Fort, Raj Ratan Bihari Temple and the Rasik Shiromani temple. In the evening you may take a visit to Gajner Palace and the Camel breeding center. Enjoy comfortable night stay at the hotel.

Day 4: Bikaner

In the morning after breakfast proceed to explore the Lalgarh Palace. After exploring the Lalgarh Palace, drive to Kolayat village where sage Kapil Muni did meditation for the redemption of mankind. On the Kartik purnima thousands of pilgrims visit Kolayat village to take a dip in the holy lake on one of the 52 ghats.

During the time Kolayat festival is celebrated in the village several entertaining performances featuring Rajasthani music and dance, competitions of wrestling, tug of war, and camel decoration are arranged. Also enjoy the Dcepmala ritual in which hundreds of oil lamps are lit and left to float on leaves over the placid waters of the Kolayat Lake. After visiting the festival return to Bikaner for dinner and an overnight stay in the hotel.

Day 5: Bikaner - Jaipur-Departure from Delhi

In the morning after breakfast, drive to Jaipur. Stop midway to visit the Karni Mata temple, popularly known as Rat temple. After the visit resume drive to Jaipur. On reaching Jaipur, transfer to Jaipur airport to board a flight to Delhi. Upon reaching Delhi airport board a connecting flight for onward destination.

2 jaisalmer desert festival tour details

Jaisalmer Desert Festival Tour

Overview : Jaisalmer Desert Festival Tour is planned to let you explore as many facets of Rajasthan in the possible crunch of time. The three-day event stresses more on local elements and heritage.

On the tour get to see cultural events, camel races, turban tying competitions etc. Also enjoy amidst the golden sands of the Thar Desert along with the musical performance by folk singers under the moonlit sky.

These Rajasthani folk dance and songs are presented by some of the best professionals of the art.

Trip Highlights

- Visit the major tourist attractions of Delhi including India Gate, Raj Ghat, Lotus temple, Humayun's Tomb, Qutub Minar and the Parliament house.
- Guided tour to major tourist attractions of Jodhpur including Umaid Bhavan Palace, Jaswant Thada and the Raj Ka Bag Palace.
- Attend the Mangaaarti at the Gadsisar Lake
- Explore the magnificent Jaisalmer Fort and the Royal Cenotaphs.
- Enjoy desert festival at Jailasmer
- Excursion to the major tourist attractions of Jaisalmer including Jain Temples, Bada Bagh, Government Museum, Folklore Museum and the Amar Sagar Lake.
- Explore Salim ji Ki Haveli and Nathmal ki Haveli, at Jailasmer

Itinerary Details

Day 1: Delhi

On reaching the Delhi airport, meet our representative who guides you to one of our listed hotels. Check-in at the hotel to relax in the comfort of its room. After resting for a while, proceed to visit the major tourist attractions of Delhi.

The major tourist attractions of Delhi include India Gate, Raj Ghat, Lotus temple, Humayuns Tomb, Qutub Minar and the Parliament house. In the evening, you may take a leisurely walk to explore the pulsating nightlife of Delhi. Return to the hotel for overnight stay.

Day 2: Delhi - Jodhpur

On the following day, get an assisted transfer to the airport to board the flight for Jodhpur. On arrival, meet our representative for an assisted transfer to your pre-booked hotel. In the afternoon, visit the major tourist attractions of the city including Mehrangarh fort, Umaid Bhavan Palace, Jaswant Thada and Raj Ka Bagh Palace. The evening is scheduled for a visit the beautiful Umed Garden and the Government Museum. Overnight stay in the hotel.

Day 3: Jodhpur - Jaisalmer

After breakfast at the hotel on the 3rd day of the tour, begin your road journey towards Jaisalmer (around 6 hours). Once you reach, complete the check-in formalities at your prebooked hotel. Thereafter, proceed to visit the magnificent Jaisalmer Fort and the Royal Cenotaphs. Now, visit the venue of the Desert Festival.

Spend the rest of the day in enjoying and participating in various programs such as the Turban Tying Competition, Mr. and Miss. Desert, etc. Back to the hotel for an overnight stay.

Day 4: Jaisalmer

Early morning, you can attend the Mangal aarti at the Gadsisar Lake. Back to the hotel for breakfast. Later, enjoy participating and contributing to your team's win in a Tug of War game- Indians Vs Foreigners. Both men and women participate in this game. Later, test your balancing skills by participating in the Matka race competition. You may also indulge in the games like camel decoration and the camel polo that is sure to leave you amused to the fullest. Later return to the hotel and overnight stay.

Day 5: Jaisalmer

Start the day by embarking on a sightseeing tour of Jaisalmer. The major tourist attractions of Jaisalmer include Jain Temples, Bada Bagh, Folklore Museum and the Amar Sagar Lake. Later in the day also visit Salim ji Ki I-haveli and Nathmal ki Haveli, which are most striking amongst the other havelis. Then drive to Sam Sand dunes, the venue for the grand finale of the Desert Festival. Return to the hotel and overnight stay.

Day 6: Jodhpur - Departure from Delhi

In the morning, after breakfast drive to Jodhpur airport to board afternoon flight to Delhi. On reaching Delhi airport, board another flight for onward journey.

3 Pushkar Fair with Golden Triangle Tour

Duration: 7 Days / 6 Nights

Destination Covered: Delhi - Agra - Jaipur - Pushkar
Pushkar Fair with Golden Triangle Tour

Duration: 7 Days / 6 Nights

Destination Covered: Delhi - Agra - Jaipur - Pushkar

Overview : Pushkar Fair with Golden Triangle Tour is planned to let you have a glimpse of India.

Opt for this Golden Triangle tour for it being the most preferred tour and the added extension of Pushkar Fair adds to its charm.

The Pushkar fair brings together pilgrims, visitors and camel traders to participate in one's of the season's most colorful social events.

Also on this tour explore the magnificent forts and palaces exhibiting royal legacy of the bygone years.

Trip Highlights

- Visit to the major tourist attraction of Delhi including India Gate, Raj Ghat, Lotus temple, Akshardam, Humayun's Tomb, Qutub Minar and the Parliament house.
- Sightseeing tour to major tourist attractions of Agra including Agra Fort, Dayal Bagh, Jama Masjid, Mehtab Bagh, Chini Ka Rauza and Ram Bagh.
- Explore the Taj Mahal.
- Guided tour to major tourist attractions of Jaipur including Jaigarh Fort, Hawa Mahal, Jal Mahal and the Nahargarh Fort.
- Excursion to Amer Fort/enjoying an elephant ride.
- Guided tour to the major tourist attractions of Pushkar including Pushkar Lake, Aptaeshwar temple, Varaha temple and the Brahma temple
- Attend the Pushkar fair, the highlights of the fair include Animal Decoration and Race competitions, Cow Milking competition, Indian Bride competition, Turban Tying and Tilak competitions.

Itinerary Details

Day 1: Delhi

After reaching the Delhi airport, Check-in at the hotel. Overnight stay.

Day 2: Delhi

On the following day after breakfast, proceed to a guided tour of Delhi. Visit to the major tourist attraction of Delhi scheduled for the day include India Gate, Raj Ghat, Lotus temple, Humayun's Tomb, Qutub Minar and the

Parliament house. In the evening revisit Red Fort for an impressive light and sound show. Stay the night at the hotel & may visit Akshardam for sounds different short.

Day 3: Delhi - Agra

Early in the morning hit the roads to reach Agra. After taking rest for sometime embark on a sightseeing tour of Agra. The major tourist attractions of Agra include Agra Fort, Dayal Bagh, Jama Masjid, Mehtab Bagh, Chini Ka Rauza and Ram Bagh.

Later in the day proceed to explore the Taj Mahal. This epitome of love was commissioned by Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan for his beloved wife Mumtaz Mahal. Overnight stay at the hotel.

Day 4: Agra - Jaipur

After breakfast in the morning, leave Agra to reach Jaipur. The beautiful pink city of Jaipur is dotted with a large number of ancient and historic monuments. As you reach Jaipur, get accommodated at one of our listed hotels.

After straightening your backs for a while, embark on a guided tour of Jaipur. The major tourist attractions of Jaipur include Jaigarh Fort, Hawa Mahal, Jal Mahal and the Nahargarh Fort. In the evening return to the hotel for overnight stay.

Day 5: Jaipur - Pushkar

Next morning after breakfast, excursion to Amer Fort seated on the back of caparisoned elephant. Later in the day visit the other major attractions of Jaipur including Royal Observatory, City palace, Central Museum and Birla Mandir.

Later in the day, also visit Sheesh Mahal and Sukh Mandir. After the visit continue drive to Pushkar. Upon reaching Pushkar, check-in at one of our listed hotels for overnight stay.

Day 6: Pushkar

Next morning in Pushkar. The major tourist attractions of Pushkar include Pushkar Lake, Aptaeshwar temple, Varaha temple and the Brahma temple. Later in the day join the festivities at the Pushkar Fair Ground. During the Pushkar fair a lot of trading taking place.

The major highlights of this festival include Animal Decoration and Race competitions, Cow Milking competition, Indian Bride competition and Turban Tying and Tilak competitions. Return to the hotel for overnight stay.

Day 7: Pushkar - Ajmer

After a leisurely morning, transfer to Ajmer railway station to board a connecting train to Delhi. On reaching Delhi get transfer to the Delhi airport to board a flight for onward Journey.

4 Hemis Festival and Leh Tour

Duration: 6 Days / 5 Nights

Destination Covered: Delhi - Leh - Hemis Monastery - Pangong Lake - Khardung La - Delhi.

Hemis festival and Leh Tour

Overview: Hemis Festival and Leh Tour, a package or 5 nights and 6 days, offers you a chance to enjoy the festivities during the extremely well-known Hemis festival along with exploring the tourist attractions of Leh.

This two-festival is organized on the 10th day of the Tibetan lunar month at the Hemis monastery, the largest and richest monastery in India. During the tour, you also enjoy an excursion to Pangong Lake and Khardung La.

Fairs and festival: The hemis festival is celebrated in honour of the safe padmasambhava (alien) guru. Rimpoche. The Rinpoches are believed to be reincarnations of Lord Buddha on this birthday. It is the layer of richest Buddha monastery.

Trip Highlights

- Sightseeing in Leh including the well-known Leh Palace
- Observe the culture of Leh during Hemis Festival at the Hemis monastery
- Visit to Shey and Thiksey monasteries
- Excursion to Pangong Lake
- Visit to Khardung La

Itinerary Details

Day 1 Delhi

Once you arrive at Delhi International airport, join the briefing session where you get important details of the tour. Spend the day at leisure, indulge in the activities of your interest- explore the popular monuments, visit the well-known markets, gorge on street food etc. Overnight stay.

Day 2 Leh

On day 2, get an early morning transfer to the airport to board a flight for Leh. Complete the check-in formalities at the hotel and enjoy refreshments. Post lunch, indulge in sightseeing. Cover the ruins of Leh Palace- the former residence of the royalty of Leh, Hall of Fame- a museum built and maintained by the Indian Army and Shanti Stupa - a white-domed Buddhist chorten not only popular for religious importance but also for an amazing view of the surroundings that it offers. In the evening, enjoy a leisure walk in the market. Stay overnight.

Day 03: Leh - Hemis Festival and Excursion to monasteries

After breakfast, visit the Hemis Monastery to enjoy the festivities. This largest and wealthiest monastery in India, every year plays host to the popular Hemis festival. Enjoy the Chaam, a sacred masked dance being performed by the Lamas, along with musical drums and long horns.

You can also shop for souvenirs from the temporary market stalls. Later, visit the Shey Gumpa - housing a huge statue of seated Buddha; this monastery is located within the Shey Palace and later the Thiksey Gumpa- a Tibetan Buddhist monastery belonging to the (Gelugpa)

sect, it has an architecture similar to Potala Palace in Lhasa, Tibet. Dinner and overnight stay in the hotel.

Day 04: Leh Excursion to Pangong Lake (320 km)

On day 4 of the tour, have breakfast and proceed to Pangong lake (4350 meters), via Chang La (5360 meters), world's third highest motorable road in the world. Carry packed lunch. Reach Pangong (afternoon), an endorheic lake, highest in the world, located in India and Tibet. Admire the beautiful surrounding views of the snow-capped mountains. Return to Leh for an overnight stay.

Day 05 - Excursion to Khardungla top (5359 meters)

On the 5th day of the tour, post breakfast, begin driving towards Khardung la (5359 meters), famed as the highest motorable road, around 39 kms from the main town of Leh, Once you reach the top, treat your eyes to the surrounding local scenery. Back to Leh for lunch. The rest of the day is free for leisure activities. In the evening, visit the market. Stay overnight.

Day 06 - Delhi-Departure

Get on-time transfer to the airport to board a flight back to Delhi to board a flight for your onward destination.

5 Goan Carnival with Backwaters

Duration: 8 Days / 7 Nights

Destination Covered: Mumbai - Goa - Cochin

Goan Carnival with Backwaters

Mumbai - Goa - Cochin

Overview

If you want to experience the celebrations of the popular St. Francis Xavier festival, held in Goa, then Goan Carnival with Backwaters tour is going to be a perfect one for you. The itinerary of 7 nights and 8 days has been designed in such a manner that you are not going to miss any festivity of the festival. During the tour along with exploring the popular attractions of Mumbai, you are also going to indulge in cruising on the Cochin backwaters.

A NOTE ABOUT FEAST OF ST. FRANCIS XAVIER

The feast of St. Francis Xavier is one of the most popular occasions in Goa. One of the must visit churches in Goa. Followers of St. Francis Xavier, pilgrims and tourists flock to Goa on the occasion of the feast of St. Francis Xavier. The patron saint of Goa - St. Francis Xavier is often invoked by his followers for his healing powers.

Trip Highlights

- Guided tour of the Elephanta caves, a world heritage site
- Theme dinner party on the sets of Film City
- Participating in the Goa street parade
- Fun activities like water sports etc. on Goa beaches
- Attend a local band's performance in a local fishermen village of Goa
- Cook your food on skewers over a campfire

- Relish South Indian delicacies and attend a cultural performance, aboard a boat cruise on Cochin backwaters
- Bird watching during cruising on Cochin backwaters
- Gorge on street food during the Mumbai Sidewalk Tour

Itinerary Details

Day 1 - Arrival in Mumbai

After your late evening arrival in Mumbai, get transferred to your hotel for an over night stay.

Day 2 - Mumbai

Post breakfast, day 2 is booked for sightseeing. You are going to cover attractions. Indulge in fun activities at the Juhu beach. Later, enjoy guided tours to the Gateway of India and the Elephanta caves, a UNESCO world heritage site, dedicated to Hinduism and Buddhism. Back to the hotel. Relax for some time.

You are going to love today's evening as you are going to attend a theme dinner party at one of the sets of Film City. Relish the lip-smacking food and observe men as well as women in interesting costumes. Overnight stay.

Day 3 - Mumbai - Goa

On the third day, move to the Mumbai airport to board a flight to Goa. After you reach, get transferred to your hotel. You can take a walk or enjoy water sports. Join the carnival celebrations in the evening. Become a part of the parade going on in the streets, enjoy the food, wine, song and dance. An assortment of delicacies will be served during buffet dinner. Overnight stay.

Day 4-Goa

After breakfast, explore some of the attractions of North and South Goa, which may include churches, museums, beaches forts etc. During the evening, you are going to visit a Fishing village. Such villages are an important part of Goa's culture. Enjoy a charming evening in the local Goan fishing village, a perfect venue to observe a rustic atmosphere. Enjoy the performance of a local band. Night stay in the hotel.

Day – 5:Goa

You are going to enjoy fun activities on the beach, Boaling wala fix in etc. You can do anything you want to such as relaxing by the beach, can take a pleasure walk, can indulge in water sports etc. During the evening, you are going to relish Seafood Bar-be-cue on the beach.

Enjoying dinner under the starlit sky is going to be an amazing experience. If you want, you can also cook your food on skewers over a campfire. Enjoy the light music being played in the background. Stay overnight.

Day 6-Goa - Cochin

In the morning, you will move to the airport for boarding a flight to Cochin, the "Queen of the Arabian Sea". On reaching, check into the hotel. Post breakfast, leave for sightseeing where you will cover attractions like St.

Francis Church, Jewish Synagogue, Chinese Fishing Nets and Dutch Palace. The evening will be for going on-board a Boat cruise on the Kerala backwaters.

Spend the night aboard a beautifully decorated boat where savor South Indian delicacies. The evening will be concluded with fireworks in the sky. Overnight in the hotel.

Day 7:Cochin backwaters

Day 7 is fixed for cruising on the Cochin backwaters. Get on-board a wooden boat, traditionally known as Vallams. Explore the small islands which you will pass on the way. Observe the traditional lifestyle of the people.

You are also going to sail across the popular Chinese nets, fish farms, paddy fields and coconut groves. Another interesting activity will be bird watching where you will spot Woodpeckers, Kites, Kingfishers etc. Back to the hotel for an over night stay.

Day 8:Cochin - Mumbai-Departure

In the morning, board a flight to Mumbai. Check-into the hotel, on arrival. Later, leave for buying gifts and souvenirs from the popular markets of Mumbai. Back to the hotel for some rest. In the evening, begin your Mumbai Sidewalk Tour, relish the extremely popular chaat and street food of the city.

Go gallivanting into the mean streets of Mumbai. Tryout every single offering the sidewalk promises. Enjoy eating Bhelpuri, Vada Pav, Lucknowi kababas, North India chaats, etc. After dinner, move to the airport or railway station to board a flight or train for your onward destination.

6 Elephant Festival and Golden Triangle Tour

Duration:6 Days / 5 Nights

Destination Covered: Delhi – Agra –Jaipur

Elephant Festival and Golden Triangle Tour

Overview

Elephant Festival and Golden Triangle Tour is planned to let you explore the most popular tourist cities of India covering Delhi, Agra and Jaipur.

Visit Jaipur and attend the Elephant festival that takes place on the occasion of Holi Festival . While being at festival enjoy the beautiful-procession of decorated elephants, horses and the folk dancers.

The people seated on the back of the elephants sprinkle Gulaal at the visitors. Later proceed to explore the major tourist attractions of Jaipur including Jal Mahal, Jaigarh Fort, Central Museum and Birla Mandir.

Trip Highlights

- Visit the major tourist attractions of Delhi including India Gate, Raj Ghat, Lotus temple,
- Humayun's Tomb, Qutub Minar and the Parliament house
- Excursion to the major tourist of Agra including Agra Fort, Itrnad- ud- Dullah Tomb,

- Buland Darwaza, Panch Mahal, Itmad-ud-Daulas Tomb and the Birbal Bhawan
- Attend the world famous Elephant Festival, at Jaipur
- Sightseeing tour to the major tourist attractions of Jaipur including Jal Mahal, Jaigarh Fort, Central Museum and Birla Mandir.

Itinerary Details

Day 1: Delhi

On arriving at the Delhi airport, meet our representative who'll escort you to one of our listed hotels. Get accommodated at the hotel to relax. Overnight stay.

Day 2: Delhi

Next morning after breakfast, embark on a sightseeing tour of Delhi. The national capital is dotted with a large number of architectural masterpieces featuring history and modernity at the same time.

The major tourist attractions scheduled for the day include Birla Mandir, Qutab Minar, Red Fort, India Gate, the Jama Masjid, Humayun Tomb, and President's House. In the evening revisit Red Fort for an impressive light and sound show. Stay the night at the hotel.

Day 3: Delhi - Agra

Early in the morning drive south east to reach Agra. The Taj Mahal. On reaching Agra check-in at one of our listed hotels. After resting and relaxing for a while, proceed to a guided tour of Agra.

The tourist attractions scheduled for the day include Agra Fort, Itmad-ud-Dullah Tomb, Buland Darwaza, Panch Mahal, Taj mahal. Itmad-ud-Daula's Tomb and the Birbal Bhawan. After the visit return to the hotel for overnight stay.

Day 4: Agra - Jaipur

Post breakfast, leave for Jaipur to attend the world famous Elephant Festival. The Elephant festival takes place in Jaipur on the occasion of Holi. While being at festival enjoy the beautiful procession of decorated elephants, horses and the folk dancers.

The people seated on the back of the elephants sprinkle Gulaal on the people. During the festival the most beautifully decorated elephant is awarded with a prize. The major features of this festival include Elephant race, Elephant Polo and the Tug-of-war. Return to the hotel, for an overnight stay.

Day 5: Jaipur

In the morning after breakfast, proceed on a guided tour to Jaipur. The major tourist attractions of Jaipur include Jal Mahal, Jaigarh Fort Central Museum and Birla Mandir. Spend the evening as to your liking. Stay overnight in Jaipur.

Day 6: Jaipur

Spend the morning at leisure. Later in the day, transfer to Jaipur airport to board a flight for onward journey.

7 Surajkund Crafts Fair and Golden Triangle Tour

Duration: 7 Days | 6 Nights

Destination Covered: Delhi - Agra - Jaipur

Surajkund Crafts Fair and Golden Triangle Tour

Overview

Surajkund Crafts Fair and Golden Triangle Tour is planned to cover the most popular tourist circuit in India i.e. the Golden Triangle which includes Delhi, Agra and Jaipur. During the tour enjoy explore the Surajkund Crafts Fair, as the fair is dotted with stalls of handicrafts, jewelry and textiles.

Also enjoy performances by Indian folk musician and dancers at the ground stage in the venue. Moving further, explore the Taj Mahal for its magnificent architecture and design. In the latter leg of the journey enjoy a guided tour to the royal forts and palaces of Jaipur.

Trip Highlights

- Visit the major tourist attractions of Delhi including India Gate, Raj Ghat, Lotus temple,
- Humayun's Tomb, Qutub Minar and the Parliament house
- Attend the Surajkund crafts fair
- Sightseeing tour to major tourist attractions of Agra including Agra Fort, Dayal Bagh, Jarna Masjid, Mehtab Bagh, Chini Ka Rauza and Ram Bagh
- Explore the Taj Mahal
- Guided tour to major tourist attractions of Jaipur including Jaigarh Fort, Hawa Mahal, Jal Mahal and the Nahargarh Fort.
- Excursion to Amer Fort enjoying an elephant ride.
- Sightseeing-tour covering City Palace, Royal Observatory and -Hawa Mahal in Jaipur

Itinerary Details

Day 1: Delhi

After arrival at the Delhi airport, meet our representative who'll escort you to one of our listed hotels. Check-in at the hotel. Overnight stay.

Day 2: Delhi

On the following day after breakfast, embark on a sightseeing tour of Delhi. The major tourist attractions scheduled for the day include Red Fort, India Gate, Birla Mandir, Qutub Minar, Jama Masjid, Humayun's Tomb and the President's House. In the evening you may revisit Red Fort for an impressive light and sound show. Return to the hotel for overnight stay.

Day 3: Delhi

Next morning after breakfast, venture out for an excursion at the Surajkund crafts fair. The fair is cluttered with stalls of handicrafts, jewelry and textiles. Along with Indian artisans some craftsmen's from SAARC nations also put up their stalls. While being at the fair enjoy performances

by Indian folk musician and dancers at the ground stage in the venue. Also treat your taste buds with delicious cuisine from the various parts of India. Back to the hotel for an overnight stay.

Day 4: Delhi - Agra

Post breakfast, proceed to Agra. Upon reaching Agra, check-in at one of our listed hotels. After resting and relaxing for a while head to sightseeing tour of Agra covering Agra Fort, Itmad-ud-Daula's Tomb and Taj Mahal that has left tourist spellbound by its beauty.

The Taj Mahal was commissioned by the Mughal emperor Shah Jahan in memory of his wife Mumtaz Mahal. The mausoleum is located on the right bank of the river Yamuna at a point where it takes a sharp turn and flows eastwards. Return to the hotel in the evening for an overnight stay.

Day 5: Agra - Jaipur

Post breakfast, leave for Jaipur by road. Upon arrival check-in at one of our enlisted hotels.

Later in the day explore the major tourist attractions of the city including the Jal Mahal, Jaigarh Fort, Central Museum and Birla Mandir. Spend the evening at leisure. Overnight stay at the hotel.

Day 6: Jaipur

The next day begins with an excursion to the Amber Fort which is accompanied with the exciting joy ride on an elephant. The afternoon remains busy with the city tour featuring City Palace along with the Royal Observatory and Hawa Mahal. Enjoy overnight stay at the hotel.

Day 7: Jaipur

In the morning after breakfast, transfer to Jaipur airport to board a flight for onward Journey.

8 South India and Mamallapuram Dance Festival Tour

Duration: 6 Days / 5 Nights

Destination Covered: Chennai - Mahabalipuram - Pondicherry - Chennai

South India and Mamallapuram Dance Festival Tour

Overview

South India and Mamallapuram Dance Festival Tour is planned to let you explore some of the major temples of South India. During the tour also attend India's finest Dance Festival at Mamallapuram.

Enjoy the various dance forms ranging from Bharatanatyam, Kuchipudi, Kathak, Odissi, Mohini Attam and Kathakali against the magnificent backdrop of the Pallava rock sculptures. Also explore the major tourist attractions of Mahabalipuram including Pancha Rathas, Descent of Ganges, Varaha Cave Temple, Tiger cave and the Thirukadalmalai temple.

Trip Highlights

- Visit the major tourist attractions of Chennai covering

Fort St. George, Kapaleeshwar temple and the National Art Gallery

- Sightseeing tour to the major tourist attractions of Kanchipuram covering Kailasanthar
- temple, Ekambareshwarar temple, Vardarajanperumal temple and the Sakkiswarar temple
- Excursion to rock-cut shore temples, in Mahabalipuram
- Attend the Dance festival, at Mahabalipuram
- Guided tour to the major tourist attractions of Mahabalipuram including Pancha Rathas,
- Descent of Ganges, Varaha Cave Temple, Tiger cave and the Thirukadalmalai temple.
- Explore the major tourist attractions of Pondicherry including Aurbindo Ashram,
- Pondicherry Museum, Church of the Sacred Heart of Jesus and the Nineteenth Century Light House.

Itinerary Details

Day 1: Chennai

On reaching the Chennai airport, meet our representative who'll escort you to one of our listed hotels. Check-in at the hotel to rest in the cozy comfort of its room. In the evening take a leisurely walk to explore the nearby area of Chennai. Return to the hotel for a sumptuous dinner and a comfortable overnight stay.

Day 2: Chennai

Next morning after breakfast, embark on a sightseeing tour of Chennai. The major tourist attractions of Chennai include Fort St. George, Kapaleeshwar temple and the National Art Gallery.

Later in the day visit Vivekananda House which houses a great collection of photographs and memorabilia from the Swami Vivekananda's life, a gallery of religious historical paintings and the 'meditation room' where Vivekananda stayed. Spend the evening at leisure. Enjoy a sumptuous dinner and overnight stay at the hotel.

Day 3: Chennai - Kanchipuram - Mahabalipuram

On the following day drive to Kanchipuram. It is one of the seven sacred cities of India and was once the capital of the kingdoms of the Pallavas, Cholas and Rajas of Vijayanagar.

On reaching Kanchipuram, visit the major tourist attractions of Kanchipuram including Kailasanthar temple, Ekambareshwarar temple, Vardarajanperumal temple and the Sakkiswarar temple.

Then drive to visit Mahabalipuram. On reaching Mahabalipuram attend the Dance festival where Bharatanatyam, Kuchipudi, Kathak, Odissi, Mohini Attam and Kathakali perform against the magnificent backdrop of the Pallava rock sculptures. After the dance festival return to the hotel for dinner and overnight stay.

Day 4: Mahabalipuram

Post breakfast, embark on a sightseeing tour of

Mahabalipuram. The major tourist attractions to visit in Mahabalipuram include Pancha Rathas, Descent of Ganges, Varaha Cave Temple, Tiger cave and the Thirukadalmalai temple.

In the evening visit the VGP golden beach, an amusement park that is a popular venue for the shootings of South Indian movies.

The evening is again reserved for the dance festival. After attending the festival return to the hotel for dinner and overnight stay.

Day 5:Mahabalipurarn - Pondicherry

After breakfast, drive towards Pondicherry. Upon reaching Pondicherry, check-in at one of our listed hotels. After straightening your backs for a while, embark on a sightseeing tour of Pondicherry.

The Major, Pondicherry include Aurbindo Ashram tourist attractions of Pondicherry

Museum, Church of the Sacred Heart of Jesus and the Nineteenth Century Light House. In the evening return to the hotel for dinner and overnight stay at the hotel.

Day:6 Pondicherry - Chennai

In the morning after breakfast, transfer to Chennai airport to board a flight for onward destination.

9) Khajuraho Dance Festival with Wildlife Tour

Duration: 7 Days / 6 Nights

Destination Covered: Delhi - Kalhaturaho - Bandhavgarh - Kanha - Jabalpur - Delhi.

Khajuraho Dance Festival with Wildlife Tour

Overview

Indian Holiday brings to you Khajuraho Dance Festival with Wildlife Tour package which is a 7days/6nights package. This package makes you explore the colors of Khajuraho which is well-known for its architecturally beautiful temples and much-awaited festivals.

On one hand, where you get to enjoy the cultural dance festival, you get to see the beautiful temples, on the other. And this is not all; you get to enjoy jungle safaris at the well-known wildlife reserves of the country- Bandhavgarh and Kanha National Parks. Have a look at the detailed itinerary below for more details.

Trip Highlights

- Explore the UNESCO World Heritage Site of Khajuraho temples
- Attend classical dance performances by world-famous artists at Western group of temple during Khajuraho dance festival
- Evening jungle safari in the Bandhavgarh National Park
- Early morning safari in the Kanha National Park

Itinerary Details

Day 1:Delhi

On arrival in Delhi, meet our ihpl representatives who will help you take a transfer to the hotel. Check-in to the hotel and take some rest. Have a comfortable stay at night .

Day 2:Delhi –Khajuraho(By flight)

On reaching Khajuraho, Khajuraho is a place which houses beautiful temples of the Chandela Dynasty. The place has been recognized by UNESCO as a World Heritage Site.

Enjoy exploring this historical city by visiting Its temples like Lakshmana Temple, Lakshmi Temple, Adinath Temple and Vaman Temple. After enjoying sightseeing all day, return to the hotel for dinner. Have a stay at night in the hotel.

Day 3: Khajuraho

After having your breakfast, you leave for exploring the cultural town of Khajuraho. This day, you get to attend the star attraction of the place, the Khajuraho Dance Festival. Enjoy the -Khajuraho dance festival which is organized at the Western Group of Khajuraho temples.

Here, you will get to see some great performances by world-renowned artists of Indian classical dance forms such as Bharathanatyam, Kathak, Odissi, Manipuri, Kuchipudi and Kathakali. After enjoying the festival all day, return to the hotel.

Day 4: Bandhavgarh(250 Km/6hrs)

After breakfast, you begin driving to the Bandhavgarh National Park, the former hunting grounds of the Maharaja of Rewa, popular for housing a high density of tiger population. Once you reach, check-in at your jungle lodge.

The evening is scheduled for a safari into the park. You may spot animal species like Panther, Spotted Deer, Sambar deer, Nilgai (Blue bull), Gaur, Wild 'Boar along with around 280 species of birds. Overnight in the lodge.

Day 5: Kanha (250 kms / 6 hrs)

Have breakfast on day 5 and begin driving to Kanha National Park that inspired famous novelist Rudyard Kipling to pen down his well-known novel 'the Jungle Book'. After reaching Kanha, check-in at your jungle resort. In the evening, embark on a jungle safari.

The park is known for housing a good population of Royal Bengal Tiger, leopards, the sloth bear, Indian wild dog and Barasingha, also famous as the Pride of Kanha along with around 300 avifauna species. Do not miss viewing sunset at the Bamni Dadar point. Overnight in Kanha.

Day 6: Kanha- Jabalpur (165 kms/3 hrs)

Enjoy an early morning safari into the national park. Later, proceed to Jabalpur railway station to board a train to Delhi. On arrival, complete the check-in formalities at your hotel for an overnight stay.

Day 7:Delhi

Spend the last day of the tour at leisure- you can explore the capital city of India or can simply relax in the comfort

of your room. Post farewell dinner, get transferred to the airport to board a flight for your onward journey.

10 International Kite Festival and Golden Triangle Tour

Duration: 10 Days / 9 Nights

Destination Covered: Delhi - Agra - Jaipur - Udaipur - Ahemdabad

International Kite Festival and Golden Triangle Tour Overview

International Kite Festival and Golden Triangle Tour is planned to let you explore the major tourist cities of India. While on the tour explore Delhi the metropolitan capital of India that is dotted with large number of historic and architectural monuments.

Later attend the International Kite Festival in Jaipur and Ahemdabad and participate in the kite flying competitions wherein kite lovers from all over the world come and participate. During tour also visit the majestic fort and palaces of Jaipur and Udaipur for its beauty and charm.

Trip Highlights

- Visit the major tourist attractions of Delhi including Red Fort, Humayun's Tomb, India Gate, Raj Ghat and Qutub Minar.
- Sightseeing tour to Agra's major tourist attractions including Mehtab Bagh, Chini Ka Rauza, Ram Bagh, Dayal Bagh, Jama Masjid and the Agra Fort.
- Explore Taj Mahal
- Guided tour to the major tourist attractions of Jaipur covering Hawa Mahal, City Palace, Jal Mahal, Royal Observatory, Nahargarh Fort and the Jaigarh Fort.
- Visit the Galtaji Mandir, an important pilgrimage of Jaipur
- Enjoy International Kite flying festival in Jaipur and Ahemdabad
- Excursion to Amer Fort
- Visit the major tourist attractions of Udaipur including Bhartiya Lok Kala Mandai, Folk Art Museum, City Palace Museum, Sahelion Ki Bari and Jagdish temple
- Explore the major tourist attractions of Ahemdabad covering Sabarmati Ashram, Vastrapur Lake, Sidi Saiyyed Mosque and the Calico Museum of Textiles.

Itinerary Details

Day 1: Delhi

After arriving at the Delhi airport, meet our representative who'll escort you to one of our listed hotels. Check-in at the hotel. Overnight stay.

Day 2: Delhi

Next morning after breakfast, embark on a sightseeing tour to the splendid capital of India. The major tourist attractions of Delhi include Red Fort, Humayun's Tomb, India Gate, Raj Ghat and Qutub Minar. Later in the

day, pay a visit to the beautiful Lotus temple. Later in the evening revisit Red Fort for an impressive light and sound show.

Day 3: Delhi - Agra

Early morning drive to Agra by road. Agra located on the banks of river Yamuna, is dotted with a large number of archaeological marvels. The major tourist attractions of Agra include Mehtab Bagh, Chini Ka Rauza, Ram Bagh, Dayal Bagh, Jama Masjid and the Agra Fort. In the evening move out to visit Taj Mahal in the moonlight.

The Taj Mahal was commissioned by the great Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan in memory for his beloved wife Mumtaz Mahal. After the visit return to the hotel for overnight stay.

Day 4: Agra - Jaipur

After breakfast, drive to Jaipur- the pink city. The city was painted pink to honor the visit of Prince Albert as the Rajputs considered it a color of hospitality. On reaching Jaipur, check in at one of our listed hotels. Rest and relax for a while in the hotel room.

The major tourist attractions of Jaipur include Hawa Mahal, Jal Mahal, Royal Observatory, Nahargarh Fort and the Jaigarh Fort. After visit enjoy the Kite festival in Jaipur. During this festival enjoy the sight of colorful kites hovering over whole of Rajasthan skies. Visit the Galtaji Mandir, an important pilgrimage of Jaipur.

The festival is celebrated for three days and you may take part in kite flying competitions wherein kite lovers from all over the world come and participate. Stay overnight in the hotel.

Day 5: Jaipur

After breakfast embark on an excursion to Amer Fort riding on the back of caparisoned and painted elephant. After the visit proceed to visit the City Palace. The palace spans across the sprawling gardens and bounds large number of beautiful courtyards exemplifying the Mughal and Rajasthani architecture to the fullest. Also visit the Sukh Mandir and the Sheesh Mahal. Overnight stay.

Day 6: Jaipur - Udaipur

Post breakfast drive straight to Udaipur. Popularly known as the Venice of the East, Udaipur is a lovely city surrounded by a large number of lakes. As you reach Udaipur, get accommodated at one of our listed hotels. After straightening your backs for a while, proceed to visit the Lake Palace, featuring finest example of architectural and cultural detailing. Return to the hotel for overnight stay.

Day 7: Udaipur

Today after breakfast, proceed for a sightseeing tour of Udaipur. The major tourist attractions of Udaipur scheduled for the day include Bhartiya Lok Kala Mandai, Folk Art Museum, City Palace Museum, Sahelion Ki Bari and Jagdish temple. Later in the day visit the City Palace situated on the banks of the Pichola Lake along with the Monsoon Palace. Spend rest of the day to your liking. A comfortable overnight stay in the hotel.

Day 8: Ahemdabad

Post breakfast, head to reach Ahemdabad. Upon reaching Ahemdabad, check-in at the hotel to rest-in-the cozy comfort of its room for awhile. -Later in the day proceed to guided tour of Ahemdabad.

The major tourist attractions of Ahemdabad include Sabarmati Ashram, Vastrapur Lake, Sidi Saiyyed Mosque and the Calico Museum of Textiles. After the visit return to the hotel for overnight stay.

Day 9: Ahemdabad

Today the entire day is free for you to enjoy the kite festival at the venue of the International Kite festival. During the festival visit the Ahemdabad market where kite makers flaunt kites sized as big as 1.5km of various shapes and Designs. The best kite flyers from India and abroad take part in this splendid celebration of the art of kite flying. Overnight stay.

Day 10: Ahemdabad

In the morning after breakfast, transfer to Ahemdabad airport to board a flight for onward Journey.

11 South India

Elephant Festival

Duration: 15 Days /14 Nights

Destination Covered: Trivandrum - Kovalam - Alleppey - Periyar - Munnar - Kumarakom - Thrissur - Cochin

Elephant Festival in India

Overview

Kottayam Thirunakara Temple and Arattupuzha temple are two famous temples in Kerala, each of which plays host to an elephant festival annually. While the 10 day festival at Thirunakara Temple witnesses procession of 22 elephants on each day of the festival Arattupuzha Pooram festival is marked by a spectacular procession of 61 elephants accompanied by temple percussions.

Out two week long 'Elephant Festival in India' will make you witness the pomp, panache and elegance of these two festivals. Also included in the itinerary is the visits to Kovalam beach, Alleppey backwaters, Munnar hill station and Periyar wildlife sanctuary.

Trip Highlights

- Optional tour of Trivandrum- SreePadmanabhaswamy temple, Art Museum and Sri Chitra Art Gallery
- Enjoy backwater cruise in Alleppey
- Explore the wildlife via boat ride on the Periyar Lake
- Visit the Kumily Spice Market in Periyar
- Guided tour of Munnar- Mattupetty Dam, Dairy Farm, Old Munnar Town and Eravikulam National Park
- Optional visit for swimming, fishing and Ayurvedic massage in Kumarakom.
- See the famous Arattupuzha Pooram festival in Thrissur

- Guided tour of Cochin- Jewish Synagogue, St. Francis Church, Mattacherry Palace and Chinese Fishing Nets.

Itinerary Details

Day 1 : Trivandrum / Kovalam (Arrival)

Arrive at the Trivandrum airport in the morning followed by assisted transfer to the hotel in Kovalam. The rest of the day is free to relax on the beach. You have an option of indulging in Ayurvedic massage therapies. Stay overnight in Kovalam.

Day 2 : Kovalam/Trivandrum (optional)

The day 2 is booked for a full day excursion in and around Kovalam beach. There is also an option for a half day guided sightseeing tour of Trivandrum which include visits to the Sree Padmanabhaswamy temple, Art Museum and Sri Chitra Art Gallery. Stay overnight at Kovalam beach.

Day 3 : Kovalam / Alleppey

In the morning, hit the road to Alleppey. Upon arrival, check in at the Coir Village Resort. rest of the day is free for individual activities. Stay overnight in Alleppey.

Day 4 : Alleppey / Kumarakom (House Boat)

In the morning, board the traditional houseboat (Kettuvalam) and cruise through the palm fringed backwaters, villages and paddy fields. Stay overnight on board the houseboat.

Day 5 : Arrive Kumarakom / Periyar

Morning arrival in Kumarakom followed by check out of the houseboat. Thereafter, board coach and leave by road for Periyar. Upon arrival, check into the jungle resort. Later in afternoon, enjoy boating on the Lake Periyar and witness the exquisite wildlife. The evening is booked to explore the Kumily Spice Market. Stay overnight in Periyar.

Day 6 : Periyar/ Munnar

In the morning, leave by road for Munnar. Upon arrival, check into the hotel for overnight stay. The rest of the day is free to rest and relax. Stay in Munnar.

Day 7 : In Munnar

The day 7 is scheduled for the sightseeing tour of Munnar. The places you will visit here Mattupetty Dam, Dairy Farm, Old Munnar Town and Eravikulam National Park. Stay overnight in Munnar.

Day 8 : Munnar / Kumarakom

In the morning, leave by road for Kumarakom. Upon arrival, check into the Lake Front. The rest of the day is free to relax. Here you have an option to go for fishing arrangements will be made), swimming and rejuvenate through Ayurvedic messages. Stay overnight in Kumarakom.

Day 9 : In Kumarakom

In the morning, go out for a guided sightseeing tour of churches and nearby villages. The is free to relax and

do individual activities. In the evening, go out to explore the us Kottayam Thirunnakara Temple to see -the festival preparations. Dedicated to Lord hiva, this festival takes place in the month of March-April. Stay overnight in Kumarakom.

Day 10 : Kumarakom / Vaikom / Thrissur

In the morning, leave by road for Thrissur. On the way, enjoy a boat cruise at Vaikom and the lifestyle of locals in Kerala. You can see and learn the local art such as pottery, weaving and extraction of coconut oil. Later, enjoy a delectable traditional Kerala lunch served on a banana leaf. Post lunch, drive to Thrissur. Upon arrival, check into the hotel for overnight stay.

Day 11 : In Thrissur

The day 11 is scheduled for you to witness the Arattupuzha Pooram at Arattupuzha temple. Arattupuzha Pooram is a spectacular procession accompanied by temple percussions. A total of 61 elephants partake in this event. Stay overnight in Thrissur.

Day 12 : Thrissur- Cochin

In the morning, leave by road for Cochin breeding center. Also visit Palayoor and Kadakallu brella aristocratic households). Stay overnight in Cochin.

Day 13-14 : In Cochin

For the next two days, you will explore the popular tourist attractions in Cochin which include Jewish Synagogue, St. Francis Church, Mattacherry Palace and Chinese Fishing Nets. Being a seaport, Kochi was an important trade center for Indian spices in medieval Times. On the evening of the day 14, you will attend a fair. Stay overnight in Cochin.

Day 15 : Cochin (Departure)

Today, check out of the hotel by 12:00 Am and drive to the Cochin airport to board flight back home.

11. Rann Utsav Gujarat

Duration: 3 Days | 2 Nights

Destination Covered: Bhuj - Dhordo - Bhuj

Ram utsav Gujarat

Overview

The Rann Utsav is a cultural extravaganza, which is organized by the Gujarat Tourism .Department. This colorful festival presents forth, India in its true traditional form. 'The fair promises to make you celebrate the uniqueness of the Kutch district and experience the culture of Gujarat. Indian Holiday brings to you, Rann Utsav Tour Package that has been specifically designed to let you enjoy this vibrant festival to the fullest.

With this 3 days/2nights package, be a part of the cultural programs by folk dancers and musicians and other activities. I lave a look at the itinerary below for more details.

Rann Utsav 2014 dates are from 01 st December 2014 to 05th March 2015. The celebrations will be held across

the Kutch region with inaugural and final ceremony in Dhordo in Bhuj district of Gujarat.

Trip Highlights

- Be a part or the diverse cultural programs
- Explore the traditional form of Gujarat
- Enjoy camel rides, live musical feasts and folk dance

Itinerary Details

Day 1 : Arrival in Bhuj - Dhordo

On reaching Bhuj airport/railway station, meet our ihpl representative who will help you a transfer to the Dhordo. Dhordo is the tent city for the Utsav. Check-in to your allotted tent at the White Desert Camp. Savor lunch and then spend the rest of the day at leisure.

The different handicrafts form the star attraction of Kutch. All the handicrafts are beautifully designed and they mainly include terracotta, patchwork and embroidered items. so, you can go for some shopping at the handicraft bazaar.

In the evening, enjoy tea and snacks at the dining hall. Post dinner, you get to enjoy cultural programs which are held in the camp area. Munch your dinner and then have a comfortable overnight stay at the camp city. Dhordo.

Day 2 : In the Camp

Begin your morning with meditation and let your soul intermingle with nature. After that, some healthy breakfast. Enjoy the rest of the day, exploring the colors of the beautiful place. Step out to have a look at the ethnic stuff designed by the local artisans.

You can also take a short trip to the Indo – Park Border. In the evening, grab the opportunity to dance with the local folk dancers. Enjoy a comfortable stay at night in Dhordo.

Day 3: Depart for Bhuj

After you have break fast in the morning, bid farewell to this unique and beautiful Rann Utsav tour. Take a transfer to the Railway station / airport in Bhuj for your onward journey.

12. Gems of Madhya Pradesh Tour

Duration: 5 Days / 4 Nights

Destination Covered: Jhansi - Orchha - Khajuraho

Gems of Madhya Pradesh tour

Overview

Embark on an exploring trip around the places with historical significance. Hinduism in India has various traits and has left behind its footprints in many parts of the country.

This package, "Gems of Madhya Pradesh Tour" will take you to sites with extraordinary religious certainty. Orchha is the only place in India that does not hold Lord Ram as a God, but a king and the temples of Khajuraho exposes the erotic nature of the religion. Somewhat blasphemous, yet very interesting. The package lasts for 5 days 4 nights and is perfect for the adventures you seek to indulge in.

Trip Highlights

- Kandariya Mahadeva Temple in Khajuraho
- Lakshmana Temple in Khajuraho
- Orchha Fort Complex
- Jehangir Mahal in Orchha

Itinerary Details

Day 1 : Jhansi -Orchha

From Jhansi, you leave a ride to Orchha and here you check in at the hotel. Freshen up and you leave for local sightseeing of Orchha. The main highlight of the area is the Orchha Fort Complex, situated above an island on River Betwa and, it consists of numerous palaces.

Other places to visit are the Jehangir Mahal, Sunder Mahal, Cenotaphs, Raja Ram Temple, Laxminarayan Temple and the Phool Bagh. You return to the hotel after you are done with visiting these sites. Overnight stay at the hotel.

Day 2 : Orchha

After breakfast, you are free to 'explore the town of Orchha throughout the day. This place is historically significant and will make your tour more interesting.

Museum and art galleries of India

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- state the five famous museum of India.

India is famous for its museum that proves the rich culture of the country. Museums of India are best to explore the people, culture, beliefs and history of ancient India.

Indian tour can't be completed without its museums, museums of India are an archive India's history and government and archaeology Museums are the treasure house of ancient documents, there are so many unique museums in India, I am on my way to explore them and will present in front of the very soon.

Some of the unique museums in India are Museum of toilets, Bigfoot Cross oil museum Rail museum and India's first electricity museum etc

National Museum Delhi : National Museum is located on Janpath, new Delhi The National is the largest museum in India it holds variety of articles ranging from pre-historic era to modern works of art. The impressive building of National Museum, Museum is the houses of curious of the Indus Valley Civilisation and the Mughal era Some of the Museum in Delhi are National Rail Museum, Museum of Natural History, Nehru Museum & coaches that were once used by great maharajas.

The Prince of Wales Museum Mumbai : India's one of the best-known Museums is the Prince of Wales Museum Mumbai The Prince of Wales Museum is renamed as Chhatrapati Shivaji Maharaj Vatu Sangrahalaya. The museum has the art sculpture old firearms rare coins and a priceless collection of antiques from pre historic era Mumbai has several more museums that depict the

Day 3 : Orchha - Khajuraho

Post breakfast, you start with your drive to Khajuraho. On arrival, there, check in at the hotel. Plan for local sightseeing is fixed which covers a visit to Khajuraho's famous temples, all of them are built with intricacy and is ancient. The figurines, carved on the walls have an erotic representation of the Tantric sexual practices.

In the evening you return back to the hotel and stay over for the night.

Day 4 : Khajuraho

This day is made for you to explore the place at your own pace, there are numerous other medieval Hindu and Jain temples to visit. Besides the temples, you can visit the nearby Panna National Park.

You return back to the hotel and stay over the night.

Day 5 : Departure Khajuraho

After breakfast, you check out of the hotel. Your exploration trip comes to an end with your transfer to the given airport! railway stations.

rich art and culture in its periphery Some of the best museums in Mumbai are Jahangir Art Gallery and INS Vikrant Bhau Daji Lad Museum Earlier known as Victoria & Albert Museum is the oldest museum in Mumbai.

India Museum Calcutta : The India museum is one of the most famous museum in India and The ninth oldest regular museum of the world The Great museum included history of the building and details of art collection. Kolkata is land of Museums.

There are about seven museums in the city .it is not only famous for treasure house of monuments, Bridges & holy places but also for its museums. Kolkata is incomplete without a trips to its museums, best museum in Kolkata are Calcutta Museum also known as Kolkata panorama, Victoria, Birla Museums, shahid Minar and Nehru Children Museum. One of the famous monuments in Kolkata is Nehru children Museum.

Salar Jung Museum Hyderabad: The 7 wonders of Hyderabad include Salar Jung Museum which has an exquisite collection of priceless articles like Ivory. Marble sculptures. Salar Jung Museum is popular as largest one-man collections of the world. It is situated on the southern bank of the river mus. it is an art museum with world's largest collection of artifacts. Salar Jung Museum is among the most important attraction in Hyderabad.

The calico museum of Textiles Ahmadabad : The calico Museum of Textiles stands out for its uniqueness and antiquity of exhibits. This is one of the finest textile

museums in the world, situated in one of the most beautiful intricately wooden - carved Haveli.

The calico Textile Museum is the premier textile museum of the country and is the world's best museum on textiles. Some of more aghmedabad Atiractions are Gandhi Ashram. Sidi Bashir Mosque and Hathee Singh Jain Temple.

The government museum, Chennai

It is one of the oldest museum in India and mainly narrates human history & culture. It is the 10th oldest museum in the world. It is particularly rich in archaeological & numismatic collections. It is established in 1851.

Art galleries: The art gallery is a building for the exhibition of art, usually visual art. The art galleries sometimes used to host other artistic activities such as art, music, concerts (a) Drama. The different form of art one a) Painting b) Sculpture c) literature d) Architecture e) Cinema f) Music etc. The art galleries are operating on these 4 types.

- 1 Commercial gallery
- 2 Artistic - run initiative
- 3 Varsity gallery
- 4 Non-profit gallery

Some of the art galleries in India

National gallery of modern art	- New Delhi
Jahangir art gallery	- Mumbai
Chatrapati srivaji maharaja vastu sangrahalaya	- Mumbai
Natioanl Museum	- Delhi
Govt. Museum & art gallery	- Chandigarh
Dr. Bhan Daji lad museum	- Mumbai
National gallery of modern art	- Bengaluru
Gallery art chill	- Rajasthan
Kiran Nadar Museum of art	- New Delhi / Noida
Jawahar Kala Kendra	- Jaipur
Strings Museum of Music	- Kochi, Kerala
Aakriti art gallery	- Kolkatta / Delhi

Tourist Trains in India - Place on wheels, Heritage on wheels, Royal Orient Express, Deccan. Odyssey, fairy Queen, Metro trains & Hill trains of India

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- elaborate about heritage as wheels
- descriptive about royal orient train
- explain about deccan odyssey
- define about the fairy queen
- rapid transit in India
- inform about metro rail
- explain about monorail
- define about MRT system in India
- describe about mountain railways of India
- discuss about IRCTC Packages.

Heritage on wheels - introduction

About Heritage on Wheels II Train Itinerary II Picture Gallery II Train Booking

Heritage on Wheels will take you on a journey of lifetime giving an experience of culture, history and luxury. The itinerary of heritage on wheels has been planned to take you beyond the big cities of Rajasthan to bring you face to face with the rich heritage of Bikaner, Gajner, Nawalgarh, Mandawa and Ramgarh twice a week from Jaipur.

The aim, clearly, is to introduce tourists to the heritage of Rajasthan that remains hidden due to the more famous destinations. Moreover, the time frame of both the trains is also different with the Palace on Wheels taking eight days to complete one Journey and the Heritage on Wheels just four days. (Out to march only) by

Facilities on Board

Accommodation: Heritage on Wheels provides you with marvelous accommodation facilities. The train boasts of fourteen luxury coaches with two washrooms in each coach. The coaches are beautifully and elegantly decorated providing its guests with royal ambience and luxurious comforts.

Luggage Collection: Luggage collection is not a problem. The luggage is picked up and taken to your respective saloons by the courteous staff of the train.

Arrival Kit: On arrival the guests are provided with an arrival kit, which consists of stationery items, brochures, cards etc Besides, if you want anything else, the attendant is always available at your service.

Attendant I Khidmatgar: Facilities onboard Heritage on Wheels also includes an attendant also called the 'Khidmatgar'. The attendant is always there at your service and takes care of your travel needs.

Cuisine: With two fine restaurants, 'Maharaja and Maharani', Heritage on Wheels serves you with sumptuous delicacies to satisfy and pamper your hungry taste buds. Be it Continental, Chinese, Indian or local Rajasthan

cuisines, there is something for everyone at Heritage On-Wheels with multi water.

Security : Heritage on Wheels also provides you with adequate safety arrangements.

Toiletries : Facilities onboard also includes essential toiletries. The guests are provided with essential toiletries like soaps, shampoos, moisturizers etc. in the train.

Common Facilities : Heritage on Wheels has one well stocked bar. serving Wide array of exotic drinks to choose from.

Indoor Games : You can also enjoy various games available on board like chess ,playing cards, Chinese Checkers, Carrom Board and Crossword Puzzles etc

Mail Box : With mailbox provided on board, posting a mail to your near and dear ones is not a problem.

Medical Aid : Taking care of your health. Heritage on Wheels provides adequate medical aid to its guests. Besides, a doctor can be also being arranged during the time of emergency.

Restaurants : With two fine restaurants The Maharaja and The Maharani serving delectable delicacies, Heritage on Wheels promises its guests with an exquisite dining experience .From Continental, Chinese, Indian to local Rajasthan like cuisine you get everything to tickle your hungry taste buds.

Heritage on wheels - itinerary : Heritage on Wheels runs a twice a week from Jaipur and is a three nights and four days exotic holiday tour to enjoy Starting from the Jaipur railway station, Heritage on Wheels covers the unexplored destinations of Rajasthan like Bikaner, Gajner, Tal Chhapar, Shekhawati etc.

Day 1 : Wednesday: Tuesday / Friday

Check in at the Jaipur Railway Station on platform number 6 on day 01 of your Heritage on Wheel Tour and get greeted by the tour representative. After the ceremonial welcome in traditional style, board the luxury train and depart for Bikaner at 19.30 hrs. Dinner onboard.

Jaipur - Details

- Check in at Jaipur Railway Station Reception 18.30 hrs.
- Departure to Bikaner 19.30 hrs
- Dinner on Board 20.00 hrs

Day 2 : Wednesday / Saturday

Arrive at Bikaner on Day 02 of Heritage on Wheels Tour. After taking breakfast on the train, depart for sightseeing tour of the city and visit places like Jain temples, havelis, forts etc. In the evening depart for Gajner and after taking dinner head for Padihara.

Bikaner - Details

- Arrival at Bikaner 06.00 hrs
- Breakfast on Board 07.30 hrs
- Departure for sight seeing for Jain Temple etc 09.00 hrs
- Departure for Fort and Shopping 10.40 hrs
- Lunch on Board 13.50 hrs
- Departure for Camel Research Farm 15.30 hrs
- High Tea at Palace Hotel 16.50 hrs
- Departure for Dinner at Gajner 17.20 hrs
- Departure from Gajner 22. 00 hrs
- Departure from Padillara 23.30 hrs.

Day 3 : Thursday / Sunday

Arrive at Padihara railway station and depart for Tal Chhapar Sanctuary on arrival visit the Sanctuary and later depart for Ramgarh. On arrival at Ramgarh, tour itinerary of Palace on Wheels include sightseeing of Mehnsar. In the afternoon take lunch at the Mandawa Castle.

After lunch go on a sightseeing tour of Mandawa Havelis and Cenotaphs Depart for Nawalgarh, and on arrival go on a sightseeing tour of the place. Later arrive on board and depart for Jaipur. Dinner onboard.

Tal Chhapar and Shekhawali - Details

- Arrival at Padhiyar Railway Station 04.00 hrs.
- Departure for Tal Chhapar Sanctuary 07 15 hrs
- Arrival at Tal Chhapar and sightseeing 07.30 hrs.
- Breakfast on Board 08.45 hrs
- Departure for Ramgarh 09.10 hrs.
- Arrival at Ramgarh 11.30 hrs.
- Departure for sightseeing at Mehnsar 12.00hrs.
- Lunch at Mandawa Castle 13.30 hrs.
- Sightseeing of Mandawa 14.30 hrs
- Departure for Nawalgarh 15.30 hrs.
- Arrival at Nawalgarh and sight seeing 16.15 hrs.

- High Tea at Nawalgarh 17.30 hrs.
- Arrival on Board 19,30 hrs.
- Dinner on Board 20.00 hrs.
- Departure for Jaipur 23,00 hrs.

Day 4 : Friday / Monday

Reach Jaipur in the early hours of day 04 of Heritage on Wheels Tour, Take breakfast on board Check out latest by 08,00 hours on day 04 of tour itinerary of Palace on Wheels,

Jaipur - Details

- Arrival 06.00 hrs
- Breakfast on Board 07.00 hrs
- Check Out 08.00 hrs
- Tour Ends

Heritage on wheels - tariff and schedule

Heritage Train - Schedule

The new Meter Gauge Heritage on Wheels Train Tour starts every Tuesday and Friday of the week from Jaipur and ends in Jaipur.

- Months of Operation (October to March every year)

Heritage on Wheels Tariff (Jan to April)

Details	Tariff Per Person Per Night	
	USD	INR
Single Occupancy	300.00	12500.00
Double Occupancy	200.00	8500.00
Triple Occupancy	150.00	6500.00

Tariff is inclusive of travel catering (morning tea, breakfast lunch evening tea and dinner) conducted sightseeing ,entrance fee at monuments /parks/places/cultural programmes/camel ride /boat ride /rickshaw ride and for still cameras. Guest has to pay for video cameras, liquor, laundry and other items of personal nature

- Tariff is subject to revision. 10% surcharge Shall be levied on departure during Christmas and New Year
- Half fare for children between 5 and 12 years

Please note

- 10% Surcharge shall be levied on departure during Christmas/New Year.
- Child Half fare between 5 to 12 years of age.
- Tariff is subject to change without any prior notice.

Heritage On Wheels Tour Cost Includes:

Tariff is inclusive of

- Cost of travel and accommodation
- Catering
- Conducted sightseeing tours in Deluxe Coaches,

- Entrance fee for monuments, palaces and cultural entertainment.

Tariff does not include liquor, laundry, video cameras and items of personal use.

Information for Indian Travelers

- Indian passengers can pay in equivalent Rupee (INR) amount, at the exchange rate prevalent at the time of payment.

Cancellation Terms

Cancellation must be advised by Fax/E-mail/Letter. On cancellation, refund will be made. Certain amount of the ticket value will be deducted as follows:

- 5% of the Ticket Value if the cancellation request is received before 60 days from the scheduled date of departure.
- 20% of Ticket Value if cancellation request is received within a period of 30-59 days from the scheduled date of departure
- 50% of ticket value if cancellation request is received

within the period of 15-29 days from the scheduled date of departure

- 100% of ticket value if cancellation request is received within the period of 14 days or before the scheduled date of departure.
- No refund or adjustment will be made in the event of interruption of journey by a tourist on his/her own once he tour begins

Check in

- Reporting time is 4.00 pm at Jaipur Railway Station

Meals

The Maharaja and The Maharani- the two multi-cuisine restaurants at Heritage on Wheels serve wide variety of RaJasthani, Indian, Continental and Chinese cuisine for its guests to relish and enjoy.

Climate

- Varies from 8°C to :15°C between September to March and in April around 30 °C

Clothing recommended : Light tropical / light woolens

About Heritage on Wheels Train Itinerary Picture Gallery Train Booking			
Name :	<input type="text"/>		
Name of Tour :	<input type="text" value="Heritage on Wheels"/>		
Nationality :	<input type="text"/>		
Telephone No. :	<input type="text"/>	Fax No :	<input type="text"/>
Email :	<input type="text"/>	Pax :	<input type="text"/>
Address :	<input type="text"/>		
Arrival date :	<input type="text"/>	(M MID D/YYYY)	
Departure date :	<input type="text"/>	(MMIDD/YYYY)	
		<input type="button" value="Submit"/>	<input type="button" value="Reset"/>

Day: 01 Jaipur To Board Heritage On Wheels

- Duration : 3 Nights/4 Days
- Destination : Jaipur – Biklaner-Haat-Gajner –tal Chhappar- Ramgarh-Nawalgarh-Mandawa-jaipur
- 18:30 hrs** : Report for check-in to board the Heritage on Wheels.
- 19:30 hrs** : Departure for Bikaner on board Heritage on Wheels.
- 20:00 hrs** : Dinner and Overnight on board Heritage on Wheels.

Day: 02. Bikaner

- 06:00 hrs** : Arrival at Bikaner.
- 07:00 hrs** : Breakfast on board Heritage on Wheels.
- 08:30 hrs** : Departure for sightseeing of Fort by

air-conditioned coach.

- 11:00 hrs** : Departure for Haat all board Heritage all Wheels.
- 12:15 hrs** : Departure from Haat for Gajner.
- 13:15 hrs** : Arrival at Gajner.
- 15:45 hrs** : Lunch at Gajner and enjoy Camel Safari.
- 16:15 hrs** : Arrival at Lal Garh Palace for Tea.
- 18:30 hrs** : Arrival and Dinner on board Heritage on Wheels.
- 23:30 hrs** : Departure for Tall Chhappar on board Heritage on Wheels.

Day: 03 Tall Chhappar & Shekhawati

- 07:30 hrs** : Arrival at Tal Chhappar and sight seeing.
- 09:00 hrs** : Departure for Ramgarh on board Heritage on Wheels.

- 11:00 hrs :** Arrival at Ramgarh.
- 11:15 hrs :** Departure for sight seeing of Ramgarh.
- 11:30 hrs :** Sight seeing of Ramgarh Havelis (Mahanser).
- 12:30 hrs :** Sight seeing of Mandawa Havelis and Cenotaphs.
- 13:30 hrs :** Lunch at Mandawa Resort.
- 15:00 hrs :** Departure for Nawalgarh on board Heritage on Wheels.
- 16:00 hrs :** Arrival at Nawalgarh and sight seeing.
- 17:30 hrs :** Tea Break at Nawalgarh.
- 19:00 hrs :** Arrival on board Heritage on Wheels.
- 19:30 hrs :** Dinner on board Heritage on Wheels.
- 20:00 hrs :** Departure for Jaipur on board Heritage all Wheels.

Day: 04 Jaipur

- 06:30 hrs :** Arrive at Jaipur by Heritage on Wheels.
- 07:30 hrs :** Breakfast on board Heritage on Wheels.
- 08:30 hrs :** Disembark the Heritage on Wheels.

Royal orient train

The Royal Orient Train	
Entered service	1994-95
Operator	Indian Railways

Contents

Histry : The train started in 1994-95 as a joint venture of the Tourism Corporation of Gujarat and the Indian Railways. The livery follows a blue scheme to differentiate it from the Palace on Wheels.

In 2007, things started looking up and the train started making profits.

Facilities

There are 13 coaches in the train, named after erstwhile kingdoms of Rajputana The coaches provide five-star hotel comforts to passengers Cabins are furnished in a palatial style and have spacious baths attached .There are multi-cuisine restaurants that offer Rajasthani, Gujarati, Indian, Chinese and continental cuisine

The Royal Orient train also has a bar on board, as well as a lounge in every coach where passengers can read books and magazines, watch television, listen to music and interact with other passengers.

Other facilities include an intercom, channel music, TV, DVD system and a massage-cum-beauty parlor with facility.

Route : The Royal Orient offers a 7 -day/8-night package that covers important heritage tourist locations in Rajasthan and Gujarat The train starts from Delhi Cantonment station and has stops at Chittorcarh, Jaipur, Udaipur Ahmedabad, Mandvi, Palitana and sarkhej .

Some of the tourist spots covered are the Outub Minar- Red Fort and Jarna Masjid in Delhi, Chittorgaru Fort and Rani Padmini's palace in chittorgarh, Sabarmati Ashram in Ahmedabad . Lake Palace in Udaipur, the Gir Sanctuary in Gujarat and the Hawa Mahal and Jantar Mantar in Jaipu

Royal Orient Train amenities

The Royal Orient Express Train offers seven days of historic grandeur and regal self-indulgence with numerous luxuries of the court recreated in the saloons. The decor tinged with gold dust and an overpowering sense of antiquity.

The Royal Orient is one of the few extravaganzas left of an epoch of grandeur. Enjoy yourself in the luxury of this fascinating train, a spectacular concept in transport, an aesthetic marvel of modern times.

Day 1: Wednesday: Dep from Delhi Cantonment Railway Station, Evening tea, dinner on board.

Day 2: Thursday Arr. 0630 at Chittaurgarh Railway Station, visit Chittaurgarh Fort. Dep for Udaipur at 0915hrs. Breakfast on Board Arr.1215 at Udaipur. On arrival transfer to hotel for lunch. Post Lunch visit the City Palace, boating at lake Pichhola, Sahelion-ki-Bari (Royal Gardens), Shilpgram (Craft Village). Dep. for Junagadh. at 1830Hrs Dinner on board.

Day 3: Friday Arr. at Ahmedabad via Himmatnagar at 0400 hrs, Dep, for Junagadh at 0450 Hrs Breakfast and Lunch on Board. Arr. at Junagadh. on 1400 Hrs Visit Ashokan Rock Edict of 3rd Century B.C, Darbar Hall Museum, Mausoleum of Nawab Mahabat Khanji. Dep. for Veraval. 1600 hrs Arr. at 1800Hrs at Veraval. Visit Somnath (the famous Shiva temple on the shore of the Arabian Sea.) Dinner on Board.

Day 4: Saturday Dep for Sasan Gir at 0500 Hrs arr at Sasan Gir 0630 Visit there Lion Sacturay after early breakfast on Board. Dep For Delwada at 1130Hrs Lunch on board, Arr at Delwada 1430 Hrs visit Ahmedpur Mandvi Beach and Diu (Fort & St'Paul's Church). Dep for Palitana at 200SHrs Dinner on Board.

Day 5: Sunday Arr. Palitana , Breakfast on Board Visit 863 Jain Temples atop Shatrunjaya Hills (3572 steps can be climbed or please use the chairslings arranged for you if you so desire.) then Dep. For Sarkhej at 1230 Hrs Lunch on Board. Arr there at 1905Hrs Visit Vishalla village Dinner at hotel (From Sarkhej to Ahmedabad by Bus).

Day 6: Monday Breakfast on Board. Sightseeing of Ahmedabad (Adala) Stepwell, Gandhi Ashram, Calico Museum of Textiles, Sidi Sayyad's Mosque, Shopping etc.) Lunch at hotel. Dep for Jaipur at 1405 Hrs Evening Tea dinner on Board.

Day 7: Tuesday Arr. Jaipur at 1115Hrs breakfast on

board .. Visit of Amer Fort and an Elephant ride via Hawa Mahal. Lunch at Hotel. Visit City Palace and Jantar Mantar (Observatory) at 2130 Hrs. Dinner For Delhi on Board.

Day 8: Wednesday Arr at Delhi at 0740 Hrs. beautiful elements of traditional arts and crafts, the embroidered elaboration of the curtains, the picturesque carpets, the delicate crockery, and the liveried attendants specially trained to offer you royal service once enjoyed by King and Queens, all combined to recreate the magical aura of the bygone era.

A Mini World : However, human nature is such that while one might like to feel like a King, one would also like to dine on one's own favourite dishes and desserts, and drink one's favourite cocktail. That's why The Royal Orient Express offers an array of continental, Western and Indian ethnic cuisines to choose from, at its quaintly decorated restaurant. Its bar, aptly named "The Watering Hole" is well-stocked with all known brands of liquor, and the in-house library stocks the latest in fiction and non-fiction.

Saloon : Each saloon is named after a lost dynasty or after a historical creation of man or nature. The tourist guide on the train will be able to tell one the interesting stories behind the names of these saloons.

There are 14 air-conditioned splendidly decorated saloons and two dining cars. Each saloon has a kitchenette and four cabins. There is a well-equipped attached bathroom with hot and cold baths between the two cabins.

Cabin : Each cabin or coupe can accommodate three passengers, Generally two passengers are accommodated in each coupe, There are two attendants on call for each saloon. There is also a provision of emergency first aid kit on board.

The train manager arranges for emergency or otherwise communication requirements through phone or fax and passengers can contact him via telecom at any hour of the day.

Lounge : The lounge to be used for sitting or recreation is fitted with TV & VCR Each cabin has music channel speakers and one can listen to the music of one's choice through these music channels.

Welcome to Deccan Odyssey : Onboard facilities include Conference Saloon, Bar Lounge, Two Dining Cars, Mini Gymnasium & Spa Car, Business Centre; besides stay in luxuriously furnished air-conditioned cabins with attached bathrooms You have option to book Deluxe Cabins & Presidential Suite

Voted as one of the top ten luxury train journeys in the world, this train has proved itself time and time again with world class on board services appreciated by the guests.

The Deccan Odyssey is now operating on 10 different Pan India Train Tour Circuits

The journey: In October 2014, Deccan Odyssey Train

was re launched by Coxs & Kings to operate on 10 Different Journeys across Central & North India There are Seven Circuits of 7 Nights each; One Circuit of 4 Nights; One Circuit of 3 Nights & One Circuit of 2 Nights.

The Deccan Odyssey Train will operate from September Till May. Since this is the first season of Deccan Odyssey on 10 different journeys, some scheduled departs may not operate

Today, the Deccan Odyssey continues this legacy of princely sojourns by introducing fascinating journeys covering the length and breadth of the exotic and enchanting landscape of India'

Each journey on the Deccan Odyssey is an exploration of India's diversity, exotic locales and the discovery of timeless traditions; taking one on a flight of fancy as you experience the Vibrancy, colours, sounds and visual sensations as the train moves through varying regions and rural countryside.

Mysteries, intrigues unfold as the train snakes her way through Royal cities showcasing the opulence and extravagance of the palaces, the traditions and culinary wonders of cities and villages well protected from the sands of time.

Deccan Odyssey: Indian Odyssey (Delhi to Mumbai) – 8 Days / 7 Nights

I New Delhi –Sawai Madhopur – Agra - Jaipur – Udaipur - Vadodara – Mumbai

Indian Sojourn (delhi to Mumbai) – 8 days/7 Nights

II New Delhi- Sawai Madhopur-Jaipur-Agra-Sanchi-Aurangabad-Mumbai

Fairy Queen - The Train : The oldest working steam locomotives in the world, the Fairy Queen made its maiden journey in the year 1855 for the erstwhile East Indian Railway. And rightly so the Fairy Queen today holds the Guinness World Record for being the locomotive in regular operation.

In July 1997, the Indian Railway restarted its operation as a heritage train from Delhi to Alwar and from there the tourists are taken to world famous Sariska Wildlife Sanctuary. It operates on the 2nd and the 4th Saturday of the months of October to March.

The Fairy Queen has only one AC chair car coach, which can accommodate a maximum of 50 tourists. There is also an attached pantry car to provide on board catering services to its privileged passengers.

As an added attraction, the coach has a beautiful lounge in the front, which provides a scenic sight of the countryside. For your enjoyment numerous cultural programs are organized on the evening of the first day at the Hotel Sariska Palace.

The destinations covered by the train are Delhi, Alwar and the famous Tiger Reserve in Sariska. The two-day and one-night package is a beautiful gift for all wildlife lovers and definitely worth enjoying at least once in your lifetime.

Deccan Odyssey 2014-15 Season Tour Circuits

Journey Name	Duration	From/To	Covers
Indian Odyssey	7 Night/8 Days	NewDelhi/Mumbai	Ranthambhore-Agra-Jaipur-Jodhpur-Udaipur-Vadodara »More
Hidden Treasures of Gujarat	7 Night/8 Days	Mumbai/ New Delhi	Vadodara - Palitana - Sasan Gir - Kutch - Patan AhmeGiabad»More
Maharashtra splendour	7 Night/ 8 Days	Mumbai/Mumbai	Ellora Canves - Aurangabad –Tadoba-Ajanta caves- Nashik - Kolhapur - Goa»More
Jewels of the Deccan	7 Night/ 8 Days	Mumbai/Mumbai	Bijapur - Pattadakal - Badami - HampiHyderabad»More
Maharashtra Wild Trail	7 Night/ 8 Days	Mumbai/Mumbai	Ajanta Caves-Pench National Park, Nagpur-Tadoba- Aurangabad – Ellora caves>> More
Indian Sojourn	7 Night/ 8 Days	NewDelhi /Mumbai	Ranthambhore – jaipur – Agra – sanchi – Ajanta caves – Aurangabad – Ellora Caves>>More.
Indian soiree	7 Night/8 Days	Mumbai/New Delhi	Ajanta caves –sanchi –Ranthambhore – jaipur-Bharatpur –Agra >>More
Spiritual sahyadri	4Night/5 Days	Mumbai/Mumbai	Nashik - shirdi»More
Golden Treasure	3 Night/ 4 Days	NewDelhi /Mumbai	Agra- Ranthanambhore>>More
Soul Quest	2 Night/3 Days	Mumbai/Mumbai	shirdi»More

Facilities: The privileged 50 passengers of the Fairy Queen also enjoy the facility of jeep safari to explore the Sariska Wildlife Sanctuary and for tracking the king of jungles, the tiger.

Coaches: The Fairy Queen has only two coaches attached to it. One, a specially designed air-conditioned car with fifty conformable seats on which guests can recline and enjoy the ride from Delhi to Alwar and back. Besides there is a well maintained pantry car for on board catering.

The additional attraction on the train is the lounge in the front of the passenger coach. Its large window offers a beautiful view of the Fairy Queen engine as it puffs away and steams across the countryside of Rajasthan on its way to Alwar.

The journey on the Fairy Queen luxury train is a day journey and there is no overnight stay on the train. Passengers stay overnight at the Sariska Palace Hotel. For your enjoyment numerous cultural programs are organized on the evening of the first day at the Hotel Sariska Palace.

Award : The Fairy Queen spent the next 34 years on a pedestal outside Howrah station. In 1943, the locomotive was moved to the Railway Zonal Training School at Chandausi, in Uttar Pradesh, where it served as a curiosity object for many of the students based there.'

History and Specifications : The Fairy Queen was built by Kitson, Thompson and Hewitson at Leeds in England in 1855. The coal-fired engine is powered by two outside cylinders measuring 12 by 22 inches (300 mm x 560 mm), and has a power output of 130 horsepower (97 kW), producing a maximum speed of 40 kilometres per hour (25 mph). It carries 3,000 litres (660 imp gal) of water in an underslung water tank.

The locomotive weighs 26 tonnes (26 L T), and the goal tender 2 tonnes (2.0 L T). Built for the 5 ft 6 in (1,676 mm) Indian gauge, it has a 2-2-2 wheel arrangement, developed by Robert Stephenson and Company in 1833, with a driving wheel measuring 1,800 millimetres (71 in) in diameter.

Fairy Queen (locomotive)

Fairy Queen Type and origin	
Power type	Steam
Builder	Kitson, thompson and Hewitson
Serial number	481
Build date	1855
Specifications	
configuration	2-2-2 T
UIC classification	1A1 n2t
Gauge	5 ft 6 in (1676mm)
Driver diameter	72 inches (1,800mm)
Locomotive weight	26 tonnes(26LT)
Tender weight	2 tonnes(2.0 LT)
Water capacity	3,000 litres (660 imp gal)
cylinders	2
Cylinder size	12 by 22 inches (300 mmX 560mm)

Performance figures	
Maximum speed	40 kilometres per hour (25 mph)
Power output	130 horsepower(97 kw)
Career	
Operator(s)	East Indian Railway Company
Number(s)	22
Retired	1909
Restored	18 July 1997
Disposition	Operating from New Delhi, Delhi to alwar, Rajasthan

Restoration : The Indian government bestowed heritage status on the Fairy Queen in 1972, rendering it a national treasure. It was restored and given a special spot in the newly built National Rail Museum at Chanakyapuri, in New Delhi .

The train received a National Tourism Award for the most innovative and unique tourism project from AtalBihari Vajpayee, the Prime Minister of India

Rapid transit in India : Rapid transit in India consists of bus, metro, monorail and light rail systems. The first rapid transit system in India was the Kolkata metro, which started operations in 1984.

The Delhi metro was India's first modern metro and the third rapid transit system In India overall, after the Kolkata Metro and Chennai Mass Rapid Transit System (Chennai MRTS), beginning operations in 2002 Rapid Metro Rail Gurgaon, which started operations in November: 2013, is India's first privately owned and operated metro!! The which opened on 7 February 2014 is the first monorail in India, since the closing of the Patiala State Monorail Train ways in 1927.

In 2009, it was decided to invest Rs2000 billion (US\$314 billion) on metro rail projects in the following ten years. It IS planned that all Indian cities having population more than 2 million will have metro rail system. Currently, rapid transit systems operate in 15 cities and more are under construction or in planning in several cities of India.

Bus Rapid Transit system : Bus Rapid Transit System (BRTS) is a rapid transit for city bus service in India. The following table shows BRTS in India along with details.

Metro Rail-25 : Metro rail lines in India are composed of both of standard gauge and broad gauge. Projects like Delhi metro used broad gauge for their earliest lines but new projects in india are on standard gauge as rolling stock imported from Europe is on standard gauge.

One exception is the Ahmedabad Metro, which will use broad gauge, as there is more space available inside the coach. In the long term using broad gauge may also allow for freight movement of containers from the Indian railway network on the metro train network and increased the capacity within train cars. Although metro supposed

to be mass rapid transit system.

Indian metro rains are slower than their counter parts in other parts of the world. as they are mostly overground and have sharp curves. For example Bangalore Metro has a maximum speed of 40.5 km/h on curves with average speed of 30 km/h and Hyderabad metro will have average speed of 25 km/h.

- 1 In operation number of lines currently operating. Line is consider to be operating if services are running on at least one section.
- 2 Planned lines that are planned to be built but construction has not yet started.
- 3 Under construction number of lines are currently under construction. Does not include lines that are :In Operation" 4 N/A =Information not available . <http://www.news18.com/news/uttar-pradesh/agra-metro-rail-project-may-become-a-reality-soon-569095.html>

Monorail: The first monorail in India was the kundala Valley Vailway in Kundala valley near Munnar, Kerala. It was privately owned railway system that operated from 1902-1908.

That year the system was converted to a narrow gauge railway which operated till 1924, when it was destroyed completely by floods .The Patiala State Monorail railways which operated in February 1907 and closed in 1927 was the second monorail system in India.

Bus rapid transits system : Their main feature of the bus rapid transits saptan are dedicated. Bus lanes which operates separately from other road traffic modes. It has facilities like collects fairs on OH board, platform level boarding's, quality station with fast, comfortable and cost effective services makes delay less operation

Mumbai Monorail which opened in 2 nd February 2014 is the first operational monorail in India. Since the closing of the Patiala State Monorail Railways in 1927 many other Indian cities have monorail projects as the feeder system to the metro different phase of planning..

Legislation: Main articles. The Metro Railways Act, 1978 and Metro Railway Act, 2002

Initially, state governments attempted to implement metro rail projects through various Train ways Act However, the Commissioner of Railways Safety (CRS), who operates under the Ministry of Civil Aviation, is tasked with providing safety certification for metro rail projects The CRS refused safety certification unless the projects were implemented under a Metro Act enacted by the state government and published in The Gazette of India.

"The Metro Railways (Amendment) Act, 2009" .The amendment expanded the coverage of both the acts to all metropolitan areas of India.

According to Ministry of Urban Development (India) ""Since the Metro rail is a central subject, it has been decided that all such projects in the country, whether within one municipal area or beyond, shall be taken up under the Central Metro Acts"

BRTS

System	city	start of operation	system lines	system length (km)	stations
Ahmedabad	Ahmedabad	14 October 2009	12	75	126
Delhi BRTS	Delhi	2008	7	115.5	
Indopre BRTS	Indore	2013	10	126-46	N/A
Jaipur BRTS	Jaipur	July 2010	2		
Pune BRTS	Pune	December 2006	2	16.5	
Rajkot BRTS	Rajkot	1 October 2012	1	63	19
Surat	Surat	26 January 2014	2	29.9	50
Vijayawadfa BRTS	Vijayawada	2011			
Bhopal BRTS	Bhopal		10	186	230
Bhubaneshwar BRTS	Bhuvaneshwar	2015	2	66.32	180
Hubli DFharwad BRTS	Hubli Dharwad	2014	2	70	33
kolkata BRTS	kolkata		1	15.5	
Mumbai BRTS	Mumbai	2014	1	11.7	
Pimpri chinchwad BRTS	Pimpri chinchwad		4	112	
Visakapatnam BRTS	Visakapatnum			42	
Bangalore BRTS	Bangalore		14	282	
Chennai BRTS	Chennai		1	70.3	21
Coimbatore BRTS	Coimbatore		1	27.6	
Hydrabad BRTS	Hydrabad		2	39	
Luchnow BRTS	Lucknow				
Madurai BRTS	Madurai		2		
Mysore BRTS	Mysore				
Nagpur BRTS	Nagpur				
Thiruchirapalli BRTS	Thiruchirapalli		2	24	

Meter Rail

City	system	Start of operation	System length			No of Lines			Voltage	Notes
			IO1	P2	UC3	IO1	P2	UC3		
Kolkata in India	Kolkata metro	24 Oct 1984	28.4 km		90 km	1	14	5	750 VDC	First mass rapid transit 3 rd rail system and the 17 th zone of Indian railway
Chennai	Chennai MRTS	1 Nov 1995	19.34 km			1			25 kv AC	It is planned by the MRTS to be taken over by the Chennai metro rail limited once the Chennai Metro becomes operational
Delhi	D e l h i metro	24 Dec 2002	192.7 km	440	349.27	6		2	25 kv AC	India's first modern rapid transit system
Banga-lore	Namma metro	20 Oct 2011	16.6 km	114.39	42.3 km	2	2		750V DC 3rd	First metro in India to rail introduce Wi-Fi bottom onboard trains contact
Guru-gaon	Rapid Metro-rail Gur-gaon	14 Nov 2013	5.1 km			1		1	N/A	India's first fully privately financed metro, and the first metro system in the country to action naming rights for its stations.
Mumbai	Mumbai metro	8 June 2014	11.40 km	105.5 km			1	3	25 kv AC	The largest number underground stations (86 spanning 3 planed lines) in any metro systems in India.
Jaipur	J a i p u r metro	Mar 2015		32.5 km			2	1	N/A	
Chennai	Chennai metro	Mar 2015		54.15 km					2 AC	25 kv
Hyder-abad	Hyder-a b a d metro	Mar 2015		71.6km				3	N/A	
Kochi	K o c h i metro	2017		25.6 km			1	750V		Kochi is the first Tier II city in India to be granted metro under the central government's plan to allow cities having population more than 20 lakhs to have a metro rail system.
L u c -know	L u c -k n o w metro	2017		36km					25 KV	

Ahmedabad & Gandhinagar	Metro-link Express Gandhinagar & Ahmedabad (MEGA)	2018		83km				5	N/A	
Nagpur	Nagpur Metro									
Kanpur	Kanpur Metro	2021		34km				3	N/A	

Meter Rail

City	system	Operation began	system length (km)	lines	stations	Notes
Munnar	kundata valley railway	1902-1908	5 km	1		
Patiala	Patiala state monorail train ways	1907-1927	80 km	1		
Mumbai	Mumbai	2 February	8.26 km	1	7	
Chennai	Chennai Monorail	2018	57km	3	37	centre approved Chennai monorail project to be implemented under DBFOT model
Allahabad	Allahabad monorail		70.4 km	2		
Bangalore	Bangalore Monorail		60km			
Coimbatore	Coimbatore Monorail			2		
Delhi	Delhi Monorail		90km	6		
Indore	Indore Monorail					
Kanpur	Kanpur Monorail		63 km	3		
Kolkata	Kolkata Monorail		72 km	2		
Navi Mumbai	Navi Mumbai Monorail		36.82 km	2		
Patna	Patna Monorail		32 km	4		
Pune	Pune Monorail		52 km	2		
Ahmedabad	Ahmedabad Metrorail		30 km	4		

Light rail

The systems that are currently under construction.

system	city	Opening Year	system length (km)	No of lines
Delhi Light Rail Transit	Delhi		45	3
Kolkata LRTS	Kolkata			2
Kozhikode Light Metro	Kozhikode	2016	14.5 km	1
Pune LRTS	Pune			2
Thiruvananthapuram light Metro	Thiruvananthapuram	2016	41.8 km	1

Metro coach factories in India

Bangalore : BEML manufactures Rolling Stock for Delhi Metro and Namma Metro in a consortium with Hyundai Rotem BEML has supplied more than 200 coaches to DMRC and has an order of 150 coaches from Bangalore Metro Jaipur Metro has also ordered to manufacture, supply, test and commission 10 train sets of four-car each, to tallying 40 cars to Jaipur Metro Project BEML is one of the leading , manufacturer of Rail and Metro coaches, Metro Systems using/will be using BEML Rolling Stocks are:

- Deihl Metro - 200 coaches
- Namma Metro - 150 coaches
- Jaipur Metro, 40 coaches
- Hyderabad Metro - 171 coaches

MRT System in India : India is well on its way to create a world-class MRT system as an integral part of community infrastructure development in the country, reports Ar. Apurva Bose Dutta.

Growing cities, growing population and growing traffic has invariably called for a shift from private modes of conveyance to public transport. A glance at the world's developing nations indicates that well planned Mass Rapid Transit Systems (MRTS) exist successfully.

India (like many other developing countries) however has lagged behind though its first metro, the Kolkata Metro, started working almost 25 years ago. India is looking to create a world class infrastructure with its existent Kolkata and Delhi Metros with the addition of Mumbai, Bengaluru, Hyderabad, Chennai, Jaipur, and Kochi metros in the next few years while proposals for MRTS for Pune, Chandigarh, Ahmedabad, Kanpur, Ludhiana, Bhopal, Indore and Faridabad are being chalked out.

Key Considerations for MRTS: A metro model for a county would have to depend on its logistics, financial resources and should avoid aping a western modern blindly, rather should concentrate on learning from its shortcomings.

Ar. Jit Kumar Gupta, renowned urban planner states that the planning, construction, designing and management of metros require extensive data, detailed surveys, study of economic structure, profile of settlement topography, travel preference, major traffic corridors etc.

He recommends the use of technology that is available within the country or that can be developed since ultimately the system needs to be made self-reliant and self-contained to minimise O&M (operations & maintenance) cost.

Cost Factors : Metro projects are meant to cater to cities with more than four million population and the costs in these cases are related to areas which are proposed to serve underground, elevated or at grade alignment. Larger the underground and elevated proposal, larger shall be the cost involved.

Funding process is done through the PPP model (Public-Private Partnership) as in Hyderabad and Mumbai or by DMRC model by the state or the central government as in Bengaluru, Chennai and Kolkata. Mr Reddy is of the opinion that the correct funding process is the PPP model.

He adds, "Generally PPP model is also not financially viable because we can't get all the money from fair box collection. Hence in 1991, the concept of LPG (Liberalisation, Privatisation and Globalisation) was introduced which is an encouragement for private investors like infrastructure developers.

Under this, the viability gap funding scheme caters to 60% cost borne by the private investor and upto 40% borne by the government in terms of grants. The Hyderabad Metro is the first metro to be on PPP mode. Though Mumbai is also on the PPP mode but they haven't taken the viability gap fund."

Ar Gupta metros states, "Metros are known to serve the old, congested and thickly built up areas where normal traffic poses greatest challenges due to location of major commercial markets, traffic nodes and residential areas. They are known to provide travel at a very affordable cost."

The Advantages And Disadvantages

A cheap mode of transport, the MRTS helps in low energy consumption, is eco-friendly (runs on electricity, thus minimising air and sound pollution), averts the number of accidents, is efficient in terms of space occupancy and provides comfort with ultra modern coaches and modern systems like automatic ticketing, advanced signalling systems, automatic train protection system and integrated security systems.

The international standard for MRTS with a maximum speed of 80kmph and average speed of around kmph helps in saving of time. Adds Ar Gupta, "With proper designing, the peak hour capacity could be rated at 3-4 lakhs passengers per hour."

Mr Reddy points out that the only disadvantage of metros is the slight congestion on roads at the time of construction.

MRTS in the Country

Kolkata Metro : The only metro service in the country functioning directly under the Indian Railways, the foundation for this was laid as early as 1972. After which progressive construction followed leading to the completion of the services of the entire stretch in 2005.

Kolkata faced a transport problem with only 8% of the land being available for road transport (negligible as compared to the 25%-30% available in other cities) thus diminishing scope for increasing the existing road area.

Thus an underground route was envisaged with five rapid transit lines comprising a route length of 97.5 km. While the phase 1 of the North South (NS) axis commenced its services in 1995 Phase 2 and Phase 3 were recently opened in 2009 and 2010 respectively.

The metro has been quite a hit with the residents in Kolkata considering the number of passengers which has expansively increased in the past years.

Large scale expansion projects (covering 87 kms) have now been planned and in its modernisation programme, the existing metro stations would undergo renovation and introduce State-of-the-Art

Automatic Fare Collection, Passenger Control system with Radio Frequency Identification based Flap Gates, Integrated Security System, new air-conditioned rakes and Automatic Signalling system.

Delhi Metro : The Delhi Metro Rail Corporation (DMRC) was established to build a metro in two phases serving Delhi, Gurgaon, Noida and Ghaziabad. While the first phase covering 65.11km was opened in 2002 the second phase of 125km was recently completed.

The first railway project in the world to be registered for carbon credits by the United Nations, the Delhi Metro achieved this by saving power by using regenerative brakes in the trains, and reduced carbon emissions.

The Metro has been designed such that it can be integrated with other public transport. DMRC has also partnered with Google India (through Google Transit) to provide train schedule and route information to mobile devices with Google Maps.

The popular Delhi Airport Metro Express rail from the Indira Gandhi International Airport to the city centre takes less than 20 minutes as opposed to one hour by road. Its LCD screens equipped coaches imported from Spain are entirely different from the trains on this line and have in-built noise reduction features, padded fabric seats and provide flight information for convenience of air travellers.

The trains are fitted with an event recorder which can withstand high levels of temperature and impact. The metro has been promoted as an integral part of community infrastructure, and community artwork depicting the local way of life at the stations in the form of decorative murals, panels and a gallery showcasing artwork and handicrafts from across India.

The Delhi Metro though plagued by controversies in the form of technical snags, overcrowding and accidents at the construction sites has proved as a model for the other metros in the country to follow.

Phases 3 and 4 will expand the total journey to 413.8km and are scheduled to open in shortly. With such a great pace of work, the Delhi metro will soon become one of the fastest expanding metro networks in the world.

Mumbai Metro : Mumbai's existing Suburban Railway and BEST bus system have not been able to compete with the rapid population growth. The Mumbai MRTS is going to see a completion of the first phase {a partnership between Mumbai Metro politan Region Development Authority (MMRDA) and Reliance Infrastructure and Veolia Transport (France) in 2012 and will entail a 12 km elevated metro with 12 stations enroute. Mumbai Metro One Private Limited is a Special Purpose Vehicle (SPV) to implement this corridor"

While the Suburban Railways provide a NS connect, this corridor will provide the relief in the East West (EW) connectivity, covering the journey in 21 minutes. Phase 2 and Phase 3 would be totalling to a length of 146 km. Plans are on for a nine-line network by 2021 in its three phases of development costing Rs.36,000 crore.

Skywalks have also been provided to connect the metro and suburban railways stations. The air conditioned coaches that are being imported from China with a 1500 accommodation capacity each, will feature an advanced passenger-driver communication system.

Right from the construction stage, initiatives have been on to make the Mumbai Metro Asia's first green metro. In order to get the best hands on experience, a number of executives were recently sent to China and South Korea to gain some hands-on experience in managing a metro system.

Bangaluru Metro : Though a MRTS has been in consideration for long in the Garden City, the foundation stone was finally laid in 2006. Being operated by the Bangalore Metro Rail Corporation Limited (BMRCL), a detailed project report of two double line corridors with a total length of 33 km (elevated and underground) with 32 stations has been prepared by DMRC and RITES, the general consultants for the project: EW and NS corridors as part of Phase I of the project which is estimated to complete by 2011. The travel time from end to end on the EW corridor will be 33 minutes, and on the NS corridor will be 28 minutes.

Though at present 43 stations are being constructed which get completed by 2015 but the DBR (Design Basis report) issued by BMRCL shows an approval for

162 stations which means that in future. Bangalore metro it was declared open on 20-10-2011 with 6.7 km stretch the speed is 80 KMPH/Ave 30KM. With 40 stations (33 elevated & 7 order growth). Total travel time in our 33/44 minutes.

Chennai Metro : Chennai has already a well established suburban railway network; however with no connectivity to and South Chennai, a MRTS was planned. The Chennai MRTS being an elevated line of the urban mass transit system was completed in 2007 and was designed as an elevated extension of the Suburban Network.

It was not exactly a Metro System since the trains were normal EMU's (Electric Multiple Units) without automatic doors. Due to poor maintenance, lack of security and no connectivity options with other transit systems, the MRTS has been quite unpopular leading to a lower ridership,

The developers, Chennai Metro Rail Limited (CMRL) have appointed DMRC as the Prime Consultant for Phase 1 of the project. The Chennai Metro seems the most expensive considering the rising and dropping costs over the years,

The MRTS operated by the Southern Railway is proposed to be taken over by CMRL so as to bring all the elevated and underground tracks under one organisation, Chennai metro rail system - It is a rapid transit system serving Chennai city. It is supposed to be the 3rd longest system in India.

It commands on 29-06-2015 with a track length of 86.5 mtr (284 ft). there are 42 station with two lines. It has 52 vehicles and the top speed is our 80 Km/H. The system has a mixture of under ground and elevated. Station and has standard gauge.

Hyderabad Metro : Spanning over 71km, the phase 1 would include three traffic corridors covering a total of 72 km and 66 stations. A completely elevated system, the detailed project reports and traffic survey reports are being prepared by DMRC.

Designed to cater to 50,000 people in one hour in one direction for Corridors I and III and 35,000 for Corridor II, the cost of the project is Rs.12,132 crores. Hyderabad Metro Rail Ltd (HMR) is the SPV set to look after the project which has been allotted to L&T in PPP mode.

The travel time for the metro rail is 45 minutes for Corridor 1, 22 minutes for Corridor II and 39 minutes for Corridor III. The metro stations are being designed keeping the local architecture in mind.

The Metro that will rest on massive concrete pillars along the central median of the roads will prove a boon for the city's MMTS (Multi-modal Transport System) which is collapsing under the burgeoning population and has slower speed.

It is also being hoped that the enormous material requirement of the metro will result in establishment of many ancillary industries and machinery manufacturing and servicing units.

Hyderabad metro: It is the second longest metro service after Delhi. It was inaugurated on 28th Nov 2017. It has 3

lines and 57 stations with standard gauge. It is average speed in our 35 Km/h with high speed of 80 KM/h. The track length is our 67 KM. It is mainly by L&T metro Govt of telugana.

The Future : Conclusively, transport needs to be made an integral part of urban design/master plan of the city as it cannot be delineated to a separate entity, A multi-modal transportation system would ensure the use of MRTS to its best potential The uncertainty about MRTS, which has plagued the importance of such system in India seems to be resolving.

Though the kolkata metro was designed without international norms but now India has a set of rules being adopted for metro constructions. The National Mass Transit and Training Research Institute (NMTTRI) in Mumbai (established by MMRDA), is one of its kinds In Asia imparting training and research on mass transit systems.

The Metro Rail Asia - Asia's premier rail event (with a special focus on India) proves to be a high-value networking and knowledge-sharing of key metro authorities and operators with discussions over India's extensive metro growth.

Mountain Railways of India

Mountain railways of India are the six or seven odd "chhotey" (Hindi for small) lines, out of around 20 similar such narrow or metre gauge remaining in operation around the world Built during the nineteenth and early twentieth century of British colonial rule (the Rail), these lines have been running since then, Today the Indian Railways runs them, along with the Kashmir Railway, operational since 2005 While four of these seven the Darjeeling Himalayan Railway (1881), the Kalka-Shimla Railway (1898), the Kangra Valley Railway (1924), and the Kashmir Railway (2005), are in the rugged hill regions of the Himalayas of Northern India, two are further down south in the Western Ghats the Nilgiri Mountain Railway in Tamil nadu and the Matheran Hill Railway in Maharashtra.

While the Lumding -Silchar line built at the turn of the 20th century lies deep inside Assam in the Barak river valley of the Cachar Hills. The Darjeeling Himalayan Railway, the Nilgiri Mountain Railway and the Kalka-Shimla Railway have collectively been designated as a UNESCO world Heritage Site.

History: The British, in a proposal termed simply as 'Hill Railway', considered establishing geographically and culturally rich, stations across the country. The hill stations chosen for this purpose were Shimla, the then 'summer capital' of British India; Darjeeling, known for its tea gardens and scenic views of the eastern Himalayas in the state of West Bengal, the Kangra Valley in Himachal Pradesh, Ootacamund in the Nilgiri mountains of Tamil Nadu and the Matheran hill station in the Western Ghats near Mumbai were considered .

The pioneering effort to link the mountainous terrain of enchanting beauty with a hill passenger railway

commenced in 1878 with the building of the Darjeeling Himalayan Railway line, when Franklin Prestage of the then Eastern Bengal Railway initiated plans for the building of a hill tramway along the alignment of the Hill Cart Road from Siliguri to Darjeeling. Construction subsequently began and in 1881 the line was commissioned up to Darjeeling.

The next project launched was of the Nilgiri Mountain Railway in TamilNadu, initially proposed in 1854. Work started in 1894, but the railway was not completed until 1908, as the terrain was very difficult, given the big difference in altitude ranging between 326 meters (1,070 ft) and 2,203 meters (7,228 ft) over a distance of 46 kilometers (29 mi). The building of the 96 kilometers (60 mi) Kalka-Shimla railway link commenced in 1898 to open up the remote hill regions to the rest of the country and was inaugurated by the then Viceroy, Lord Curzon, in November 1903. The Matheran-Neral 'toy train' was

commissioned in 1907. Matheran is a hill station 108 kilometers (67 mi) away from Mumbai. The Kangra line was built in 1929 in the picturesque Kangra valley.

The UNESCO's 'World Heritage site' recognition to three of the mountain railways of India has been for "outstanding examples of bold, ingenious engineering solutions for the problem of establishing an effective rail link through a rugged, mountainous terrain". The Darjeeling Himalayan Railway got it first in 1999, the Nilgiri Mountain Railway followed suit in 2005, and the Kalka-Shimla Railway, in 2008. The three together have been titled as 'Mountain Railways of India' under Criteria ii, iv under the region in the Asia-Pacific. The claims of the Matheran Railway, the fourth hill line, is pending acceptance by rail international body.

(Tilted mountain railway systems in India include)

Name	Length km	Length mm	Constructed	Type	Gauge
Darjeeling Himalayan Railway	88	55	1881	Narrow gauge	2 ft(610mm)
Nilgiri Mountain Railway (in)	46	29	1908	Metro Gauge	1,000mm(3 ft 3/8)
Kalka-Shimla railway	96	60	1903	Narrow Gauge	2ft 6 in(762 mm)
Matheran Hill railway	20	12	1907	Narrow gauge	2ft(610 mm)
Kangra Valley Railway	164	102	1929	Narrow gauge	2ft 6 in(762 m)
Total	414	252			

Darjeeling Himalayan Railway

The Darjeeling Himalayan Railway (DHR), given the epithet, the "Toy Train", is a 610 mm (2 ft) narrow gauge railway that runs for 88 kilometers (55 mi) from Siliguri to Darjeeling in the Indian state of West Bengal, operated by the Indian Railways.

Highly regarded in India to this day, the railway line was built by the British Government. Darjeeling was a major summer hill station and the centre of a flourishing tea-growing district. The elevation level along this line starting with about 100 meters (330 ft) at Siliguri rose to about 2,200 meters (7,200 ft) at Darjeeling but attained highest elevation at Ghoom station of 2,300 meters (7,500 ft).

The railway line underwent several improvements over the years to ease the gradient of the line for convenience of manoeuvrability. By 1909-1910, Darjeeling Himalayan Railway was carrying 174,000 passengers and 47,000 tones of goods annually.

In 1999, this mountain line in India was the first to be recognized by the UNESCO and inscribed on the World Heritage List. An assurance recorded was that apart from creating a buffer zone under the declared heritage site, the steam trains would be retained within the site.

Another feature along this line is the pithy signages located at key vantage points along the route which proclaim to the passengers travelling by the train, and creates excitement to explore the locations, such as the 'Agony Point', the 'Sensation Corner' and so forth. The loop points or spirals constructed on precipitous hills are also view points, which provide spectacular views of the valley down below.

Nilgiri Mountain Railway

Nilgiri Mountain Railway between Mettupalayam and Ootacamund

The only rack and pinion rack system in India

Main article: Nilgiri Mountain Railway

The Nilgiri Mountain Railway is a single track, 46 kilometers (29 mi) long metre gauge single line. Coonoor was initially the final hill station on the line in June 1899 but this was extended up to Udagamandalam by October 15, 1908.

It now connects the town of Mettupalayam with the hill station of Udagamandalam (Ootacamund), in the Nilgiri hills, popularly known as the 'Blue Mountains' of Southern India. Both towns are in the state of Tamil Nadu. The only

rack railway in India, it uses the alternate biting system (Abt) commonly termed as 'rack and pinion' rail system and is operated with special locomotives.

Two distinct functions - 1st that of traction by adhesion as in an ordinary loco; 2nd that of traction by pinions acting on the track bars. The brakes are four in number - two handbrakes, acting by friction; and two acting by preventing the free escape of air from cylinder and thus using compressed air in retarding the progress of the engine.

The former are used for shunting whilst the later for descending steep gradients. One of the handbrakes acts on the tyres of the wheels in the ordinary manner and the second acts on grooved surfaces of the pinion axle, but can be used in those places where the rack is laid.

The trains that run on this line cover a distance of 46 kilometers (29 mi), travel through 208 curves, 16 tunnels, and 250 bridges. The uphill journey takes around 290 minutes (4.8 hours), and the downhill Journey takes 215 minutes (3.6 hours).

The Nilgiri Mountain Railway was inscribed as World Heritage Site by UNESCO in July 2005. Steam locomotives are used in this section Beyond Coonoor, up to the last station at Ooty or Ootacamund, the track has a ruling gradient of 1:23.

Kalka -Shimla Railway

Main article: Kalka-Shimla Railway

Shivalik Deluxe Express in Taradevi Station.

A typical passenger train on one of the line's big bridges

Shimla, the modern capital city of Himachal Pradesh, is located at 7,234 feet (2,205 m), in the foothills of the Himalayas.

The railway line was constructed by the Delhi-Ambala-Kalka Railway Company commencing in 1898 in the Siwalik Hills ranges. However, the contract to build this line was finally awarded to Delhi-Ambala-Kalka Railway Company. The 95.66 kilometers (59.44 mi) long, 2 ft 6 in (762 mm) narrow gauge line was opened for traffic on November 9, 1903.

The line has 103 tunnels and 864 bridges (multi-arched gallery type, like the Roman aqueducts), except for one bridge of 18.29 meters (60.0 ft) length with plate girder span and steel truss. The ruling gradient is 1:33 or 3%, with 919 curves, the sharpest being 48 degrees (a radius of 37.47 meters (1229 ft) and climbs from 656 meters (2,152 ft) and terminates at an elevation of 2,076 meters (6,811 ft) at Shimla. The Barog Tunnel (No. 33) is the longest tunnel on the line at 1,144 meters (3,753 ft) in length between Dagshai and Solan (270 meters (890 ft) below the road).

The route from Kalka to Shimla involves journey through the Koti tunnel 3.2 kilometers (20 mi) long, the Dharampur main station, 32 kilometers (20 mi) from Kalka, three loops at Taksal, Gumman and Dharampur to attain flatter gradients, Taradevi, Prospect Hill to Jatogh,

Inverarm to the terminus at old Dovedell chambers at Shimla.

Solan Special luxury trains called the Shivalik Express and Shivalik Palace Saloon operate during the summer months to cater for heavy traffic from tourism, apart from several passenger and cargo (potato, in particular) trains, in addition to catering to the requirements of the armed services.

This line was added to the list of World Heritage Sites in 2008, joining the Nilgiri and Darjeeling lines.

Matheran Hill Railway

Further information: Matheran Hill Railway

Left: Matheran Railway No.740 preserved in the UK at Railworld in Peterborough. **Right:** Toy Train on Matheran railway.

Matheran Hill Railway, a heritage railway in Maharashtra, was built between 1901 and 1907 by Abdul Hussein Adamjee Peerbhoy and was financed by his father, Sir Adamjee Peerbhoy of the Adamjee Group. The railway line, a 610mm (2 ft) gauge line, covers a distance of 20 kilometers (12 mi), over large swathes of forest territory connecting Neral to Matheran in the Western Ghats hills near Kariat and Mumbai.

The plan, formulated in 1900, began construction in 1904 and the line was opened to traffic by 1907. Originally, the tracks were laid with 30 lb/yard rails but now use heavier 42 lb/yard rails, Ruling gradient is 1:20 (5%) with tight curves and speeds are limited to 20 kilometres per hour (12 mph).

The unique feature of this line is the horseshoe embankment, which was built to avoid a reversion station, seen when the train curves markedly. Important stations and special features include this, the initial Neral Station, the Herdal Hill section, the Bhekra Khud steep gradient, the only tunnel on the route, popularly known as the "One Kiss Tunnel" (time to pass through this is just sufficient to exchange a kiss with one's partner), a "Water Pipe" station (no longer in use due to change over to diesel locos), Mountain Berry with two sharp 'Zig Zags', Panorama Point and finally terminating at Matheran Bazaar. The Broad gauge line between Mumbai and Poona runs close to this line and the road also crosses the railway line at two Locations.

Kangra Valley Railway

Further information : Kanqra Valley Railway

The Kangra Valley Railway lies in the sub-Himalayan region and covers a distance of 163 kilometers (101 mi) between Pathankot and Joginder Nagar, a valley known for its natural beauty and ancient Hindu shrines. The highest point on this line is at Ahju station at an elevation of 1,291 meters (4,236 ft) and the terminus at Joginder Nagar is at 1,189 meters (3,901 ft).

The line has 971 uniquely designed bridges and two tunnels. Two particularly important bridge structures are the steel arch bridge over the Reond nalah and the girder

bridge over the Banganga River Though the gradient of the line is generally gentle, the critical reach with steep slopes.

The train journey on this line provides beautiful views of peaks of the Dhauladhar mountain range, particularly in the stretch between Kangra and Mangwal, and also the ruins of the Kangra Fort.

Lumding- Halflong- Badarpur hill section (Assam)

The Northeast Frontier Railway plans to preserve the 120 km-long Mahur-Haranqajao hill section. It has 37 tunnels, 586 bridges and 24 stations on the way with the steepest gradient of 1 in 37 on the Haranqajao -Jatinga section

Kashmir Railway

The Further information: Kashmir Railway

A passenger train at Srinagar railway station.

The Kashmir Railway is a railway line being built in India to connect the state of Jammu and Kashmir with the rest of the country. The route crosses major earthquake zones, and is subjected to extreme temperatures of cold and heat, as well as inhospitable terrain, making it an extremely challenging engineering project.

The scheduled date of completion was August 15, 2007. However, several unforeseen complications have pushed back the final completion deadline to 2017 at the earliest so a through service from central India to Kashmir will not be possible till then.

Hill Trains of India

Shivalik Palace - Running between Kalka and Shimla, the Shivalik Palace is a six seater train that can be combined with any train. The facilities on board include folding cushioned bed, a dining table, a refrigerator, modern bathroom, an attendant and a well equipped kitchen. Apart from these two retiring rooms at Shimla are also provided

Shivalik Queen Express - Especially meant for the honeymooners, the Shivalik Queen Express promises a beautiful journey between Kalka and Shimal. Big windows in the train provide charming views enroute.

Matheran Hill Railway - Matheran Railway links Neral, which lies on the Mumbai- Pune route, to the beautiful hill station of Matheran. The route, which is covered in a time period of one and half hours, is full of panoramic views of the region. The tranquility experienced is worth enjoying.

Darjeeling Hill Railway - Operating between New Jalpiaguri and Darjeeling, the Darjeeling Railway is pulled by 100 year old engine. Tourists have an opportunity to enjoy a breathtaking view of the great Himalayas for full seven and half hours.

Nilgiri Mountain Rail: This train runs between Mettupalayam and Ooty in the southern part of the country Tourists are treated to splendid views of tunnels. bridges

The Golden Chariot

- **Region:** India
- **Type:** Luxury Train

Traveller Interest: Cultural Experiences

Journeys on The Golden Chariot

Introduction / History : Embark on a luxurious voyage of discovery through the Cradle of Stone Architecture. The Golden Chariot- Pride of The South train will travel through timeless Historical Heritage Sites, Resplendent Palaces, Wildlife and Golden Beaches.

Some of the prominent tourist attractions of the Pride of the South itinerary are Sravanabelagola, Mysore Palace, the ruins of Hampi, and of course the pristine beaches of Goa. Traverse through the lush green landscape with an astonishing abundance of wildlife or simply indulge in luxury thus far reserved for royalty.

Each Coach of the “The Golden Chariot - Pride of The South” has been named after the dynasties that ruled Karnataka - Kadamba, Hoysala, Rastrakota, Ganga, Chalukva, Bhahamani, Adhilshahi, Sangama, Shathavashna, Yudukula and Vijayanagar.

Every suite has been meticulously crafted allowing you to relive the kingly splendor of a rich past, with all the comforts that make for fine living. Discover the many worlds of Karnataka.

Accommodation

All cabins on board the Golden Chariot are air-conditioned. There are 26 twin beds, 17 double bed cabins and 1 cabin for the physically challenged. Each cabin is equipped with a vanity / writing desk, Wi-Fi, LCD television. DVD with 6 satellite channels, wardrobe, and private bathroom with luxurious amenities and accessories.

Sink into a bed of royalty, reminiscent of the Mysore Maharajas, admire the intricate carvings on the ceiling, the wall panels and furniture inspired by Mysore and Hoysala architecture.

Dining / Lounge

The interiors of the two Dining Cars (called Nala & Ruchi) are inspired by the royal aesthetics of Hampi & Halebid temples. There is an and non-vegetarian culinary delights available. The restaurants have 4seater and 2-seater tables tables with comfortable sofas and chairs. The plush & royal interiors of the Cigar Bar Lounge (called Madira) are modelled after the early , 20th century Mysore Palace.

In addition, the train has 2 massage rooms, a fully equipped Gymnasium and a conference room with a Seating capacity of 25-30 guests.

Advance Reservation Through Internet (www.irctc.co.in)

Indian railway catering & tourism corporation ltd., (irctc ltd) a psu of ministry of railways have developed a system for advance booking of rail tickets through internet.

The web site for online booking is www.irctc.co.in the site is veri sign secured. Booking procedures are simple and user friendly.

Online Advance Rail Reservation through www.irctc.co.in

The process of booking an E-Ticket is easy and convenient. Registration on the website is free. For any assistance/ query about e-tickets, please send an e-mail tocare@irctc.co.in or talk to the customer care executive at helpline number 011-39340000.

Travel on SMS

E-Ticketing by IRCTC is helpful in protecting environment by saving paper. E-ticket holders are now permitted to travel without printout of ticket and can travel with SMS sent by ITCTC alongwith valid Photo ID proof in original.

E-ticketing is also helpful in saving environment by controlling pollution as people do not have to travel to Rail Reservation Offices to buy tickets. E-Tickets can be booked from the comfort of homes and offices. This not only saves air pollution but also Noise pollution.

Procedure of Booking E-Ticket

- Customer should register in the www.irctc.co.in website to book tickets. Registration is free.
- Before registration, customer should go through the “Terms and Conditions” which are available in the website.
- Customer is allowed to register only one user 10 with correct details of e-mail, mobile no., etc.
- Full fare tickets including Tatkal, Child tickets and tickets for senior citizens at concessional rate can be booked through the website. E-tickets can be booked for journey between any two stations on the route of the train including originating station and destination.
- When ticket is successfully booked an SMS will be sent to the customer detailing the PNR, ticket status, fare charged etc.

During the journey even if one passenger booked on an e-ticket presents any of the ten Identity Cards mentioned below in original, the same is accepted as proof of identity (For Tatkal ticket same Identity card is to be presented during journey which was mentioned at the time of booking of tickets):

- 1 Voter Identity Card issued by Election Commission of India,
- 2 Passport,
- 3 PAN Card, issued by Income Tax Department of India,
- 4 Driving License issued by RTO,

- 5 Photo Identity Card issued by Central/State Governments,
- 6 Student Identity Card with photograph issued by recognized school/college for their students,
- 7 Nationalized Bank passbook with photograph,
- 8 Credit Card issued by Bank with laminated photograph as a proof of identity and
- 9 Unique Identification Card ‘Aadhar’ issued by Govt. of India

If for any reason, the final output of the booking is not displayed in the screen, customer should check in the menu “History of tickets booked” in the home page before attempting again.

- 10 Photo identity cards having serial number issued by Public Sector Undertakings of State/Central Government, District Administrations, Municipal bodies and Panchayat Administrations.

It will be the responsibility of the passenger carrying anyone proof of identifications mentioned above that the other passengers booked on the a-tickets are bonafide passengers and are not travelling on someone else’s name.

If none of the passengers is carrying any proof of Identity as mentioned above, all the passengers will be treated as travelling without ticket and shall be charged accordingly.

If the passengers fail to carry the Electronic Reservation Slip (ERS)/SMS sent by IRCTC containing journey details, a penalty of Rs.50/- will be imposed by the Ticket Checking Staff.

Timings for Internet Reservation: Tickets on Internet can be booked from 00:30 hrs to 23:30 hrs on all days.

Service Charge for E-ticket : Service charge of Rs.15/- for Second/Sleeper Class and RS.30/- in case of all other higher classes (1AC, 2AC, 3AC, CC, 3E, FC) per e-ticket is applicable, irrespective of the number of passengers (maximum six) booked on an e-ticket, Service Tax is extra.

Payment for booking E-tickets

- Payment can be made by using all Master /Visa /Amex cards.
- Account holders of major banks viz. State Bank of India, PNB, Indian Bank, ICICI, HDFC, etc. can also use Net Banking/ Debit Cards facility for making payments for tickets booked through internet.
- Customers can also use various Cash Cards for making payments.
- Payment can also be made through IMPS (Immediate Payment Service) provided by National Payments Corporation of India.

In E-ticketing scheme, passengers get their reservation booked through internet while sitting at home and occupy their reserved seat on the basis of Electronic Reservation

slip (ERS) taken out from their own computer or SMS sent by IRCTC/Railways along with the original Identity Card.

E- Tickets can now be booked using mobile phone also through IRCTC mobile website www.irctc.co.in/mobile.

Precautions while Buying a-tickets from Authorized Agents

- Demand a receipt from the e-ticketing agent for the payment made for booking ticket.
- Ensure that the Agent has valid Authorization Certificate issued by respective Principal Agent. List of authorized agents is also available on Home Page of www.irctc.co.in under 'Agents' section.
- In order to facilitate availability of website to Individual users, e-ticketing Agents are barred from booking all types of Rail e-tickets from IRCTC website www.irctc.co.in between 8:00 hours -12:00 hours. Do not buy tickets from Agents between 8:00 hours -12:00 hours. Such tickets are liable to be cancelled.
- Check carefully all the details viz. Stations, Date, Fare, Service Charges, Age, Class etc. printed on the E-Ticket,
- Please insist that your Mobile number *is* printed on E-ticket. You will receive SMS on your mobile phone regarding details of your bookings *including* the fare and the service charge.
- Cross-check the actual cost of your E- Ticket with the SMS *received* from IRCTC.
- If the agent demands more than the prescribed service charge, you can also lodge a complaint at agentcomplaint@irctc.co.in.

Service Charge

- On IRCTC website: Rs. 15/- for Sleeper Class, 2S class tickets and Rs. 35/- per ticket for other higher classes. (Service Tax extra)
- Through Agent: An additional Rs.10/- for Sleeper Class, 2S class tickets and Rs.20/- per ticket for other higher classes.
- Please note that the Agent Service charge is per PNR and not per passenger.
- There is no Agent Service charge for cancellation of ticket.

Cancellation and Refund of E-Tickets

An E- ticket cannot be cancelled at any Reservation counter of the Railways. It can only be cancelled online.

A Cancellation Before Charting

The passenger can cancel the E- Ticket before preparation of reservation chart of the train by logging in his User ID and password on the irctc.co.in. Reservation Charts are normally prepared 4 hours before departure of the train from Train originating station. Cancellation is not possible through any other User ID and password.

Upon cancellation of *ticket*, IRCTC will process the refund

electronically and credit the amount in same account which was used at the time of booking of tickets.

B Cancellation After Charting

1 For confirmed Tickets : The passengers will have to make an online request through filing TOR. The claim will be processed by Zonal Railways Claims Offices by Train Chart verification, Train Running *information* etc., available with them and decide admissibility of refund. On receipt from Railways, IRCTC will refund the amount electronically to the passengers account. The passenger is not required to approach any railway counter for the purpose of *cancellation*.

2 Part confirm/RAC/Waiting

- a If on one PNR there is more than one passenger and at least one list, names of all the passengers booked on such PNR will appear in the chart.
- b A certificate can be obtained from the Ticket Checking staff in the train regarding non-travelling of wait-listed passengers on such tickets and refund can be obtained thereafter by sending online TOR request. Such request will be processed by Zonal Railway Claims Offices.
- c If all such passengers do not want to *travel* before chart preparation, online cancellation can be done as at present. However, after chart preparation, online request can be filed through TOR. Zonal Railways Claims Offices will process TDRs by verification from Train Reservation Charts and decide admissibility of refund amount. IRCTC will arrange the refund to customer's account on receipt from Railways as per extant refund rules.

SMS and IVRS service on "139-Rail Sampark"

"139-Rail Sampark", the national enquiry for Indian Railways has been in operation for around 5 years now. The services on this number i.e. 139 include enquiries pertaining to PNR Status, Current Train running position, Accommodation availability and Fare Enquiry.

Apart from *voice* enquiry on IVRS, the *above* mentioned services are also available through SMS. Passenger can get the desired information by sending SMS to 139 in the following format.

The details of SMSs services available and the format are as under:

1 For ticket status Enquiry

SMS 10 Digit PNR Number

For example: 4341568666

2 For Train Arrival/Departure Enquiry

SMS "AD <Train number> <STD code of Station>"

For example AD 12012011

3 For Accommodation availability : SMS "SEAT <Train number> <DOJ**ddmmyy> <Station from: STO code> <station to: STO code> <class> <Quota>***"

For (example SEAT 12561 01071205420571 SL G

4 Fare enquiry : SMS "FARE <Train number> <DOJ**ddmmyy> <Station from: STD code> <station to: STD code> <class> <Quota>***"

For example FARE 1256101071205420571 SLG

5 Time table : SMS "TIME <train number>

For example: TIME 12561

6 Spot / Locate train : SMS "SPOT <train number> or LOCATE <train number>

For example SPOT 12561 or LOCATE 12561

7 Train Name/Number : SMS "TN <train number> or SMS "TN <train name>

For example. TN 12724 or TN AP EXPRESS

To get the *above* syntax, SMS HELP or RAIL to 139

Note: Quota is optional field. For example, please enter G for general, CK for tatkal.

For class field, please enter 1A for First AC, 2A for Second AC, 3A for third AC, SL for Sleeper, CC for AC Chair Car, 2S for Second Sitting

The service is also available on USSD for Reliance, Uninor, Docomo and Vodafone Telephone Service Providers. Just dial *139# to avail the USSD facility for enquiry of PNR, Arrival/Departure etc.

List of Cities for Courier Delivery of Internet Tickets

The following cities (Pin codes) are covered for door delivery of I-Ticket (E-Ticket can be booked from any city irrespective of the delivery limitations).

Please ensure two clear days before date of journey for Home Delivery at the following cities of the State

Andhra Pradesh: Guntur, Hyderabad, Secunderabad
Assam: Guwahati Bihar: Patna, Bhagalpur, Muzaffarpur
Chandigarh: Chandigarh Daman: Silvassa Delhi: Delhi,
Gujarat: Ahmedabad, Anand, Bhavnagar, Gandhinagar,
Jamnagar, Rajkot, Sural, Vododara, Vapi Haryana:
Ambala, Bahadurgarh, Ballabgarh, Kamal, Hissar,
Panipat, Yamunanagar, Gurgaon, Faridabad, Panch kula
Himachal Pradesh: Baddi, Shimla Jammu & Kashmir:
Jammu, Srinagar Jharkhand: Ranchi, Jameshpur,
Bokaro Karnataka: Bangalore, Mangalore, Mysore
Kerala: Kochi Madhya Pradesh: Bhopal, Gwalior,
Indore, Jabalpur, Rat/am, Rewa, Ujjain Maharashtra:
Aurangabad, Mumbai, Nagpur, Pune, Thane Orissa:
Bhubaneswar Pondicherry: Pondicherry Punjab: Abohar,
Amritsar, Bhatinda, Ferozpur, Hoshiarpur, Jalandhar,
Ludhiana, Pathankot, Patiala Rajasthan: Ajmer, Jaipur,
Jodhpur, Kota, Udaipur Tamil Nadu: Coimbatore, Chennai,
Madurai Uttar Pradesh: Agra, Allahabad, Aligarh, Bareilly,
Bijnor, Budayun, Chandausi, Dadri, Firozabad, Hathras,
Izzatnagar, Jhansi, Kanpur, Lucknow, Mathura, Meerut,
Moradabad, Muzaffarnagar, Mirzapur, Saharanpur,
Shahjahanpur, Varanasi, Vrindavan, Ghaziabad, Noida,

Greater Noida, Hapur Uttarakhand: Dehradun, Haldwani,
Nainital, Rishikesh, Roorkee West Bengal: Kolkata,
Howrah, Siliguri.

Please ensure three clear days before date of journey for Home Delivery at the following cities of the State

Andhra Pradesh: Cuddapah, Kakinada, Kurnool,
Nellore, Nizamabad, Rajamundry, Tirupati, Vijayawada,
Visakhapatnam, Warangal Assam: Dibrugarh, Jorhat,
Nazira, Sibsagar, Silchar Chhattisgarh: Durg, Bhilai,
Bilaspur, Raipur, Raigarh Gujarat: Bhuj, Kandla, Hazira,
Bharuch, Nandia, Navsari Jammu & Kashmir: Anantnag,
Bijbehara Jharkhand: Dhanbad Karnataka: Belgaum,
Dharwad, Gulbarga, Hubli, Manipal, Tumkur, Udipi
Kerala: Alapauzha, Aluva, Chengannur, Kannur, Kollam,
Koltayam,

Kozhikode, Palakkad, Tiruvalla,
Thiruvananthapuram, Thirur Madhya Pradesh: Guna,
Katni, Satna, Saugor Maharashtra: Nasik, Kolhapur,
Jalgaon, Akola Meghalaya: Shillong Manipur: Imphal
Mizoram: Aizwal Nagaland: Dimapur, Kohima Orissa:
Cuttack, Puri, Rourkela Rajasthan: Abu Road, Bikaner
Sikkim: Gangtok Tamil Nadu: Coimbatore, Erode,
Kovilpatti, Tiruchchirappalli, Tirunelveli, Nagercoil,
Tuticorin, Salem, Tiruppur, Rajapalayam, Sivakasi,
Ooty, Mettupalayam, Thanjavur, Dindigul, Virudhunagar
Tripura: Agartala West Bengal: Asansol, Darjeeling,
Durgapur, Hoogly, Haldia, Kharagpur.

Please enter correct PIN codes for flawless delivery

The following publications (2011-12 editions) of the Statistics and Economics Directorate of Railway Board are now available for sale:

- 1 Indian Railways Year Book : Rs. 100 per copy
- 2 Indian Railways Annual Report & Accounts :
Rs. 150 per copy
- 3 Indian Railways Annual Statistical Statements :
Rs. 900 per copy

These publications are, as usual, available at the sales outlets of The Controller of Publications, Civil Lines, Delhi and at the National Rail Museum, Chanakyapuri, New Delhi.

Indian Railways Annual Statistical Statements contain exhaustive statistical data on Indian Railways covering wide spectra like assets, financial performance, personnel, safety etc. A very useful reference book for research scholars, Railway enthusiasts and other users. 2011-12 edition also contains time series data of quinquennial nature from 1960-61 onwards in respect of all statements. The publication is available at the National Rail Museum, Chanakyapuri, New Delhi.

Indian Railway Catering and Tourism Corporation Ltd (A government of Indian enterprise – Mini Ratina)

Internet ticketing-e-ticketing

- Indian's biggest E-commerce website
- Log on to : www.irctc.co.in
- Book your Railway Ticket including Tatkal tickets
- Pay through Credit Card, Internet Banking facility Cash Card (over 35 options available)
- Print your e-ticket or get an I-ticket delivered at home by courier.

Mahaparinirvan Express : IRCTC is operating an all Inclusive tour Package to important place connected to the life of Buddha. The using a special air conditioned train. The package include rail and road travel., on board and off board hospitality, guide services security, insurance etc.

Hill Charters : IRCTC offers charters on a number scenic mountain railway section including;

- Darjeeling Himalayan Railway
- Nilgiri Mountain Railway
- Kalka Shimla Railway
- Kangra Valley Railway(Diesel)

Corporate Travel Services

- Airlines Tickets on International and Domestic Sectors
- Domestic and International Hotel Booking Overseas Medical Insurance
- Rail Tickets
- Air Tickets on LTC scheme
- Visa Forex

Railway And Non-railway Catering : IRCTC's range of catering services includes catering on trains, at Railway stations, Institutional catering for officers hospitals, educational institutes, sports events, etc.

Rail Neer – Packages Drinking Water : Rail Neer. The packaged drinking water brand of IRCTC has set a new benchmark in terms of quality.

Travel Portal : National Tourism Award winner travel portal www.railtourisminda.com, now offers a one stop solution for all travel needs.

- Trains Tickets
- Enchanting Rail Holidays
- Bharat Darshan & Bharat Tirth Tours
- Tourist Trains
- Exclusive Stream / Diesel Charter
- Hotel Rooms Rented Cabs
- Air Tickets

Train & coach charters: IRCTC organize train & rail coach charters Over Indian Railways for the convenience of tourists traveling in large groups. Comprehensive services are available including catering, bedroll, road travel, accommodation etc.

Enchanting Rail Holidays: All inclusive tour package with confirmed Rail reservations, Hotel accommodation, Road transportation, Meals, Tour guide etc. Wide variety of package available across India.

Sharat Darshan: Starting from Rs.500/- per passenger per day Bharat Darshan trains cater to the budget traveler costing./ These cover important tourist destinations across the country . The tariff includes rail travel, road transfer, meals accommodation as well as sightseeing.

Bharat Tirth: Bharat Tirth trains cover cities with important pilgrimage sites and offer a complete package to the tourist including rail travel, meals, accommodation, sightseeing tour escort / guide etc. Packages are offered in three categories. Budget, Standard & Deluxe.

Multi-cuisine Food Plazas: Food plazas have been set up at major railway stations with multi-cuisine outlets in contemporary décor and hygienic ambience.

Important Tourism circuits - Golden Triangle, Southern triangle, Buddhist Circuit and Green Triangle

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- important tourism circuits.

Golden Triangle Tours : Golden Triangle Tours are a classic introduction to India especially for the first time visitors on holidays in India. If you've never been to the subcontinent before, start here for it could not get any more better and enriching cultural experience than a golden triangle holiday package.

Golden Triangle Tours cover the 3 most prominent tourist destinations in the heartland of India i.e. Delhi, Agra and Jaipur. These tour packages offer one of the finest cultural experience in India along with visit to some of the finest monuments and UNESCO World Heritage Sites including the Taj Mahal in Agra.

List of Golden Triangle Tour Packages

Golden Triangle Tour

Duration: 6 Days /5 Nights

Destination Covered: Delhi - Agra - Jaipur - Delhi

Golden Triangle Tour

Overview : Probably, no other theme tour besides Golden Triangle Tour can provide you with a full-fledged glimpse of India's royal and cultural heritage in such a short span. The journey covers three most popular tourist destinations of India- Delhi, Agra and Jaipur. The guests are provided with a slice of British, Rajputana and Mughal royalty on the same platter.

Trip Highlights

- Guided tour of Delhi- Laxmi Narayan Temple, Parliament House, India Gate, Red Fort, Jama Masjid, Humayun's Tomb, Gandhi Memorial and Qutub Minar Complex
- Enjoy 'Dance of India Show' in the evening
- Guided trip to covering Agra Fort, Itmad-Ud-Daulah and Taj Mahal
- Guided trip to Fatehpur Sikri- Jama Masjid, Jodha Bai Palace, Birbal Bhawan, Panch Mahal and Buland Darwaza
- Guided tour of City Palace, Jantar Mantar, Nawab Sahab ki Haveli and the local bazaars

Itinerary Details

Day 1: Delhi (Arrival)

Upon arrival in Delhi, meet our tour representative who'll escort you to the hotel predecided for your stay. Stay overnight in the hotel.

Day 2: Delhi

Today, enjoy a full day sightseeing tour covering Laxmi

Narayan Temple, Parliament House, India Gate, Red Fort, Jama Masjid, Humayun's Tomb, Gandhi Memorial and Qutub Minar Complex. In the evening, take delight in the 'Dances of India Show'. Stay overnight in the hotel.

Day 3: Delhi - Agra

Today, in the morning, leave by road for Agra. Upon arrival in Agra, check into the hotel. Thereafter, enjoy sightseeing tour of Agra covering Agra Fort, Itmad-Ud- Daulah and Taj Mahal. Stay overnight in the hotel.

Day 4: Agra -Jaipur

In the morning, leave by road for Jaipur. On the way, halt at Fatehpur Sikri, the abandoned Mughal town. The attractions you will cover include Jama Masjid, Jodha ai Palace, Birbal Bhawan, Panch Mahal and the Buland Darwaza. On reaching Jaipur, check into the hotel for night stay.

Day 5: Jaipur

Today, in the morning, enjoy an elephant ride to Amber Fort. In the afternoon, take a road trip to the Jaipur city covering City Palace, Jantar Mantar, Nawab Sahab ki Haveli and the local bazaars etc. Post sightseeing, return to the hotel for night stay.

Day 6: Jaipur - Delhi

Post breakfast in the morning, leave by road for Delhi. Upon arrival in Delhi, you will be transferred to the airport to board flight for onward journey.

Inclusions

- Accommodation in hotels for 05 nights on Bed and Breakfast basis.
- Airport transfers with staff assistance.
- Garlanding on arrival at Delhi airport.
- Air-conditioned transport .
- Elephant / Jeep ride at Amber Fort (one way only while going up)
- Services of Local English Speaking Guide for sightseeing wherever available
- All currently applicable taxes.

Exclusions

- Travel Insurance
- Any Entrance fee.
- Any peak season supplement.
- Expenses of personal nature such as drinks, telephone, laundry bills etc.

- Tips and porter charges
- Any additional expenses incurred due to any flight delay or cancellation, weather conditions, political closures, technical faults etc.
- Any other service/s not specified above

Special note

- 1 All taxes, entrance fees, airfare, Hotel and Transport rates etc are as on date. Any future hike will be charged extra.
- 2 The above-mentioned cost is not valid from 20.12 to 05.01
- 3 During Christmas and New Year's Eve Mandatory dinner supplement shall be applicable and known to you on case to case basis.
- 4 The above is only an offer and we are not holding any booking at this stage, booking would be subject to availability once confirmed by you along with guest details & guarantee to book.
- 5 Terms & conditions, please click : www.indianholiday.com/terms-andconditions.html

Golden Triangle 7 Days Tour

Duration: 7 Days / 6 Nights

Destination Covered: Delhi - Agra - Jaipur - Delhi

Golden Triangle 7 Days Tour

Overview

The Golden triangle of India, including Delhi, Agra and Jaipur, is one of the most sought-after tours opted by a large number of tourists.

If you also want to visit these three amazing cities of the country then you should go for 6 nights and 7 days, Golden Triangle 7 Days Tour.

You will get a chance you witness the best of the culture of India. Each city will offer something unique to you.

Trip Highlights

- Explore Purana Quila and Jantar Mantar Observatory, Delhi
- Attend Light and Sound Show at Red Fort, Delhi
- Stopover at Sikandara, a ruined Mughal City (on the way to Agra)
- Halt at Extremely popular, Fatehpur Sikri (on the way to Jaipur)
- Morning Visit to the beautiful Taj Mahal, Agra
- A joyride on Elephant's back at Amer Fort, Jaipur

Itinerary Details

Day 1: Delhi

Arrive at Delhi Airport. The IHPL representative escorts you to the pre-booked hotel for staying overnight.

Day 2: Delhi

post breakfast, leave for a long tour through the capital city. Start with the beautiful Narayan Temple and proceed to India Gate, a cenotaph commemorating Indian martyrs,

Parliament House, Rashtrapati Bhavan and Jama Masjid, India's largest mosque.

Visit the towering Qutab Minar, historical Purana Quila, Humayun's Tomb and Jantar Mantar observatory. Pay homage at Raj Ghat, Mahatma Gandhi's memorial. Later, witness the vivacious Sound & Light Show at Red Fort, a striking beauty in red sandstone. Return to hotel for overnight stay.

Day 3: Delhi - Agra

Morning, leave for Agra by road (4 hours). Halt at Sikandara en route for a brief sit. Reach Agra and proceed to the hotel for overnight stay.

Day 4

Leave for sightseeing tour through -the-beautiful Mughal-city. Be amazed at the incredible beauty of Taj Mahal, a white mausoleum, one of the world's seven wonders. Built in pristine white marble by Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan in remembrance of his beloved wife Mumtaz Mahal, it is thronged by tourists from far and wide.

Later, proceed to the imposing Agra Fort and Itmad-ud-Daula's Tomb whose design elephants even outshine the Tajl Shop around for exclusive specialties at the Local Bazaar and transfer to hotel for night stay.

Day 5: Agra - Jaipur

Early morning drive to Jaipur. On the way, halt at Fatehpur Sikri (5 hours) and tour the sandstone city of Emperor Akbar. Cover Jama Masjid, Buland Darwaza, world's largest gateway, the historical Palace of Jodha Bai, Birbal Bhavan and Panch Mahal. proceed towards Jaipur. After arriving, check into a city hotel.

Later, leave for sightseeing covering the City Palace flanked by courtyards, lush gardens and monuments, the unique Royal Jantar Mantar Observatory, Nawab Sahab Ki Haveli the Local Bazaar. Return to hotel for faying overnight.

Day 6: Jaipur

Leave for a fun day guided tour through Pink City after breakfast. Witness the striking beauty of Amber Fort while enjoying a joyride on elephant back. Be awed at the perfect blend of Rajasthani and Mughal architecture in the palace fortress.

Later, visit Hawa Mahal or Palace of Winds, the stunning five-storied pyramid-shaped palace with numerous small windows and screens. Transfer to hotel for overnight stay.

Day 7: Jaipur - Delhi

Early morning, start your road journey towards Delhi. After arriving, head straight to the airport/railway station to board the onward flight / train.

Details

Enquire Golden Triangle Train Tour

Duration: 6 Days / 5 Nights

Destination Covered: Delhi - Agra - Jaipur - Delhi

Golden Triangle Train Tour

Overview : One of the shortest and the smartest ways

to get familiarized with the cultural and historical heritage of India is the Golden Triangle tour.

The three' vertex of this triangle include Delhi, Agra and Jaipur. The -5 nights and 6 days 'Golden Triangle Train Tour' has been designed to let you explore the historical attractions of these 3 cities.

Trip Highlights

- Sightseeing Tour of Old and New Delhi- India Gate, Jama Masjid, Parliament House, Gandhi Memorial, Qutub Minar Complex, Red Fort, Humayun's Tomb and the Laxmi Narayan Temple
- Visit Taj Mahal, Agr a Fort and Itmad-Ud-Daulah Tomb in Agra
- Excursion to Fatehpur Sikri- Jodha Bai Palace, Birbal Bhawan, Jama Masjid, Buland Darwaza and Panch Mahal
- Elephant joy ride to Amher Fort

Itinerary Details

Day 1: Delhi (Arrival)

Upon arrival at the Delhi airport, Stay overnight in the hotel.

Day 2: Delhi

In the morning, embark on a sightseeing tour of Old and New Delhi which include India Gate, Jama Masjid, Parliament House, Gandhi Memorial, Qutub Minar Complex, Red Fort, Humayun's Tomb and the Laxmi Narayan Temple. Stay overnight. in Delhi.

Day 3: Delhi - Agra

In the morning, you will be transferred to the railway station to board the connecting train to Agra. On reaching Agra, meet our representative and get transferred to the hotel. In the morning, set off to explore the majestic monument- Taj Maha! followed by Agra Fort and Itrnad-Ud-Daulah Tomb, Stay overnight in Agra.

Day 4: Agra - Jaipur

In the morning, embark on a sightseeing tour of Fatehpur Sikri, built by Mughal emperor Akbar. The other attractions that you will visit include Jodha Bai Palace, Birbal

Day 5:J. Jaipur

In the morning, take an excursion to the Amber Fort via elephant joy ride. Thereafter, embark on a sightseeing tour of Jaipur which include City Palace, Jantar Mantar Galta the local bazaars etc. The evening is free for individual activities. Stay overnight in Jaipur.

Day 6:Jaipur - Delhi

The day is free to relax and for doing individual activities. In the evening, you will be transferred to the railway station to board connecting train to Delhi. On reaching Delhi, meet our representative who'll assist you in smooth transfer to the international airport to board flight for onward destination.

Golden Triangle

Destinations Covered: Bodh Gaya - Dungeshwari

174 Tourism & Hospitality - Travel & Tour Assistant (NSQF- Revised 2022) - R.T. for Ex. 1.4.39-40

Caves - Kesariya - Vaishali - Rajgir Nalanda - Kushinagar - Sarnath - Varanasi

Buddhist Circuit Tour Duration : 08 Nights / 09 Days

Buddhist Circuit Tour India - Several religions of the world have their origins in India. Gautam Buddha, born a prince in Lumbini set out towards India in search of the questions that troubled him about life and suffering.

His penance and meditation for years showed him the path to 'nirvana'. After achieving enlightenment, he set about preaching and sermonizing on the middle path to salvation. till he left for his heavenly abode from Kushinagar.

On this guided tour. let's re-trace the steps of the Buddha from the place where he meditated, to where he attained enlightenment, to where he gave his first sermon, to where he donated his begging bowl before his death, and finally, to where he breathed his last.

Day 01: Gaya/Bodh Gaya

Arrive in Gaya.

Drive to Bodh Gaya 13 km and check into hotel.

Take a sightseeing tour of this holy seat of the Buddhist religion.

Here is where Gautam Buddha achieved enlightenment while meditating under a bodhi tree. There is a serene temple here, as well as the offshoot of the tree that offered shade to Buddha.

The original tree was destroyed by Emperor Ashoka's queen, but a sapling of it was saved in time and planted in Sri Lanka by his daughter. A sapling of that tree was brought back to Bodh Gaya, which still stands to tell this tale.

A number of Buddhist nations like Thailand, Japan and Burma have set up monasteries and meditation centres in Bodh Gaya. Some of these include: the Indosan Nipponji temple, the Thai monastery, the Tibetan Karma Temple and Namgyal Monastery, and others by the Chinese, Burmese, Bhutanese, Vietnamese, Tamang, Daijokyo and Nepali Buddhist communities.

During October and March, monks from Dharamsala descend to Bodh Gaya. The Dalai Lama pays a visit here too during December and January.

The Mahabodhi temple is a World Heritage site, built adjacent to the site of enlightenment in the 6th century AD. The temple was attacked and plundered by Muslim invaders in the 11 th century and re-built several times. Return to hotel for overnight stay.

Day 02: Bodh Gaya - Dungeshwari Caves - Gaya

After breakfast. proceed to Dungeshwari cave temples, 13 km.

Here Buddha spent years of penance before attaining 'nirvana' or enlightenment.

After lunch, return to Gaya to visit the Brahmajuni Hill, believed to be the site of Buddha's fire sermon. There is a cave and a temple on the hill top. Return to hotel for night stay.

Day 03: Bodh Gaya - Rajgir

After breakfast, depart for Rajgir, 70 km, 2 hrs by road.

Arrive in Rajgir and check into hotel.

Rajgir was the capital of the Magadha kingdom and is a pilgrimage for Jains and Hindus as well. The Japanese Buddhists have built the massive Vishwashanti Stupa on the Ratnagiri Hill which can be accessed by a chairlift.

The stupa has statues of Buddha at the four stages of his life - birth, enlightenment, teaching and death. From the hill top, the Jain shrines can also be viewed, scattered across 26 distant hills. Griddhakuta, located on Inagiri Hill is another site where Buddha stopped by to preach.

Return to hotel for night stay.

Day 04: Rajgir - Nalanda

After breakfast, proceed to Nalanda, 12 km.

Nalanda university: It is an international and new. Intensive university it was function between 5th to 13th centuries. The Nalanda university was recurrent during 2007 by the arian countries & china, signature, japan, Malapra. It is used developed stage is make to arial layout university.

Spread over 160 hectares, the Nalanda University Ruins Archaeological Complex is set amidst expansive lawns which offset the spectacular layout and carvings of this ancient university. The monasteries and the viharas are separated by a central valley. Interesting structures to look out for include: steps leading up to perhaps a dais for professors and stupas with images of the Buddha carved in.

According to the Chinese traveler Xuan Zang who also taught at the university during 685 and 762 AD, 10,000 monks and professors resided here at the time.

After the walk around the ruins, visit the Xuan Zang Memorial Hall, a Chinese pagoda built by Chinese Buddhists. Return to Rajgir hotel for night stay.

Day 05: Rajgir - Patna

After breakfast, proceed to Patna by road, 80 km.

Arrive in Patna and check into hotel.

Patna is Bihar's capital city and can be used as a base to visit: the Buddhist sites of Vaishali and Kesariya. It also rests on its ancient past as Pataliputra, the capital of the various dynasties that ruled over the region.

After lunch, take a local sightseeing tour of Patna. This would include: Golghar (built as a granary), Gandhi Museum, Patna Museum, Har Mandir Takht, Qila House or Jalan Museum with some really rare relics like Napoleon's bed and Marie Antoinette's porcelain; and the ruins of Pataliputra. Return to hotel for night stay.

Day 06: Patna - Vaishali - Kesariya

After an early breakfast, depart for Vaishali, 44 km.

This is where Buddha preached his last sermon. The ruins of the Kolhua complex enclose the 2300 year old Ashoka pillar. A Japanese Peace Pagoda has also been built here. After lunch, proceed to Kesariya, 70 km.

Kesariya marks the site where Buddha gave away his begging bowl before his death. A massive Buddhist stupa built during the rule of the Pala kings is being excavated here. Return to Patna for overnight stay.

Day 07: Patna - Kushinagar - Gorakhpur

After breakfast, depart for Kushinagar, 220 km by road. Or else, you can take the train to Gorakhpur and drive 55 km from there to this historic town.

Arrive in Gorakhpur and check into hotel.

Buddha breathed his last here, leaving a message for all mankind to find their salvation. Several monuments built by devotees from across the world have built monuments on this holy site along the Buddha Marg.

These include: Vietnam's Linh Son Buddhists temple, meditation centre and gardens, the Burmese Mahasukhamdadacham Thargyi Pagoda, the Mahaparinirvan Temple with a tranquil and reclining Buddha and the Matahkuar temple, the Japanese - Sri Lanka temple and the Wat Thai temple. The Ramabhar Stupa, or the Mukutbandhan Stupa is the site of the cremation of Buddha.

Return to Gorakhpur for overnight stay.

Day 08: Gorakhpur - Sarnath

Depart in time for train to Varanasi which is 5 Yz hrs from Gorakhpur.

Arrive in Varanasi and check into hotel.

Take a short break. before heading to Sarnath, 10 km.

At Sarnath, Buddha gave his first sermon to a small band of followers after attaining nirvana. Emperor Ashoka had monasteries and stupas built here which were destroyed by Muslim invaders in later years. Some remains were discovered by British archaeologists in 1835. Sarnath is one of the four main sites of the Buddhist religion. the others being Bodhgaya, Kushinagar and Lumbini in Nepal.

Return to Varanasi for night stay.

Day 09: Varanasi - Delhi/Mumbai/Onward Destination

After breakfast, take a tour of this holiest of cities for the Hindus. The River Ganga is the lifeline of the city, and all spiritual and religious activities are performed along its banks.

Take a cruise along the river between the Dasaswamedh Ghat and Harishchandra Ghat and visit the temples.

Participate in or observe the "Ganga aarti" in the evening. a spiritually uplifting experience in which the holy river is paid homage.

Take the evening flight out to Delhi or your preferred destination.

South India Golden Triangle : Look on further if You are in quest of a perfect holiday. Take up the Golden triangle tour of Southern India. The tour comprises of breathtakingly beautiful destinations like Chennai, Kanchipuram and Mahabalipuram.

The Capital of the south eastern state of Tamil Nadu is the starting point of the golden triangle tour of the

Southern India. The city will enthral you with architectural skills of the Dravidians as revealed in the 13th century Kapaleeshwar Temple that is dedicated to Lord Shiva. The visit to the Fort St. George will bring to light the colonial influence on the city.

The exterior of the fort in gray granite will give you a much-needed break from the lavish decoration on the forts of the Mughals. Though the most mesmerizing will be the Marina beach where the blue waters of Bay of Bengal mingle with the golden sands. The sea is not an excellent bathing spot but the beauty of the sun, the sky, the sand and the sea at dusk is spell bounding.

The 55 kilometers journey from Chennai to Mahabalipuram is full of spectacular sights and is nothing less than a joy ride. At Mahabalipuram the shore temple, the five rathas, the largest bas-relief in the world called Arjuna's Penance and the famous and beautiful mandapams are what will be most eye-catching.

You may plan your tour to club the Dance Festival at Mahabalipuram that is hosted by the Department of Tourism of the Government of Tamil Nadu. The extravagance of classical music and dance has performances of Bharathanatyam, Kuchipudi, Kathakali, Odissi and folk dances by the best artists will leave you enchanted just like the temples at Kanchipuram that follow the Dravidian style of architecture.

You may shop for traditional bell metal items, bronze icons, and stone sculpture, as well as other crafts of the southern region at the local shops. Even the jewelry made from uncut precious stones make excellent gift items in Chennai. Next the beautiful Kancheepuram hand woven silk sarees those are renowned for the temple borders and rich zari (gold thread) pallavas must be shopped for at Kanchipuram, the second holiday destination.

Detailed traditional motifs and bright colors with contrasting borders make these sarees absolutely delightful. You may pick up some of these exquisite souvenirs for your loved ones in silver, copper, bronzed and wood, available in various government emporia and private stores.

The shopping spree at the holiday destinations will complete the tour to the temple towns of the Southern India.

Pack your bags and get ready to have the time of your life at the Golden triangle tour of Southern India. The cities included in the Southern Golden Triangle are:

Chennai Tour | Mahabalipuram Tour | Kanchipuram Tour

Eastern Golden Triangle India Tours | Northern Golden Triangle India Tours |

Southern Triangle

04 Nights / 05 Days

Day 01:- Bangalore

Arrive Bangalore and be transferred to the hotel. . Known as the 'Garden city of India', Bangalore is one of the prettiest cities in the country. Though the origin of

Bangalore is ancient, the present day city was founded in the 16th century and has since continued to be an important administrative center.

Bangalore became an important fortress city under Hyder Ali and Tipu Sultan, and later in 1831 came under the rule of British. Later the day go sightseeing of Bangalore city visiting Lalbagh Botanical garden, Tipu Sultan's palace and Bull temple built in 16th century. Drive past Vidhan Soudha. Rest of the day free for independent activities. Stay overnight.

Day 02:- Bangalore/Mysore (180 kms/412 hrs)

After breakfast, depart for Mysore, the capital of the Wodeyar dynasty, which ruled Karnataka for around 150 years. Enroute visit Srirangapatnam - erstwhile capital of Karnataka under the regime of Tipu Sultan. The Channarayana Temple and the Channarayana the true reminiscences of the life and times of the great emperor. Arrive Mysore and check in at the hotel. Later the day go sightseeing of Mysore visiting Mysore palace and Brindavan gardens. Stay overnight.

Day 03:- Mysore - Ooty [164 kms/14 hrs]

Breakfast Check out and drive to Ooty. Udhaqamandalam, this Queen of hill stations, otherwise known as Ooty, is in the Nilgiri mountains ranges in Tamil Nadu. At C1 height of 2,368 metres, Ooty is known for its salubrious climate and scenic beauty and enjoys its place of pride as the most important hill station in South India. Ooty was the summer capital of the former Madras presidency. Check in at hotel for 02 nights stay. Rest of the day at leisure.

Breakfast, Proceed on a sightseeing of Ooty covering Botanical Garden. The picturesque Botanical Garden maintained by the Horticulture department covers an area of about 22 hectares and have over 650 species of plants of trees, including a fossil of trees. Then visit the colorful markets and the Ooty lake. Time free for shopping or enjoy the toy train ride to Coonoor (optional). Stay overnight

Day 05: Ooty/Coimbatore (140 kms/31/2 hrs)

The bid to farewell Breakfast Drive down to Coimbatore for onward journey,

Green triangle tour: It is a tour comprised of (Guwahati - Kaziranga - Shillong - Guwahati)

Tour duration/; 7 days - 6 Nights

The tour starts from Guwahati, the gate way of North East of India. It covers Kaziranga National park to see the one horned Rhinoceros, Shillong, Kamakhya temple, Chirappunjee, water falls. Cave & lake sightseeing of tribal hamlets.

Day 1: Arrival Guwahati (after arrival receive warm welcome from the tour assistant at airport and place you in a decent hotel for night stay.

Day 2: Guwahati - Kaziranga National Park. On the way visit to Kamakhya temple and visit to tea estate followed by cultural test, Dinners & stay.

Day 3: Leave to every morning for elephant safari and sightseeing of Kaziranga National Park on Jeep. Stay over night at Kaziranga.

Day 4: Leave for sillong, covers voniyam lake, surrounded by sylvan hills, local market stay.

Day 5: Drive to chirapunjee, the around the year rain place in the world. It houses called - Nah-Ka-rikal and some caves and the place stay.

Day 6: Visit ward lake, hydari park and also visit for

Khasi Island tribes, enjoy the cruise drive in Brahmaputra mightily river - over night stay.

Day 7: Tour concludes - tour operator thanks for your patronage and ensure on time arrival to airport for departure to home town.

Important hotels chains in India

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to
 • state the chains of important hotels in india.

Chain of hotel in India: India has got variety of hotels and properties on imported raye of budget to Luxury hotels and star classified hotels, forests and palaces turn heritage resorts and also the famous beach resorts, Hill resorts, villas and guest hotels according to the choice of the staying guest. Important chain of hotels in India

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1 SAROVAR | 2 Treebo | 3 Royal orchid |
| 4 Lemon tree | 5 Marriott | 6 Ginger |
| 7 Carlson | 8 Club Mahindra | |
| 9 ITC hotels | 10 Accord hotels | 11 Citrus hotels |
| 12 Golden tulip | 13 Ramada | 14 Hyatt |
| 15 The park | 16 Leela hotels | 17 Trident hotels |

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 18 Taj hotels | 19 Fab hotels | 20 Obroi hotels |
| 21 KTDC hotels | | |

The selection of hotels were done on the basis of ensuring comfortability, hygiene, safety, and extreme satisfying in stay and services.

There are online travel experts are available for tailor made travel and another related of services, transport, sight seeing all under one roof.

The chain of hotels having their properties in most prominent places like hill resorts, beach resorts, commercial area, historical, cultural and heritage places to make stay and relish the vacations.

Hotels

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to
 • understand various operational standards of a hotel.

KITCHEN / FOOD PRODUCTION AREA						
Refrigerator with deep freezer for F & B service	N	N	N	N	N	Capacity based on size
Segregated storage of Meat, fish and vegetables	N	N	N	N	N	Meat, Fish and vegetables in separate freezers.
Colour coded synthetic chopping boards	N	N	N	N	N	Wooden chopping boards prohibited.
Tiled walls & non slip floors	N	N	N	N	N	
Head covering for production staff	N	N	N	N	N	
Daily germicidal cleaning of floors	N	N	N	N	N	
Good quality cooking vessels / utensils	N	N	N	N	N	Use of aluminum vessels prohibited except for bakery.
All food grade equipment containers	N	N	N	N	N	
Drinking water	N	N	N	N	N	Water treated with UV + filtration
Ventilation system	N	N	N	N	N	
Garbage to be segregated – wet and dry	N	N	N	N	N	To encourage recycling
Wet garbage area to be Air-conditioned	D	D	N	N	N	
Receiving areas and stores to be clean and from garbage area.	N	N	N	N	N	
Six monthly medical checks for production staff	N	N	N	N	N	

First- aid- training for all kitchen staff	N	N	N	N	N	
Pest Control	N	N	N	N	N	
STAFF						
Staff uniform for all the staff	N	N	N	N	N	Uniform to be clean and in good condition
English speaking front office staff often foreign layer antial	D	D	N	N	N	This may be relaxed outside the metros /sub metros for 1 and 2 star catagory hotels.
Percentage of supervisory staff	20%	20%	40%	40%	80%	Hotels of 4 star catagory and above should have formally qualified heads of departments.The supervisory or the skilled staff may have training or skill certification as follows.Degree/ diploma from central or state IHMs/FCIs or from NCHMCT affiliated IHM's or other reputed Hospitality fort.
Percentage of skilled staff	20%	20%	30%	30%	60%	The supervisory or the skilled staff may have training or skill certification as follows. Degree/ diploma from central or state IHMs/ FCIs or from NCHMCT affiliated IHMs or other reputed Hospitality schools. Skill training certificate issued under the guidelines and scheme of the ministry of tourism
STAFF WELFARE FACILITIES						
Staff Rest rooms	D	D	N	N	N	Separate for male and female employees with bunk beds well lighted and ventilated.
Staff locker room	D	D	N	N	N	
Warm area facilities	N	N	N	N	N	Full length mirror hand dryer with liquid soap dispenser.
Separate Dining area & Facility for staffs	D	D	N	N	N	
CODE OF CONDUCT FOR SAFE & HONOURABLE TOURISM						
Display of Pledge	N	N	N	N	N	Pledge to be displayed prominently in the staff / back areas / office premises of all the heads of departments (HODs)

Training for the code of conduct for safe & Honourable Tourism	N	N	N	N	N	At the time of joining (orientation programme and subsequent in – house training)
Maintenance of action taken report with regards to compliance of the provisions of the code	N	N	N	N	N	Signatories of the 'code of conduct' to maintain record of action taken in compliance of the provision of the code.
Focal points/Nodal Officers	N	N	N	N	N	Two nodal officers to be nominated (i.e from HRD, Security side etc..) for hotel with more than 25 personnel and one focal point for hotel with less than 25 personnel
Energy naslly (Mock drill) of to be traw	N	N	N	N	N	
Fire fibily train (Bank)	N	N	N	N	N	
ECO friendly Practices: (a) Sewage Treatment Plant.	N	N	N	N	N	A Sewage treatment plant will be a mandatory condition for hotels which have obtained completion certificate for construction before 1.4.2012
(b) Rain water harvesting	N	N	N	N	N	
(c) Waste Management	N	N	N	N	N	
(d) Pollution control methods for air, water and light.	N	N	N	N	N	Newly certificate to be obtain from competent authorities
(e) Introduction of non CFC equipment for refrigeration and air conditioning and other Eco-friendly measures and initiatives.	N	N	N	N	N	

Display of classification status by the hotel.

Note1

All hotels should clearly indicate on their websites the facilities and amenities provide to guests "free of cost" like complimentary breakfast (including broad classification like Indian breakfast , continental breakfast or American breakfast) iron and iron board facility, shoe cleaning facility , shoe horn and slippers, other "free" facilities like dental kit, shaving kit, etc.

If any facility is provided only on request but is included in the room rent, this should be mentioned on the hotel's website under the head 'facilities and amenities provided on complimentary basis' and also mentioned to the guest when the hotel staff introduces the room to him/her on arrival. In case the 'complimentary' breakfast is not a

buffet, the guest must be shown a list stating in English the name of all complimentary items.

Note 2

It will be mandatory for all the hotels classified under the categories 1 to 4 Star to display their classification status prominently outside the hotel and at the reception from 1.4.2014 as per a scheme to be evolved in consultation with FHRAI and HAI

Note 3

Time- sharing accommodation will also be considered for classification as per the guidelines for classification/ Re-classification of hotels.

Note 4

D - Desirable

N - Necessary

Regional festival Cuisines of India

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to
 • explain the festivals and cuisines of india.

Festivals are the identity of Indian society. The zeal of celebration and high spirits of enthusiasm is carried all over the festive season with some delectable festival dishes. There is a huge variety of dishes prepared on most popular Indian festivals.

Numerous tempting delicacies are prepared in different regions of India on festive occasions. From vegetarian dishes to non-vegetarian recipes, India has rich festive

cuisine, spelling sweet dishes and desserts enhance the ease of celebration and form an integral part of festive cuisine. Explore the cuisine of most popular Indian festivals like Diwali, Holi, Makar, Sakranti, Id etc.

In India food has become on life line & vital linkage for all. Each state has got a traditional dish with the flavour of different cuisines.

Maharashtra	Misal Pav
Punjab	Makkikiroti and sarson da saag
West Bengal	Kosha Mangsho (spicy Berpali Muthu ey)
Gujarat	Dokla
Kashmir	Roganjosh (Lamb dish)
Tamil nadu	Pongal
Assam	Papaya khar (Saw papaya with spices)
Bihar	Litti chowkha (Baked wheat flour stuffed)
Himachal	Dham (red kidney beans (rajma)
Andhrapradesh	Poothare kulu (suyar proportion by sheets)
Telugana	Briyani (Hyderabad mutton briyani)
Goa	Fish curry
Uttarkhand	Kafuli (Green curry)
Tripura	Ohakhwi (Bamboo shoot, green papaya)
Manipura	Kangshri (Veg stew)
Kerala	Appam
Madhya Pradesh	Bhutte Ka kees
Rajasthan	Dal baati churma
Arunachal Pradesh	Thukpa (Boiled noodles meat dish)
Sikkim	Momo
Karnataka	Bisbela bath
Nagaland	Pork with bamboo shoots
Mizoram	Misa mach poora (roasted strip)
Odisha	Chenna poda (dessert)
Chattisgarh	Chila (Indian crepe made from chickpea, flour)
Jarkhand	Dhoseska (snack made of powder rice, dal with potatoes)
Uttarpradesh	Tonde ke kababs (meat with mango preparation)
Haryana	Rabadi
Delhi	Chat, tandoor chicken
Megalaya	Jadon

Fundamental of geography

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- **understand the fundamental of geography.**

Fundamental of geography: The geography is the spatial study of the earth surface. The discipline of geography bridges social science with physical science. The two main divisions of the geography include physical geography and human geography.

The fundamental of geography include human interact on environment, geography tools, space, scale and place. Cultural geography and characteristics.

The physical geography is spatial study of natural phenomena that make up the environment such as rivers, mountains, land, climate. Soil and plants and animals. It focus on earth science.

Human geography is the study of human activity and its relationship with earth. It deals with human population, religion languages, political system, economy, urban development and other human activities.

Know The Client

There are many techniques which help determine where and when a client should travel, but as this is a geography text and not a travel-selling text, we do not have time to go into this important stage of knowing your client.

Just be aware that knowing your client's need and and getting them to the right destination at the right time of year is one of your most important responsibilities. This text will help you determine what a destination has to offer and when to send your client there

Traveler's Tips

Lodging: Literally every type of accommodation can be found throughout the world. Bed and breakfasts, quaint inns, deluxe properties, family- owned hotels, and a wide range of villas and condominiums are available to your clients.

It is very critical to place your clients in the type of accommodation that not only best suits their needs(family size, cost, etc.), but that is also near the sights they expect to spend most of their time

Food and Water : Tell your clients to assume it is safe to drink the water and to eat the food in most countries of North America, Europe, and the South pacific. Assume it is not safe to eat the food and third world countries. Most tourist areas are safe, but do advise your client to use ordinary precautions and be select where and when they eat and drink

Electrical Current: Nearly everywhere 210/220 volt is the electrical current. Major hostels usually have adapters for guests' use. Be sure to check with the local tourist office for any changes use additions. Most North American

countries use 110/120 as the electrical current. Check the individual listing of each country.

Dress Standards For Tropical Islands: Tropical island can be extremely warm and humid. Tell your clients to take lightweight summer, casual clothing that is washable (preferably cotton) , Comfortable and loose-fitting. Also take some light canvas shoes or sandals, which are great for walking around the area and exploring the coral reefs.

Be sure to wear at least modest clothing (no swimsuits, shirtless, short shorts, etc.) in towns. Also be sure to take coat and tie for men and suitable evening wear for women (cocktail dresses, etc.)for evenings ,as some islands (Bermuda, Barbados, etc.) and some restaurants and casinos require or expect them after 6 p. m. Always have a sweater for the evening , which can be cool

Dress Standards For Adventure Travel: Some areas of the world, such as the middle East, Thailand, and parts of Africa, are very religious and /or more conservative in dress than others Notify your client that while traveling through these areas, especially outside of the hostel pool areas, especially outside of the hostel pool areas and beaches, conservative dress is preferable.

Women should not wear short shorts , short skirts, halter tops , etc., and men should not go shirtless unless positive they can. Suggest your clients check locally the accepted dress for entering temples churches and certain villages.

Immigration requirements: Suggest that that your client obtain a passport, it is so much easier to enter a country with one, and it will save them a lot of anxiety attacks wondering if they will be allowed into their destination or be sent back to their home country.

True, some of the islands and countries don't require them, but do not let them take a chance. Tell them to get a passport. Some countries such as Trinidad and Tobago require that united states citizens have a passport or they do not get in.

Visas: Assisting your clients in obtaining necessary visas is your responsibility as a travel agent. Citizens not native to your country may have different requirements than do natives. Check with the consulate of the countries they plan to visit to verify what visas are needed for their travel plans

Drugs: Those clients requiring special or difficult to obtain medicines are advised to take an adequate supply with them. Checks with the individual embassies or consulates to see what accompanying documentation is required to take the medicine into the country. Be aware that the use of controlled, illegal drugs is often unlawful and punishable by fine and/or prison sentence.

Beaches: Suggest that clients take insect repellent and check with the locals prior entering any beach not being swum in by locals . if beach is at a hostel or condo, it is probably safe, but check to be sure.

Most island and countries do not encourage or allow nude sunbathing, although if done extremely discreetly, it can be done in most places. Jamaica, the United states (Blacks Beach at La Jolla, CA, etc.), St. Martin, along the Mediterranean and other areas of the world do have nude beaches

Did You Know

It is important for you to have a basic understanding of physical characteristics of the world such as climate, terrain oceans and countries, and destination geography, which is the study of how physical geography relates to travel and tourism and how it affects your clients' trip.

Then you can feel more confident in selling and knowing more about the world. Geography, as it relates to travel, is fun and exciting. For example, did you know:

- That the world is basically round (globe, sphere) in shape ,which means it's approximately 360degrees . this means that because there are 24 hours in a day , every 15 degrees you travel equals approximately one hour.
- That there are seven continents, six if you combine Europe and Asia into Eurasia. Technically, Europe is a peninsula to the continent of Asia.
- That the world is divided into two sets of hemispheres: northern and southern and eastern and western.
- That the world is divided into five major climatic zones (beginning from north to south):
 - North polar zone (north of Arctic circle)
 - North Temperate zone (between Tropic of cancer and Arctic circle)
 - Tropical zone (between tropic of cancer and Arctic circle)
 - South Temperate Zone (between Tropic of Capricorn and Antarctic circle)
 - South polar zone (south of the Antarctic circle)
- That water covers approximately 70% of the earth. The world's largest ocean is the pacific . The greatest depth in an ocean is 36,198 ft/11,033 m and is located in the pacific around Guam. The Red sea is saltier than the world's oceans.
- That there are numerous island chains throughout the world in various areas such as the Caribbean, south pacific west pacific, and Indian ocean. Some of these islands are clustered in ground and called archipelagoes. An example of an archipelago is The Philippines.
- That the world's largest country in size is Russia; the largest in population is China.

- That the world's highest mountains are found in the Asian Himalayan chain .
- That crossing the international date line affects clients in two major ways : they want to sleep at noon and are wide awake at midnight, and they are constipated. This occurs because of the lack of water, physical inactivity, and eating too much on the very long flights
- The bodies of water tend to make the land masses next to them more moderate in temperature than further than further inland. An example of this is in the los Angeles area On a given summer day, the temperature along the beach is generally cooler than in miles/ 8.5km inland.
- That cyclones, hurricanes, and typhoons are basically the same thing. They are just called different names in different parts of the world.
- That most of the world's population lives in about 10% of the land mass.
- That the Sahara is the world's largest. It is about the size of the united states.
- That fronts are large of warm or cold air when a cold front meets a warm front, generally rain, snow and clouds occur.
- That the world's largest lake and inland body of water is the Caspian sea. It is located on the borders of Uzbekistan and Kazakhstan along Europe and Asia.

Terms and definitions

Although you will not use each of the following terms on a regular basis, it is important to have a general understanding of these terms when talking to clients and applying them to selling destination.

Knowing their meanings will make your life simpler, more professional, and increase your sales, because it will make your life simpler, more professional, and increase your sales, because it will be easier to explain where clients are going and what type of terrain and whether they can expect

- Antipodes- points which are located directly opposite on the earth's diameter from each other; for example, Australia to England.
- Atoll- A horseshoe-shaped or circular coral reef that encloses a lagoon.
- Barrier Reef –a coral reef which are located off shore and lying parallel to the land which may have wide openings in it. Often the water between the continental land and the reef islands is quite deep.
- Beaufort wind scale developed by admiral sir Francis beau fort in 1805 to measure and differentiate wind strength and speeds, the scale ranges from 0 (claim wind) to 12(above 75 miles/121 km per hour winds)
- Celsius –used when referring to degrees in centigrade temperature. It is preferred to refer to 18 degree centigrade as 18 degree Celsius.

- Centigrade-the metric system of measuring temperatures in which 0 degrees is freezing and 100degrees is boiling. A quick and fairly accurate way to determine from Fahrenheit centigrade, double the centigrade and add approximately 32. As Fahrenheit temperature approach 100 degree, and 34 or35 get closer to the truth. Basically anything over 25 degrees C is starting to get hot; 40 degrees C and higher is Sahara type weather; bring out the coats at 5 degrees C and lower.
- Cold deserts- a name given to barren areas such as polar and tundra regions.
- Continental divide-a ridge of ground running in an irregular, north-south direction through the rocky mountains, and separating the eastward-flowing to the east empty in to the Atlantic ocean or gulf of Mexico; those flowing to the west empty into the pacific ocean
- Currents-the continuous onward movement of a fluid or wind.
- Cyclone-a storm or system of winds that rotates around a center of low atmospheric pressure and advances at 20 to 30 miles/32 to 48 km an hour. Also called hurricanes and typhoons
- Delta- fan-shaped, generally fertile land at the end of rivers where it enters a large body of water; for example, the Nile and Mississippi rivers. This is way when you fly over the mouth of the Mississippi rivers, it is brown for miles out into the gulf of Mexico.
- Fjord- long narrow inlet of the sea usually enclosed by steep cliffs, and usually caused by erosion of glaciers which have moved seaward. There are many fjords in Norway, southern Chile and Argentina, and other countries along seas and oceans.
- Lapse rate-the term used to describe the condition of the temperature dropping 3.5 degrees F/1.5 degree C for every 1,000ft/305 m in elevation from sea level
- Leeward- the “protected from the wind” side of a mountain or other geographical area. The leeward side of a mountain (or the leeward islands located in the Caribbean) generally receives less rain is less tropical than the windward side and opposite to windword & leoword).
- Magnetic pole- there are two of them. The one we know best is located near prince of Wales island, Canada and is located about 1,000 miles/1,600 km from true north pole. The one located in the southern hemisphere is in Wilkes and, Antarctica, and is about 1,500 miles/2,400 km from the south pole.
- Moraines –Eroded material (rocks debris) which has been dumped at the base of glaciers.
- Piedmont – an area of foothills, such as the east-central united states.
- Prairies – vast areas of basically treeless grassland. Called prairies in north America, steppes in the C.I.S., pampas in Argentina, and velt/veld in Africa, prairies make great areas to raise livestock and grains.
- Rift valley – generally a long area of sunken land located between two parallel faults. The g5reat rift valley is 3,000 miles/4,830km long, and averages 25 miles/40 km wide, and stretches from Syria to east Africa. Some geologists claim it begins in the C.L.S. and ends in southern Africa. The part most familiar to travelers is in Kenya and Tanzania.
- Tsunami-anther name for a tidal wave. It’s caused by a submarine earthquake.
- Wadi –an Arabic term describing steep-sided rocky streams in a desert. They are all over the middle east, especially Jordan, and are great places to visit and wet only during rainy season.

Land and water: The general physical arrangement of the world is interesting. It also plays an important part in climate, culture, sightseeing attraction, and general temperament of the people . for example, countries in northern Europe, such as Norway, Denmark, and Germany, are often more industrious, organized, and cleaner than those located around the equator and in warmer climates such as the Caribbean and southern Europe.

Colder weather generally inspires more activity than hotter weather. A brief overview of some of the land and water arrangements of the world follows: continents, mountains, islands, seas and oceans, hemispheres, international date line, prime meridian, and the equator.

Continents: A continent is a large, unbroken land mass, such as north America and Europe. We often include in it’s definition that that it is totally surrounded by water. This definition of being surrounded by water often is not true.

Look at the continents of Europe and Asia each are not surrounded by water. Continents make up 99 percent of the land mass of the earth. The earth’s surface is approximately 30 percent land. And the land masses include the seven continents listed below by size.

Asia

17,336,000 sq miles/44,900,000sq km

The world’s largest continent, Asia is bordered by the arctic ocean on the north, Europe and the Mediterranean sea on the west, the India ocean on the south, and the pacific ocean on the east.

It includes all of the countries located east of a line from the northern part of the Ural mountains to the Caspian sea and the Thrace or western or European part of turkey; plus it includes the island of Cyprus, and all countries bordering the eastern edge of all countries bordering the eastern edge of the Mediterranean sea, including most of turkey

Africa

11,0708,000sq miles/30,300,000sq km

Bordered by the Mediterranean sea on the north, the Atlantic ocean on the west, and the India ocean on the east, Africa includes all countries located on the continent

of Africa; additionally, it includes the Atlantic island of Cape Verde and the Canary Islands, and the Indian Ocean islands of Madagascar, Réunion, Mauritius, Comoros, Zanzibar, and the Seychelles.

North America

9,600,000 sq miles/ 24,900,000 sq km

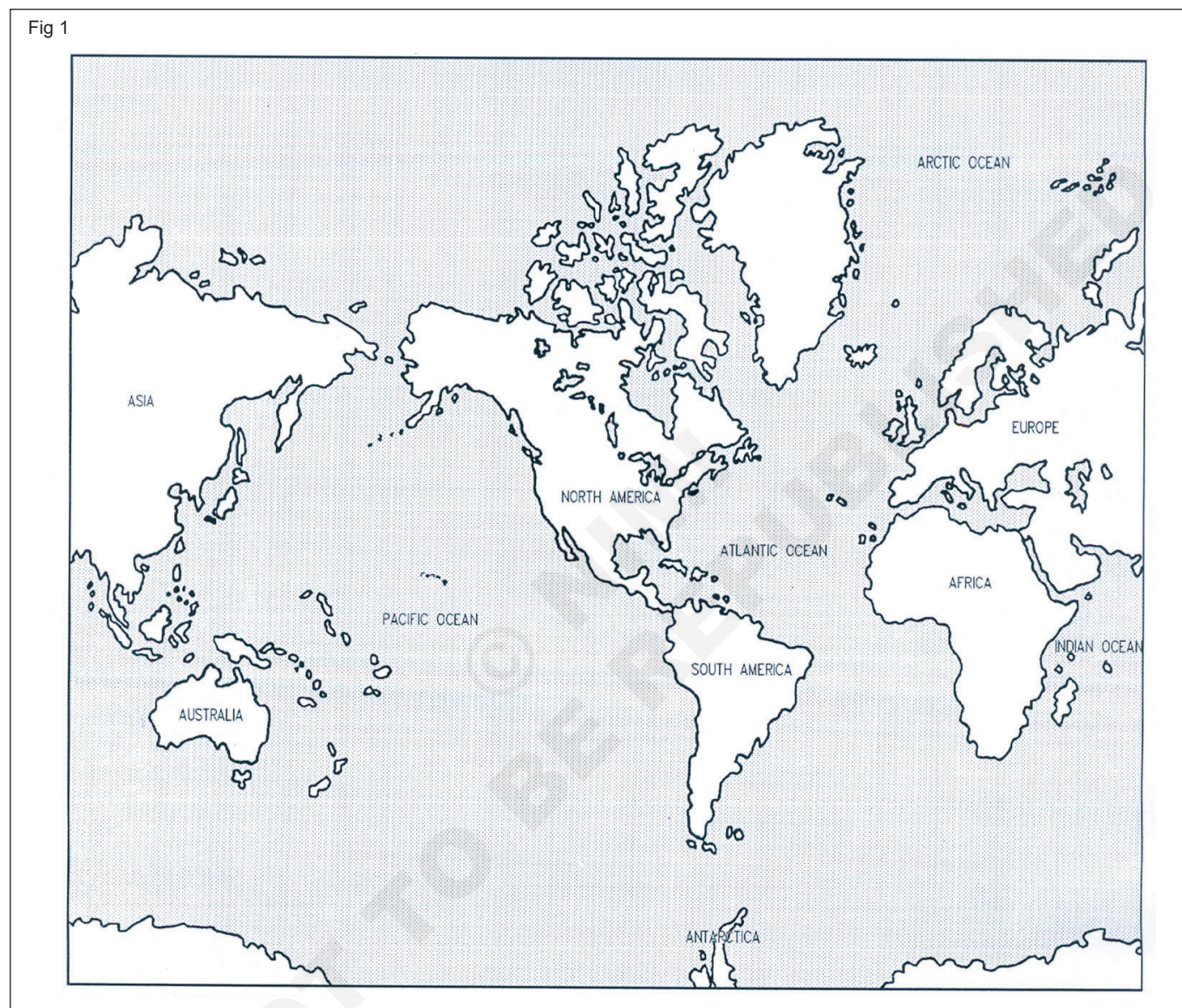
Bordered by the Arctic Ocean to the north, the Pacific Ocean on the west, the Atlantic Ocean on the east, and

barely connected to South America to the south, North America includes Greenland (Kalaallit Nunaat), Canada, the United States, Mexico, Central America, Bermuda, the Bahamas, and Caribbean islands.

South America

6,772,000 sq miles/ 17,540,000 sq km

Continents and Oceans



Bordered by the Caribbean Sea to the north, the Pacific Ocean on the west, the Atlantic Ocean on the east, and the Drake Passage on the south, South America is bordered by the Galapagos Islands and the Falkland Islands/ Islas Malvinas.

Antarctica

5,000,000 sq miles/ 13,000,000 sq km

Approximately 2,700 miles/ 4,350 km across at its widest point, and located at the southern part of the globe, Antarctica is covered by an ice mass up to 1 mile/1.6 km thick. It is bordered by the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

Europe

4,036,000 sq miles/ 10,453,000 sq km

Even though Europe is the second-smallest continent, it has influenced the world disproportionately. Bounded by the Arctic Ocean to the north, the Mediterranean and Black Seas to the south, the Atlantic Ocean to the west, and Asia to the east, it consists of Iceland, the Faeroe Islands, the United Kingdom, the Republic of Ireland, and all countries located west of a line from the northern part of the Ural Mountains to the Caspian Sea, and the Thrace or western European part of Turkey.

Australia

2,968,000, sq miles / 7,687,000, sq km

Both a continent and a single country, Australia is bordered by Timor and the Arafura sea on the north, the Indian ocean and Tasman sea on the east; it includes the country of Tasmania, and the islands in the Bass Strait, King Island and the Furneaux Island

Note: Often the term Eurasia is used to describe the large land mass surrounded by water called Europe and Asia

Mountains

Sixty-two of the world's highest mountains are located in Asia, primarily in the countries of India, Nepal, Tibet, and Pakistan. Throughout the world are numerous major mountain ranges. Some of the prominent ones include:

- **Andes**- the dramatic Andes are found stretching in a north-south direction along the western part of South America. Their highest mountain, Aconcagua, is 23,034 ft/7,021 m and located on the Argentine / Chile border. The Andes offer great skiing, spectacular jagged peaks such as the Paine Towers National Park (Chile) and phenomenal river rafting.
- **Alps**- the rather small, but impressive Alps run an east-west direction in central Europe. They offer excellent skiing, hiking, and a great place to relax. Although most of the highest Alps are found in France, Europe's highest mountain, Mt. Elbrus (18,481 ft/5,600 m), is located in the Caucasus mountains.
- **Himalayas** or the Himalayan- this mountain range including the world's highest mountains and stretches in a general east-west direction in the southwestern part of the Asian continent. This range offers spectacular scenery, ancient cultures, and great trekking possibilities and their religious places.
- **Rockies**- although they do not compete with the world's highest mountains, these North American mountain ranges stretch the entire length of the continent in a north-south direction in the western part of the continent. They are called the Sierra Madres when they enter Mexico

Islands : There are many groups or collection of islands located everywhere on earth, from the pole to the south pole. Some of these groups of islands often cover large areas and have common elements such as culture, terrain, and climate they include:

- **Oceania**- this is the term referring to the more than 30,000 islands of the central and southern parts of the Pacific Ocean. They generally consist of two types: atolls (formed by coral) and volcanic. The major groups include:

Hawaii- Hawaii stretches from the southern tip of the big island Hawaii to Kure Island, excluding Midway. Technically, Hawaii is located in Polynesia.

Polynesia- Hawaii is included in these islands, which are located in the central and southern part of the Pacific Ocean. The word Polynesia means many islands. The Polynesian islands are found in a triangle connecting

the points of Easter Island, Hawaii, and usually New Zealand. Characteristics of the Polynesian people are generally light skin, tall stature, and black hair

Micronesia- meaning small islands, the area of Micronesia includes islands stretching northeast of Melanesia, from the western edge island of Palau to the eastern border of Kiribati, the Marshalls down to Nauru. Characteristics of the Micronesians are generally straight black hair and copper-colored skin.

Melanesia- meaning the black island (after the color of the people), Melanesia consists of those islands in the southwest Pacific stretching from the western-edge island of New Guinea (which is divided into two areas, Irian Jaya and Papua New Guinea) to New Caledonia and Fiji. Characteristics of the Melanesians are generally frizzy hair and dark skin

- **Caribbean or the Antilles** – the Caribbean or Antilles islands include those islands rimming the Caribbean sea, beginning with the north-west island of Cuba to Anguilla on the east south to Trinidad and Margarita Island, west to San Andres Island and north to Cuba. The greater Antilles consists of the islands of Cuba, Jamaica, Hispaniola and Puerto Rico; the lesser Antilles includes all of the other Caribbean islands. The people are a mixture of Carib and Amerindians, black-skinned people from Africa, and most nationalities of the world.
- **Bahamas**- the Bahamas encompasses more than 2,700 islands, located just east and south east of Florida and north of Cuba and Haiti. The people are a mixture of African blacks and Europe
- **Seychelles** – the Seychelles (pronounced SAY shells) include approximately 100 islands ranging from mountainous to flat, and are located in the Indian Ocean approximately 1,000 miles/ 1600 km east of Kenya. The people are a mixture of Indian, Asian, European, and African black
- **Maldives**- the Maldives (pronounced MALL dive) islands include more than 2,000 coral islands, stretching in a north-south direction southwest of India in the Indian Ocean. The population is a mixture of primarily Asian and European people.

Seas And Oceans

The term seas has two meanings: the generic name for all the salt water in the world, and more specifically, it means the smaller divisions of oceans, such as the South China Sea in the Pacific Ocean.

An ocean is any one of the four divisions of the vast expanse of salt water that covers the greater part of the globe's surface. Seas and oceans generally travel in a clockwise direction in the northern hemisphere, and in a counter-clockwise direction in the southern hemisphere.

We doubt a client will ever ask you which are the deepest and shallowest oceans, but just for fun, they are Pacific 36,198 ft/ 11,033 m and the Arctic 3,953 ft/ 1,205 m. There is no Antarctic ocean and four seas in order of size are:

Pacific Ocean

64,000,000, sq miles/ 165,760,000 sq km

Atlantic Ocean

31,815,000 sq miles/ 82,400,000 sq km

Indian Ocean

25,300,000 sq miles/ 65,526, 700 sq km

Arctic Ocean

5,440,200 sq miles/ 14.090,000 sq km

Mediterranean Sea

1,145,100 sq miles/ 2,965,800 sq km

Caribbean Sea

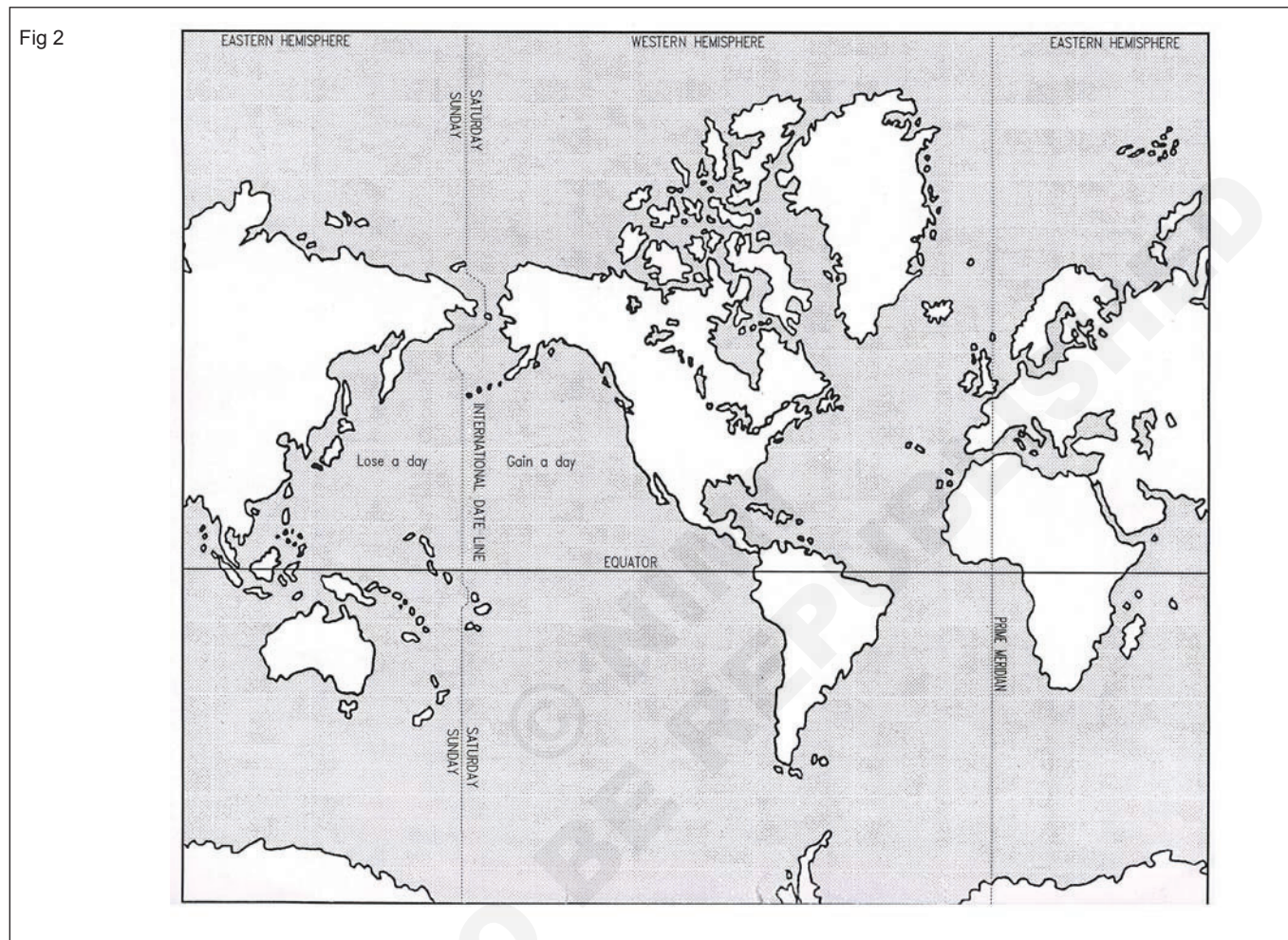
1,049,500 sq miles/ 2,718,200 sq km

South China Sea

895,400 sq miles/ 2,319,000 sq km

Bering sea

884,900 sq miles/ 2,291,900 sq km

**Importance of geography in tourism****Objectives:** At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- meaning and concept of resources, attractive destinations and resorts
- basic knowledge of indian and world geography
- gather knowledge about different region of India.

Meaning of tourism and international tourist

Tourism in its modern form is not the same as travels of the early of human history. In the language of Jews, the Word 'Torah' was means study or search and 'tour' seems to have been derived from it. In 'Latin' the original word 'Tornos' stands close to it.

'Tornos' was a kind of round wheel-like tool hinting at the idea of a travel circuit or a package tour. In Sanskrit, 'Paryatan' means leaving one's residence to travel for the sake of rest and for seeking knowledge. 'Deshatan' is another word which means travelling for economic benefits.

'Tirthatan' is the third equivalent which means travelling for religious purposes. All the three words convey the meaning and concept of tourism much more appropriately.

Tourism resources : Tourism resources could be defined as those factors that make it possible to produce a tourism experience and include:

- Tangible resources (facilities, attractions, infrastructure, etc.)
- Intangible resources (image, reputation, culture, etc.)
- Human resources (skills, motivations, service levels, etc.)
- Financial resources

Tourism is dependent upon the attractive power of the destination's primary resources:

- Natural resources (climate, landscape, ecosystems);
- Cultural resources (urban heritage, arts, archaeological values, traditions, sciences values, folk crafts and sub-cultural formation);
- Social resources (potential tourism developers with socio-demographic characteristics, abilities, financial capital, Knowledge, health-environment-property security system, local community interests etc.).

Moreover tourist destinations provide secondary resources;

- Accommodation sector (hotel, motel, camping, guest house etc.);
- Catering sector (cafe, restaurants, bistro etc.);
- Travel organization sector (agencies, tour operators etc.);
- Transportation sector (air, boat, train, bus, etc.);
- Entertainment sector (gambling, disco etc.);
- Information sector (tourism information network);
- Supplementary services, facilities and service infrastructure.

Attraction : A tourist attraction is a place of interest where tourists visit, typically for its inherent or exhibited natural or cultural value, historical significance, natural or built beauty, offering leisure, adventure and amusement.

Resort : A resort is a place used for relaxation or recreation, attracting visitors for vacations and/or tourism. Resorts are places, towns or sometimes commercial establishment operated by a single company.

Different region of india

North East : Northeast India refers to the easternmost region of India consisting of the contiguous Seven Sister states, Sikkim, and parts of North Bengal (districts of Darjeeling, Jalpaiguri, and Koch Bihar). In the far northeast, the Chin Hills and Kachin Hills, deeply forested mountainous regions, separate India from Myanmar.

The Bangladesh-India border is defined by the Khasi Hills and Mizo Hills, and the watershed region of the Indo-Gangetic plain. The Patkai, or Purvanchal, are situated near India's eastern border with Myanmar, made up of the Patkai-Bum, the Garo-Khasi-Jaintia and the Lushai hills.

The Garo-Khasi range lies in maghalaya. Mawsynram, a village near cherrapunji, located on the windward side of these hills, has the distinction of being the wettest place in the world.

Central : Vindhyachal mountain range defines central India, located as they are almost in the middle part of India sub-continent. The mountain range of Vindhyachal extends from the state of Gujarat to Bihar, passing through the central India states of Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh.

Sonabhadra and Narmada rivers originate from the Vindhyachal, the mountain range that divides India or Bharat into two distinct halves: northern India and peninsular India.

South : India reaches its peninsular tip with South India, which begins with the Deccan in the north and ends with Kanyakumari. The states in South India are Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, and Kerala. The southeast coast, mirroring the west, also rests snugly beneath a mountains range-----the Eastern Ghats, sloping down to the India Ocean.

West : The states of Gujarat, Maharashtra, Goa, and part of the massive, central state of Madhya Pradesh constitute Western India. Extending from the Gujarat peninsula down to Goa, the west coast is lined with some of India's best beaches. The land along the coast is typically lush with rainforests.

The Western Ghats separate the verdant coast from the Vindhya Mountains and the dry Deccan plateau further inland. Apart from the Arabian sea, its western border is defined exclusively by Pakistan.

North : Himalayas, the world's highest mountain chain and Nepal as its neighbouring country, dominate India's northern border. Following the sweeping mountains to the northeast, its borders narrow to a small channel that passes between Nepal, Tibet, Bangladesh, and Bhutan, then spreads out again to meet Burma in the "eastern triangle".

North India is the country's largest region begins with Jammu and Kashmir, with terrain varying from arid mountains in the far north to the lush country and forests near Srinagar and Jammu. Moving south along the Indus river, the North becomes flatter and more hospitable, widening into the fertile plains of Punjab to the west and the Himalayan foothills of Uttar Pradesh and the Ganges river valley to the East. Located between these two states is the capital city, Delhi.

East : India is the home of the sacred River Ganges and the majority-of Himalayan foothills, East India begins with the states of Bihar, Orissa and West Bengal, which comprise the westernmost part of the region.

East India also contains an area known as the eastern triangle, which is entirely distinct. This is the last area of land that extends beyond Bangladesh, culminating in the Naga Hills along the Burmese border.

Seasonality of India tourism places

Summer (March to May) : India starts heating up from around February, first in the northern plains and then the rest of the country. By April many places experience daily temperatures exceeding 40 degrees Celsius (105 degrees Fahrenheit). It stays cooler in the southern parts of the country, with temperatures reaching around 35 degrees Celsius (95 degrees Fahrenheit), although it's a lot more humid.

In late May, signs of the approaching monsoon start appearing. Humidity levels build, and there are thunderstorms and dust storms.

The most tiring thing about summer in India is that the heat is so relentless. Day after day the weather doesn't change--it's always extremely hot, sunny, and dry.

- Place to Visit in India During the Summer Season
While the summer, it's the perfect time for visiting the mountains and hill stations. The air there is fresh and soothing. If you're into seeing wildlife and spotting tigers in their natural environment, the summer is also the best time to visit India's National Park as the animals all come out of the thickets in search for water in the heat.

Monsoon (June to October) : India actually has two monsoons--the southwest monsoon and the northeast monsoon. The southwest monsoon, which is the main monsoon, comes in from the sea and starts making its way up India's west coast in early June. By mid July, most of the country is covered in rain. This gradually starts clearing from most places in northwest India by October.

The northeast monsoon affects India's east coast during November and December. It's a short but intense monsoon. The states of Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, and Kerala receive most of their rainfall from the northeast monsoon, while the rest of the country receives most of its rainfall from the southwest monsoon.

- Place to Visit in India during the Monsoon Season:
It's difficult to travel throughout most of India during

monsoon time as the rain often disrupts transport service. However, it's the best time to visit popular but isolated Ladakh in the far north, as the roads leading there don't clear of snow and open up until June. This is just one of many great destinations for monsoon travel in India.

Winter (November to February) : This disappearance of the monsoon marks the start of clear sunny skies, as well as the start of the tourist season, for most of India. Daytime winter temperatures are comfortable, although often quite chilly at night.

In the south, it never gets cold. This is in complete contrast to the freezing temperatures experienced in India's far north, around the Himalaya region.

Places to Visit in India During the Winter Season is the time to visit the beaches in India, and many people flock to relax and party on the long strip of beaches in Goa. India's far south is also best enjoyed in winter, with December to February being the only really good months to travel there.

Travelling to the desert state of Rajasthan during the winter, to avoid the searing summer temperatures is a better idea. The Himalaya mountains in winter will be covered with snow.

World Geography

Continents : Continents make up the largest landmasses on the planet Earth. A continent is larger than an island and is usually made up of multiple countries. There are seven continents in the world although some people do combine Europe and Asia into the single continent Eurasia and others combine North and South America into the American continent.

While Africa is first alphabetically, it is second as far as population and size among the Earth's continents. About 1 billion people live in the 54 countries in Africa. This is about 15 percent of the world's population living on 20 percent of the total land area. The equator passes through the center of the continent with largely tropical climates.

The northern and southern portion of Africa have more temperate conditions. Africa is also noted as the birthplace of mankind. The oldest fossil evidence of Homo sapiens was found in the eastern part of the continent. Learn more about the continent of Africa.

Antarctica : Antarctica holds a number of firsts among the continents of Earth. The continent is the most southern of the seven continents and includes the South Pole. It is also the least populated with less than 5,000 residents. Antarctica is known as the coldest landmass and has few native plants or animals. Much of the landmass is covered with permanent glaciers. Learn more about the continent of Antarctica.

Asia : Asia covers nearly 9 percent of the Earth's surface making it the largest of the continents. It is also the home to the people with an estimated population of 4.3 billion. Asia is defined as the eastern portion of

the Eurasia continent with the Ural river and mountains serving line with Europe.

Asia contains some of the oldest civilization in the world including the Chinese and Japanese nation. The continents large population makes it an important part of the world economy. Asia includes the manufacturing centers of India and Japan and Hong Kong, which is a leading banking and corporate headquarter center. Learn more about the continent of Asia.

Australia : The continent of Australia includes the mainland of the country Australia and the island nations of New Guinea, Tasmania and Seram. During ice ages, when much of the world's water was frozen in glaciers, the Australian mainland was connected by land bridges to these islands.

Australia has a wide variety of animals and plants many of which are unique in the world. The continent first was inhabited by man nearly 45,000 years ago. European inhabitants came onto the Australian landmass in the 1700s. Australia is the most isolated and remote of the

continents and been least influenced by migrations of people, plants and animals. Learn more about the continent of Australia.

Europe : The western portion of the Eurasian continents is known as Europe. It is noted as one of the smallest of the continents, with 7 percent of the world's landmass. However, Europe is home to about 11% of Earth's population, and it is second most densely populated, with 134 people per square mile, behind Asia's 203 people per square mile. Europe by definition, includes the continental mainland ending in the east at the Ural Mountains in Russia.

Europe also includes islands such as Iceland and Sicily, and the islands of the British Isles consist of the large island that is home to England, Scotland, and Wales, and is called Great Britain; the British island also include the small island that contains Northern Ireland and the Republic of Ireland, and several much smaller surrounding islands. People have been living in Europe for about 100,000 years.



Around 2000 B.C, Indo-European settlers came and brought the language that 'most modern European languages are descended from. The ancient Greek and Roman civilizations flourished there, from which we get much of our learning and culture. In the 5th and 6th centuries, the Germanic tribes swept over most of Europe, and their descendants shaped the modern countries of Scandinavia, and west and central Europe.

By this time the Roman Empire had become Christian, and eventually all of Europe became Christian, for

reasons of both faith and economics. Many diverse and interesting elements went into shaping the Europe that we know today. Learn more about the continent of Europe.

North America : The North American continent includes the Latin American regions that serve as a connection between North and South America. North America makes up about 17 percent of the world's landmass and is home to about 8 percent of the people. This

population of about 529 million people live in about 23 independent countries.

The earliest human inhabitants in North America were from Asia and crossed into Alaska over the Bering land Bridge during an ice age. The arrival of Europeans occurred in the mid 1600s. This population is now dominant in North America. Learn more about the continent of North America.

South America : The south American continent is the southern portion of the larger American continent. The equator passes through the continent yielding a tropical climate to much of the landmass with temperate conditions possible in the south.

The indigenous people of South America may have migrated south from North America although the majority of its current 371 million residents are of European descent.

Climate variations, climatic regions of world, study of maps, longitude and latitude, time international date line difference

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- state the climate variation and international date line difference.

Climate variations: Earth climate has changed throughout from the past history and the beginning of modern climate era and human civilisation.

Climatic regions: There are around 8 climate regions of the world

- a Tropical humid
- b Tropical wet & dry
- c Arid
- d Semiarid
- e Mediterranean
- f Marine west coast
- g Humid subtropical
- h Polar etc

Hemisphere: It's important to know about the various hemispheres because they will help you understand why the seasons in south Africa are opposite to north America. The words hemisphere means half sphere. The world is divided into two sets of hemispheres: western and eastern and northern and southern . the western hemisphere and the eastern hemisphere are divided by imaginary lines called the international date line and prime meridian.

Western hemisphere-land area included in the western hemisphere here are:

- North America
- South America
- Caribbean area
- Oceania (pacific islands located east of the International Date Line)
- Parts of Antarctica

Eastern hemisphere – land area included in the eastern hemisphere are:

- Europe
- Africa

The population bases are largely along pacific coasts with large portion of the inland regions hosting small and widely spread populations. South America includes the Andes Mountains which comprise the longest range of peaks in the world.

The continent is home to llamas and alpacas that originally were wild but become domesticated nearly 5,000 years ago. Colonization efforts by Spanish and Portuguese explorers ultimately lead to the prevalence of those language on the South American continent. Learn more the continent of South America.

Africa: Africa is the worlds second largest and second populous continent in the world. It covers almost 6-7% on earth surface area. It has shortest coast line. It houses largest dessert "Sahara" and the largest river "Nile". It contain "54" countries is Africa as per U.N report.

- Asia
- Australia
- New Zealand
- Oceania (pacific island located west of the International Date Line)
- Parts of Antarctica

Northern hemisphere- land areas included in the northern hemisphere:

- North America
- Northern part of South America
- Europe
- Asia
- Northern part of Africa

Southern hemisphere- land areas included in the southern hemisphere:

- The greater part of south America
- Southern part of Africa
- Australia
- New Zealand
- Parts of Oceania (south pacific islands)

Antarctica

North, South, And Magnetic Poles

At the top and bottom of the earth are located the north and south poles. They are extremely cold year round (although their summer is almost bearable), ice covered throughout the year, and offer a great challenge for those wanting to visit them. Numerous tour programs travel there (primarily the north pole) there are two magnetic poles the one most familiar to Americans is

located near Prince of Wales Island, Canada, and about 1,000 miles/ 1,600 km south west from true north pole.

The one located in the southern hemisphere is about 1,500 miles/ 2,400 km from the south pole in Wilkes Land, the Australian part of Antarctica. When a client asks you how many hours ahead or behind a particular destination is, you will generally ask your computer reservation system (CRS) rather than get an international time zones map and calculate.

It is interesting to understand how time zones originated, the definitions of the 24 hour clock, why we have it, and what part all of these play in travel. In order to first understand the concept of time we have to first understand the words "latitude" and "longitude"

Latitudes: Latitude, or parallels of latitude, are parallel distance measured in divisions of degrees north or south of the equator, which is 0 degree. 90 degree south latitude equals approximately 70 miles/ 113 km. For example, Houston, Texas, and Cairo, Egypt, are basically on the same latitude

Longitudes: Longitude, or meridians of longitudes, are angular distances measured in division of degrees east and west of 0 degree, or prime meridian or Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). They run from pole to pole starting at the prime meridian, where the measurement of time, or GMT, begins. Fifteen degrees is determined by dividing the 24 hours that are in a day into the 360 degrees of the global shape of the earth.

As you go east of the prime meridian, you add degrees east, beginning with 0 degree until you reach 180, or the international date line. As you go west, you add degrees west beginning with 0 degrees until you reach 180 degrees, or longitude and one directly across the international date line. Two meridians, one at 0 degrees longitude and have name and are important to date line.

For example: Anchorage, Alaska, and Moorea, French Polynesia, are nearly the same longitude.

- **Prime Meridian-** The prime meridian is an imaginary line at 0 degrees longitude which begins at the north pole, runs directly over the village of Greenwich, England, and ends at the south pole. It is also located on the opposite side of the globe from the international date line.
- **Time Zones-** The standard time zone system is fixed by international agreement and by law in each country. There are 24 meridians around each country. There are 24 meridians around the globe as well as approximately 24 time zones. Based on the theoretical division of the globe into 24 zones of 15 degrees longitude, each time zone generally increases or decreases one hour for each 15 degrees you travel. The meridian is located in the center of its time zone, and fixes the hour for the entire zone system. Adopt the zone applicable to their location. Some countries, such as Nepal and Australia, and the state of Alaska, establish time zones based on political boundaries or convenience.

This is perfectly acceptable. Look at illustration 2 and note that various time zones jog in and out of the true meridian or longitude.

- **International Date Line-** The international date line (IDL) is an imaginary line that runs from the north pole through the Pacific Ocean at 180 degrees longitude/ meridian, to the south pole. This man-made and man-determined line represents the meeting of the hours east and west of Greenwich Mean Time (GMT). The east side of the line is 24 hours behind the west side of the line.
- **Greenwich Mean Time:** The time zone at the prime or Greenwich meridian is the point at which "time begins" it is known as it is known as Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) since the earth rotates toward the east. Time zones to the west of GMT are earlier to the east they are later when you notice on television that a particular program will air at 8 p.m. Eastern/ 7 p.m. Central it is because the east coast is one meridian closer to GMT than the central part of the country. Plus and minus hours as shown in time charts, maps, and world time schedules are added to or subtracted from local time to find Greenwich which time local standard time can be determined for any area in the world by adding one hour for each time zone counted in an easterly direction from one's own or by subtracting one hour for each time zone in a westerly direction.
- **Universal Coordinated Time (Uct) Or Universal Time Coordinated (Utc):** Many countries such as Brazil, no longer officially use GMT. These countries accept universal coordinated time (UTC) or universal time coordinated (UTC) located in France, UTC is considered more accurate than GMT.
- **Zulu Time:** Z time, or Zulu time refers to GMT. Both are terms used by the military, the travel industry and in many computer and communications systems.
- **Time Chart:** The international time chart is reprinted from a standard travel reference, the Europe edition of the travel planner, and lists the countries of the world with their time zones. Note that it refers to the various time zones with the "+s" and "-s" from GMT, meaning each time zone is so many time zones ahead or behind Greenwich, "where time begins."

Note how the time zone line zig zag in certain areas. This is where the countries have established their own time zones based on political boundaries or adopted the time zones based on political boundaries or adopted the time zone of a neighboring unit. Use the international time chart to understand the following examples.

GMT is on the prime meridian and is zero (0) hours. Eastern Standard Time (EST) is minus five (-5), meaning when it is 12:00 noon in Greenwich it is five hours earlier, or 7: a.m. in New York.

Locate Italy on the international time chart, and note that Italy is a plus one (+1) from GMT. Therefore, when

it is 12:00 noon in Greenwich, it is 10 hours earlier, or 2:00a.m in Honolulu Melbourne, Australia, is show as +10. Therefore, when GMT is 12:00 noon, it is 10 hours later, or 10:00 p.m in Melbourne. However, is it 10:00 p.m on the same day? In this example.

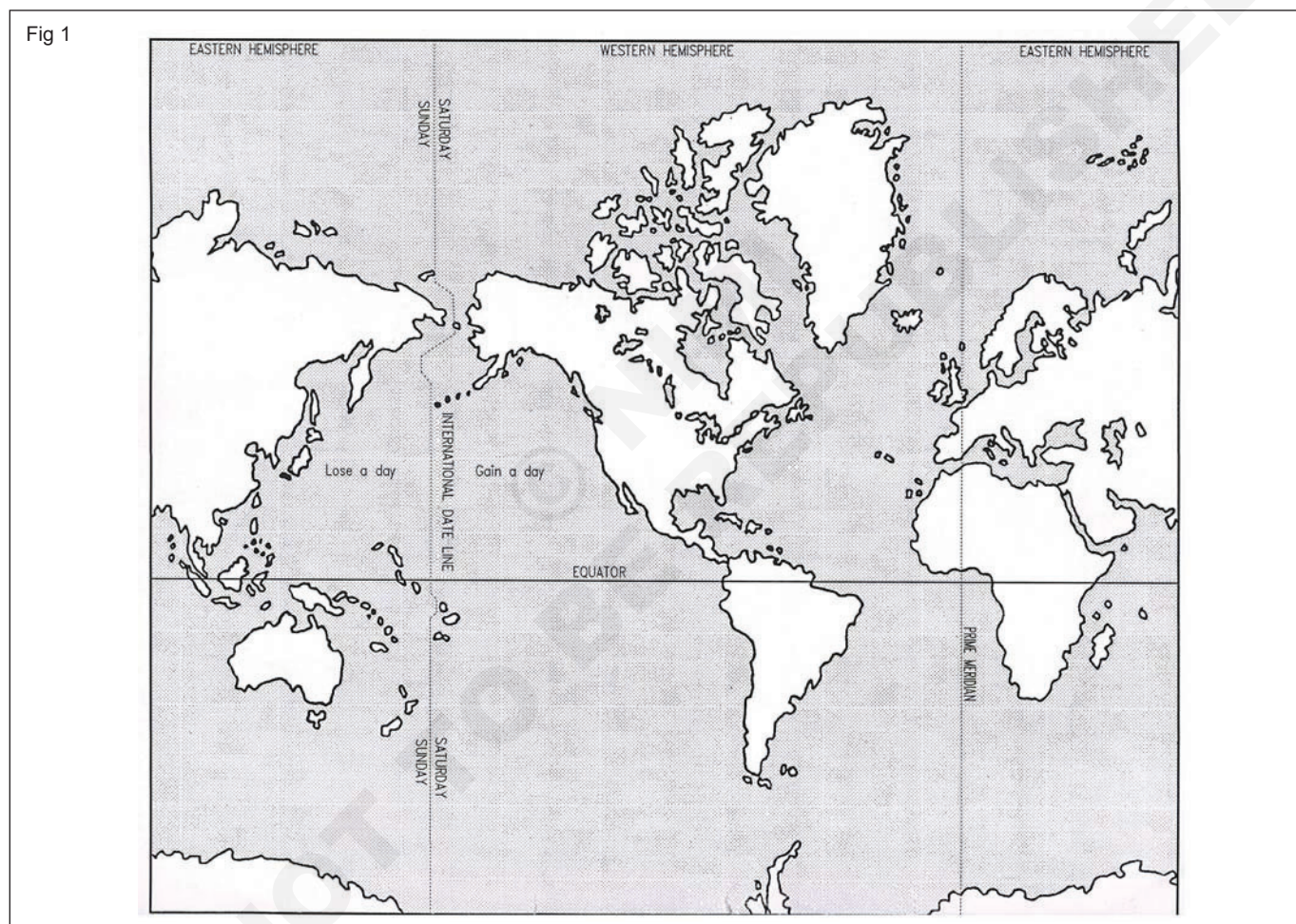
New York city is in a time show as -5 therefore, when GMT is 12:00 noon, it is 7:00a.m in new York city. If Melbourne, Australia, is shown as a +10 from GMT then Melbourne is 15 hours ahead of New York. Add the +5 hours from New York City to GMT to the +10 hours from GMT to the +10 hours from GMT to Melbourne

- **Daylight Saving Time-** You not only have to del with the relationships of time zones to GMT, and days and dates in relation to travel across the IDL, but to further complicate matters, different countries and states go to daylight saving time at different times of the year.

For example: In most of the united states, daylight saving time is observed from April to October, while in the Falkland Islands, it is observed from September to April.

- **Twenty- Four Hour Clock-** Flight schedules in the worldwide official airline guide in most foreign time tables, and many computer times are show in a 24-hour clock time the 24-hour clock is utilized in the military and is sometimes referred to as military time. Take a look at the clock and note that each position on the clock has two designations (l. e. 1200 and 2400). Twelve o'clock can mean twelve noon, or it can be midnight. On the 24-hours clock, twelve noon is shown as 1200 (and spoken as twelve hundred) and twelve midnight is shown as 2400 (and spoken as twenty- four hundred).

World Time Zone - Map



Note: midnight is shown in some systems as 0000.

Look again at the clock. Note that the 1:00 position is 0100 (said 0-one hundred) in the inner circle, denoting a.m time and shown as 1300 (said thirteen hundred) on the outer circle, denoting p.m time the formula for calculating the 24- hour clock follows:

One o'clock in the afternoon is twelve hours later than one o'clock in the morning:

0100 (1:00a.m.)

+ 1200 hours later

1300 (1:00 p.m.), and is spoken as "thirteen hundred hours"

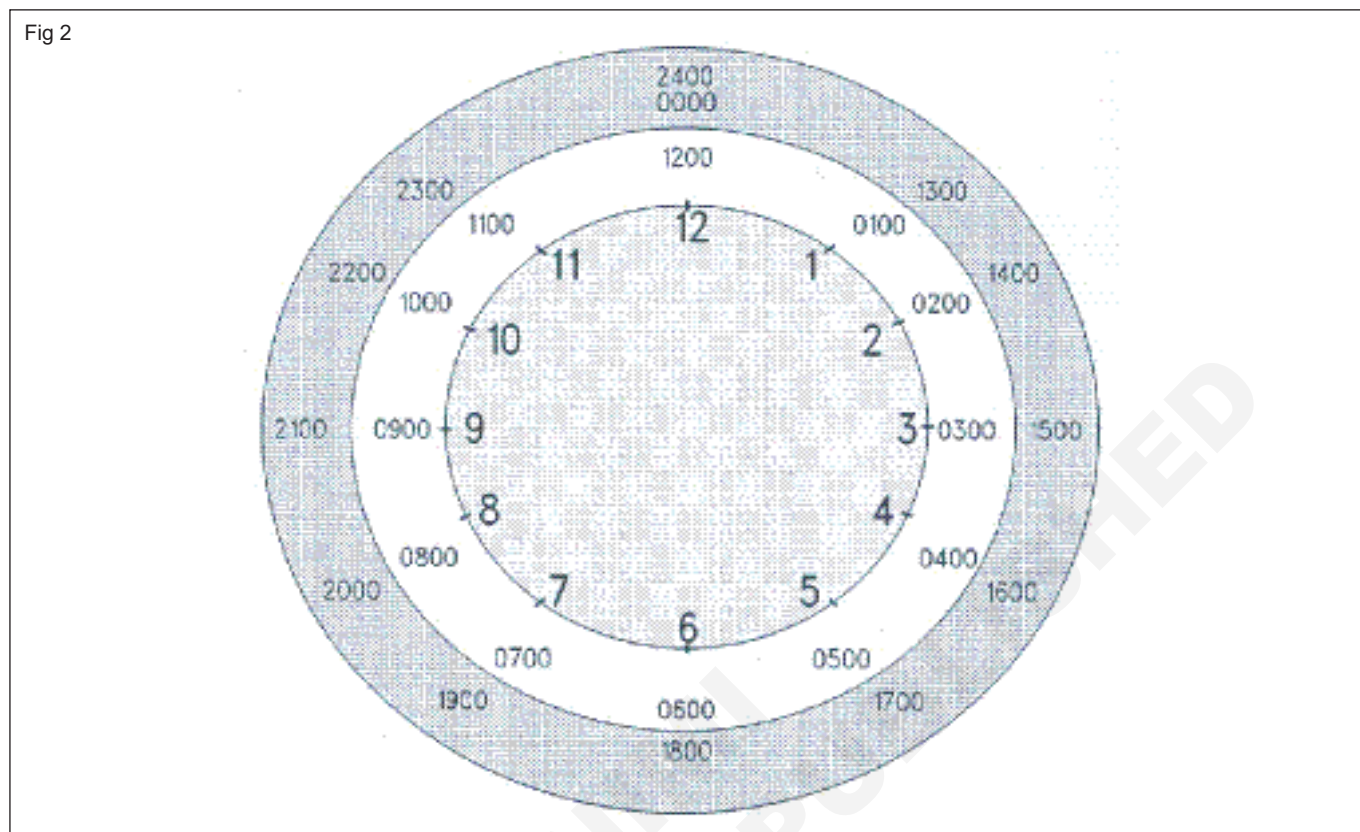
Each hour in the outer circle is twelve hours more than the hour in the inner circle. This system eliminates the a.m./ p.m. designation and provides a different figure for each hour and minute of the day.

Beginning with 0001 (one minute after midnight) the

day progresses through each hour and minute of the day from 0100 (1:00 a.m) to 2400 (midnight) minutes are indicated in the conventional way so that 2:20 p.m is shown as 1420 in the 24 hour system. Note that no colon (:) is used. However, computers have complicated

this some –what and some computers do show 1420 as 14:20.

International date line: Adding one day while travel in East direction and loose a day while travel on West direction.



Time Zones

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- understand the significance of time zones.

The International Date Line (IDL) explained

The International Date Line (IDL) is an imaginary line of longitude on the Earth's surface located at about 180 degrees east (or west) of the Greenwich Meridian.

The date line is shown as an uneven black vertical line in the Time Zone Map above and marks the divide where the date changes by one day. It makes some deviations from the 180-degree meridian to avoid dividing countries in two, especially in the Polynesia region.

The time difference between either side of the International Date Line is not always exactly 24 hours because of local time zone variations.

Interactive Time Zone Map : If you travel around the world, changing standard time by one hour each time you enter a new time zone, then a complete circuit would mean that you adjusted your clock or watch time by 24 hours. This would lead to a difference of one day between the date on your clock and the real calendar date.

To avoid this, countries are on either side of the International Date Line which runs down the middle of the Pacific ocean. If you cross the Date Line moving east you subtract a day whereas if you are moving west you add a day.

GMT vs UTC : The Greenwich Meridian is a north-south line selected as the zero-reference line for astronomical observations. The line in Greenwich in London, UK represents the world's prime meridian -longitude zero degrees. Every place on Earth is measured in terms of its distance east or west from this line.

The United Kingdom observes GMT only in the winter

The line divides the Earth's eastern and western hemispheres just as the equator divides the northern and southern hemispheres.

The Earth's crust moves very slightly on an ongoing basis so the prime meridian's exact position is also moving very slightly. However, the Prime meridian's original reference remains to be the Airy Transit Circle in the Royal Observatory in Greenwich, even if the exact location of the line may move to either side of the transit circle's meridian.

The Royal Observatory in Greenwich is the home to the time zone named Greenwich Mean Time GMT. This time zone was first adopted as the world's time standard at the Washington Meridian Conference in 1884. However, GMT is now loosely interchanged with UTC to refer to time kept on the Greenwich meridian (longitude zero).

International Date Line : The International Date Line around the antimeridian (180° longitude)

The **International Date Line (IDL)** is an imaginary line on the surface of the Earth that runs from the north to the south pole and demarcates the change of one calendar day to the next. It passes through the middle of the Pacific Ocean, roughly following the 180° longitude but deviating to pass around some territories and island groups

The IDL zigzags around the antimeridian, which is on the opposite side of the Earth to the Prime Meridian. The Prime Meridian is used to define Universal Time and is the meridian from which all other time zones are calculated.

Time zones to the east of the Prime Meridian are in advance of Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) (up to UTC+14) time zones to the west are behind UTC (to UTC-12). The IDL is the line between those highest (up to UTC+14) and those lowest (down to UTC-12) time zones.

The IDL and the moving point of midnight separate the two calendar days that are current somewhere on Earth. However, during a two-hour period between 10:00 and 11:59 (UTC) each day, three different calendar days are in use.

This is because of daylight saving in the UTC+12 zone and the use of additional date-shifted time zones in areas east of the 180th meridian. These additional time zones result in the standard time and date in some communities being 24 or 25 hours different from the standard time and date in others.

A traveler crossing the IDL eastbound subtracts one day, or 24 hours, so that the calendar date to the west of the line is repeated after the following midnight. Crossing the IDL westbound results in 24 hours being added, advancing the calendar date by one day. The IDL is necessary to have a fixed, albeit arbitrary, boundary on the globe where the calendar date advances in the westbound direction.

Example depicting situation at 04:00 GMT Tuesday. (Times are approximate, since time zone boundaries generally do not exactly coincide with meridians. Night and day is illustrative only; daylight hours depend on latitude and time of year.)

For parts of its length, the IDL follows the meridian of 180° longitude, roughly down the middle of the Pacific Ocean. To avoid crossing nations internally, the IDL deviates west around the US Aleutian Islands, separating them from islands in the far east of Russia, and further south, it deviates east around various island nations in the Pacific such as Kiribati, Samoa, Tonga and Tokelau. These various deviations, east or west, generally accommodate the political and/or economic affiliations of the affected areas.

Proceeding from north to south, the first deviation of the IDL from 180° is to pass to the east of Wrangel Island and the Chukchi Peninsula, the easternmost part of Russian Siberia. It then passes through the Bering Strait between the Diomed Islands at a distance of 1.5 km (1 mi) from each island.

It then bends considerably west of 180°, passing west of St. Lawrence Island and St. Matthew Island and finally

bisecting the Aleutian Islands between those belonging to the US - Attu Island being the westernmost - and the Commander Islands belonging to Russia. It then bends southeast again to return to 180°. Thus all of Russia is to the west of the IDL and all of the USA to the east.

Two uninhabited atolls, Howland Island and Baker Island, just north of the equator in the central Pacific Ocean (and ships at sea between 172.5°W and 180°) have the latest time on Earth of UTC-12 hours.

The IDL circumscribes Kiribati by swinging far to the east, almost reaching the 150° meridian. Kiribati's easternmost islands, the southern Line Islands south of Hawaii, have the most advanced time on Earth, UTC+14 hours.

South of Kiribati, it returns westwards but remains east of 180°, passing between Samoa and American Samoa accordingly, Samoa, Tokelau, Wallis and Futuna, Fiji, Tonga, Tuvalu and New Zealand's Kermadec Islands and Chatham Islands have the same date, while American Samoa, the Cook Islands, Niue, and French Polynesia are one day behind (The IDL then bends southwest to return to 180°)

A person who goes around the world from east to west (the same direction as Magellan's voyage) would lose one hour for every 15° of longitude crossed, and would lose 24 hours for one Circuit of the globe from east to west if they did not compensate by adding 24 hours when they crossed the IDL. Contrast, a west-to-east circumnavigation of the globe gains an hour for every 15° of longitude crossed and requires subtracting 24 hours when crossing the IDL.

The IDL must therefore be observed in conjunction with the Earth's time zones on crossing it in either direction, the calendar date is adjusted by one day.

For the two hours between 10:00 and 11:59 (UTC) each day, three different days are observed at the same time in different places. For example, at UTC time Thursday 10:15, it is Wednesday 23:15 in American Samoa, (UTC-11), and Friday 00:15 in Kiritimati (UTC+14).

For the first hour (UTC 10:00- 10:59), this is true for both inhabited and uninhabited territories, but during the second hour (UTC 11:00-11:59) it is only true in an uninhabited maritime time zone twelve hours behind UTC (UTC-12).

According to the clock, the first areas to experience a new day and a New Year are islands that use UTC+14, the Line Islands, and in the southern summer also Samoa. The first major city is Auckland, New Zealand.

The areas that are the first to see the daylight of a new day vary by the season. On 1 July, it is a large part of the Chukchi Peninsula, which uses UTC+ 12 and experiences midnight sun on this date. At New Year, the first places to see daylight are the South Pole and Mc Murdo Station in Antarctica, which both experience midnight sun.

Both use UTC+13 as daylight saving time. At equinox, the first place to see daylight is the uninhabited Caroline Island, which is the easternmost land located west of the IDL, and among inhabited places it is Kiritimati.

Political and Physical feature of world geography

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- understand the concept of political and physical features of the world in order to know the tourism aspects of the world.

Political map : Political maps show boundaries that divide one political entity from another, such as townships, counties, cities, and states. Some maps emphasize the boundaries by printing the areas of each political division in different colors, for example world maps usually show each country in a different color.

A political map can be made of any area from the local county, municipal levels all the way up to the world level. In general, most maps are political with far fewer being produced as physical maps.

India political map shows the location of the 29 states and their capital cities. In a world map, India is located in South Asia along the geographical coordinates of 20° North latitude and 77° East longitude. The neighboring countries of India are Afghanistan, Pakistan, China, Nepal, Tibet, Bangladesh, Myanmar and Sri Lanka.

Location of India: India political map shows in detail the states, capital cities as well as the bordering countries of India. India is located in southern Asia with Bay of Bengal on its eastern side and Arabian Sea on its western side, it is located on the geographical coordinates of 20° North and 77° East latitude and longitude, respectively.

The country covers an area of about 3,287,590 sq km. Kanchenjunga, located at an elevation of 8,598 meters is the highest point of India. This country has got a long coastline of 7,000 km.

India is surrounded by Afghanistan and Pakistan in the north-western side, China, Nepal and Tibet on the north-eastern side, Bangladesh and Myanmar in the eastern side and Sri Lanka in the southern side. The bordering countries are clearly shown on the India political map.

Fig 1



Capital City - New Delhi

New Delhi is located on the geographical coordinates of 28° 36' North latitude and 77° 12' East longitude. It is situated at an elevation of 210 meters above sea level. While Indira Gandhi International Airport is the airport in the city for international flights to India, domestic airports adjacent to the IGI Airport operate flights to other cities within India.

Karol Bagh, Mahrauli, Palam, Kalkaji, Shakarpur and Paharganj are some of the city areas located in the Indian capital. New Delhi can be identified on the India Political Map by a yellow square.

Indian States and Union Territories : There are a total of 23 states and 7 Union Territories in India. The states of India along with their capital cities are as follows:

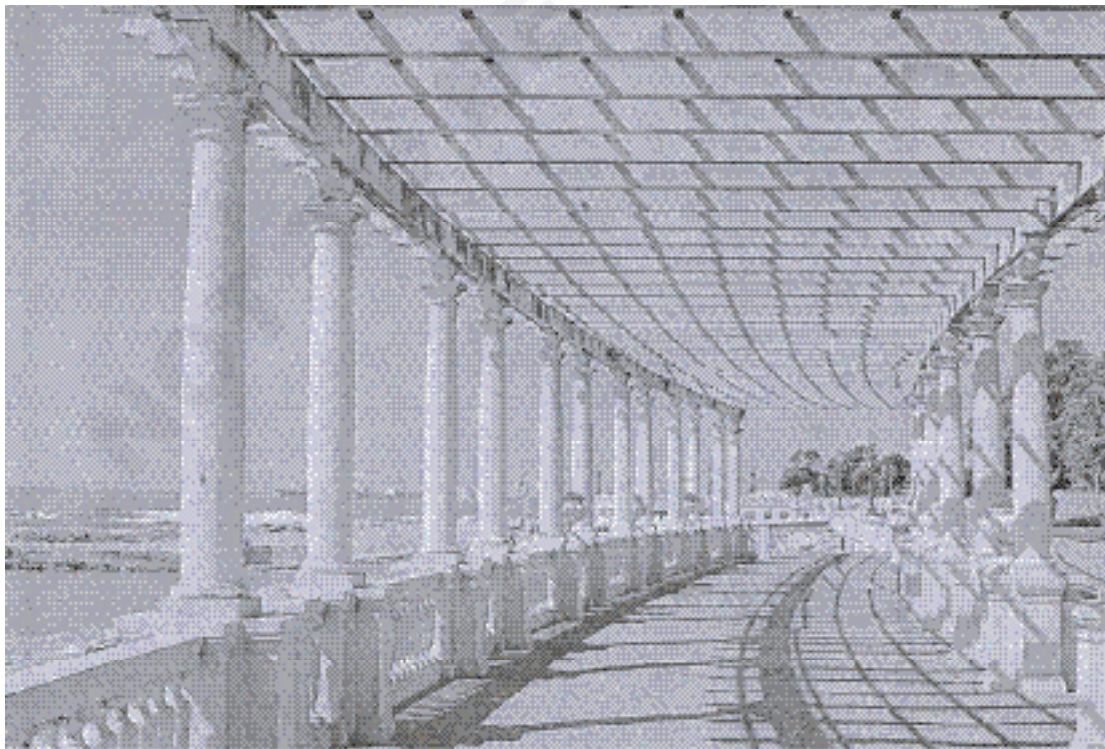
Jammu and Kashmir:	Srinagar
Himachal Pradesh:	Shimla
Punjab:	Chandigarh
Uttaranchal:	Dehradun
Haryana:	Chandigarh
Rajasthan:	Jaipur
Uttar Pradesh:	Lucknow
Bihar:	Patna
Sikkim:	Gangtok
Assam:	Dispur
Arunachal Pradesh:	Itanagar
Manipur:	Imphal
Nagaland:	Kohima

Meghalaya:	Shillong
Mizoram:	Aizwal
Tripura:	Agartala
West Bengal:	Kolkata
Jharkhand:	Ranchi
Madhya Pradesh:	Bhopal
Chhattisgarh:	Raipur
Gujarat:	Gandhinagar
Orissa:	Bhubaneshwar
Maharashtra:	Mumbai
Andhra Pradesh:	Hyderabad
Telangana:	Hyderabad
Karnataka:	Bangalore
Tamil Nadu:	Chennai
Kerala:	Thiruvananthapuram
Goa:	Panaji

The Union Territories of India are:

- Chandigarh
- Daman and Diu
- Dadra and Nagar Haveli: Silvassa is the capital city.
- Lakshadweep: The capital city of this island is Kavaratti
- Pondicherry
- National Capital Territory of Delhi

Fig 2



- Andaman and Nicobar Islands. The capital city of this island is Port Blair.

The states are highlighted on the political map of India with different colors. The state capitals are marked with a red circle on India map. Andaman and Nicobar Islands lies on the eastern side and Lakshadweep Island lies on the western side of India on the Bay of Bengal and the Arabian Sea respectively.

Indian Ocean lies in the southern part of India. The water bodies are shown on the printable map of India by blue color. Each of the state on the map has different colors for making it convenient for the user. The national and the international boundary are represented by black colored dotted lines.

Top Destination in Europe

Porto, Portugal

Porto is **exceptional**. In more ways than one. Elected **Best European Destination 2014** by the European citizens, Porto, the “Cidade Invicta” (unvanquished city) is history, is architecture, culture, gastronomy, trade, encounters and discoveries.

Porto has all the charm of towns which happily cohabit with their river. You can stroll along the **River Douro** (river of gold) in the Ribeira, fly over it by helicopter or discover Porto’s architecture, its amazing landscapes and **magnificent bridges** by taking a cruise on this majestic river. Porto is also a sea city and in the briefest of time a tram will bring you to Foz do Douro’s **gentle beaches** face to face with the Atlantic.

Porto knows how to make you feel welcome; very likely it will conquer your heart and leave a long lasting impression. You will find it hard to leave.

Zagreb Croatia : The impressions of many foreigners who live in Zagreb, business people and tourists can be summed up in a single sentence : a large city which managed to stay romantic and safe. There are unlimited possibilities for visiting music and theatre events, art exhibitions, museums, sporting events and enjoying pleasant walks, interesting architecture, plentiful parks in the centre of the city, pedestrian zones and the atmosphere.

Vienna, Austria : Nowhere is “The Art of Enjoyment” mastered so well as it is in Vienna. And especially in 2015:

Dance and party like during the time of the Congress of Vienna at one of the traditional or modern Viennese balls. Viennese nightlife, with its hip hop clubs, young festivals and a reopened ballroom, invites you to dance and party. The Vienna’s nightlife, with its club culture that is as diverse and lively as never before, is proof that people like to dance Italy.

Milan : Milan has been interesting and vibrant at least since it was the capital of the western half of the Roman Empire. It was one of the most glorious of the Italian Comuni during the Middle Ages.

Milan is the hub of Italian culture, music, media and sports. With so many things to do and see, take the time to simply enjoy yourself - relax and sip an aperitivo while you consider your options for dinner.

Milan provides an overwhelming dining experience, as all Italian regional cuisines are richly represented, along with many others from the rest of the world.

Fig 3

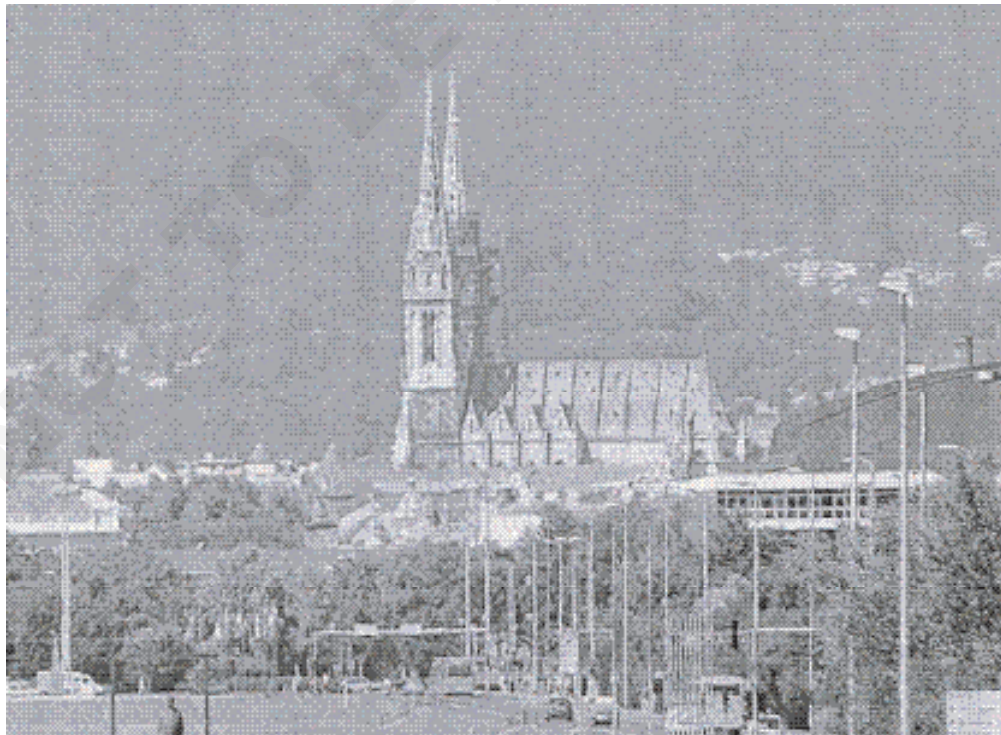


Fig 4

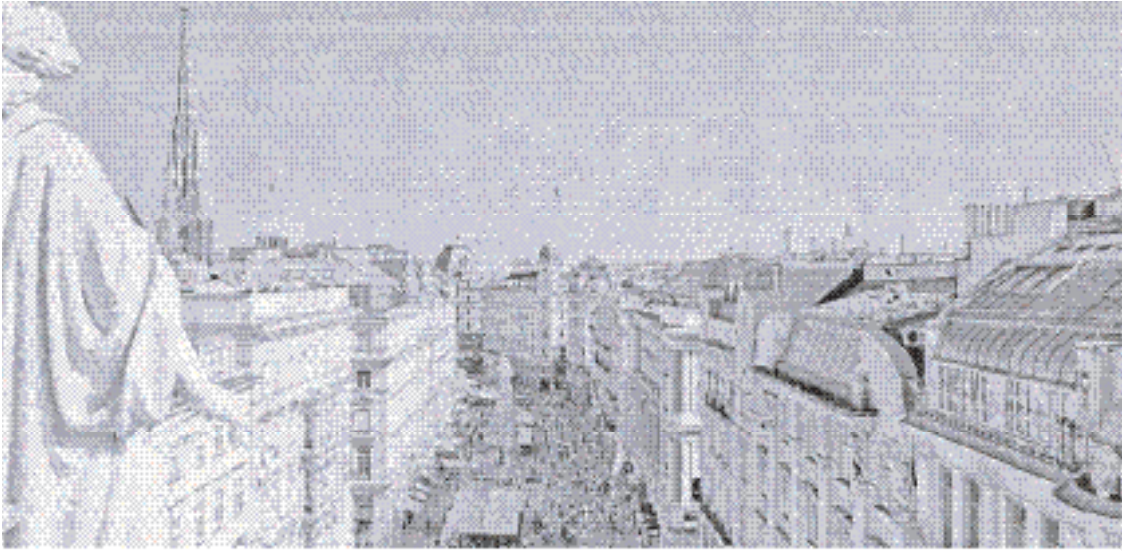
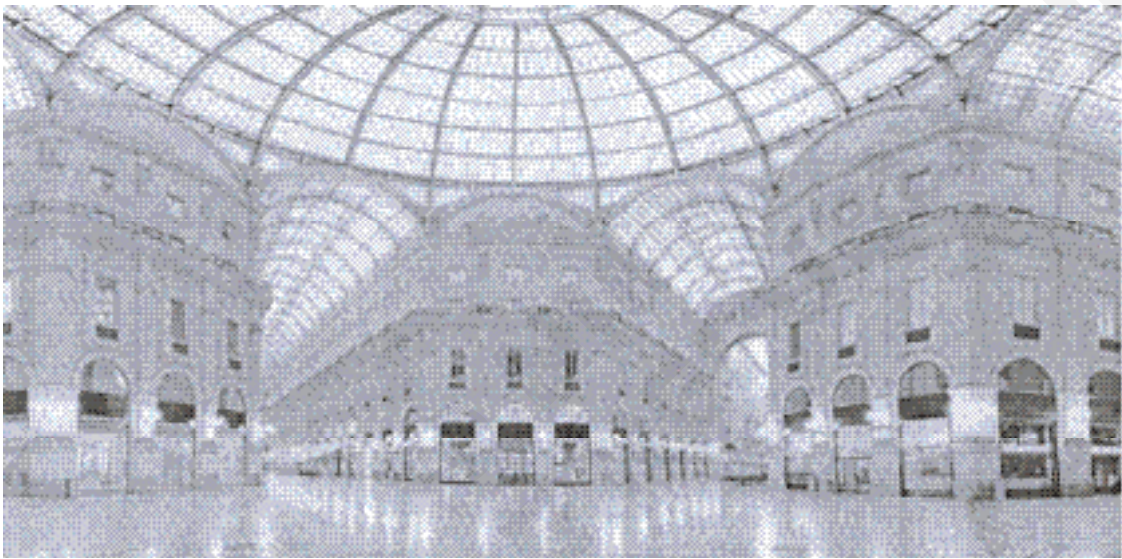


Fig 5



Aviation Geography - Time differences, Flight time, elapse time, Booking Familiarization

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- understand about aviation geography.

Aviation geography: The aviation geography is dealing with airports, airline routes, flight information climate and health to understand and skills to provide accurate a relevant information.

The major concept in aviation industry to know the location of major destinations around the world, and to develop knowledge on coontoies, capitals, hubs, gate ways and air travel destinations so that to recognize the air travel in to different hemisphere areas and several variations like monsoon, snowfall, hurricane, wet a dry season.

More over the basic avaition language used in the industry by referring to the 3 letter code, airline codes phonetic alphabet and often frequently used terminology. In order to provide accurate and sufficient information on airports, aircrafts, class of service, type & fare and condition of travel, entry & exit. It is a need to study & develop to deals with guest.

The basic terminology in flight ticket may be discussed as follow.

The flight ticket is mentioned in local time centre is STD. (Standard Time of Departure).

STA - Standard Time of Arrival

ETA - Expected Time of Arrival

ATA - Actual Time of Arrival

ATD - Actual Time of Departure

There are health factors impact on air passengers due to climatic conditions at destination.

- Global regions - Wet & dry season, exclusive heat & cold.
- Deep vein thrombosis

Important Airlines, Airport of India, coding and decoding of country domestic ticketing

Objective: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- list the airports available in India.

- Dehydration
- Effect of alcohol on altitude
- Air quality

The other important in aviation geography is international date line, time zones, GMT, UTC. Day light saving time and effects of crossing the zones.

Time differences: Due to earth rotation. Different part of the world receives sunlight/darkness drawing is day & night. The earth enter different place at different time is called time differences.

The local time with in a time zone in defined by its difference from the coordinated. Universal time (UTC) each of the longitudes is called a degree. The 0° degree longitude passing the greenwich, near London, is considered as standard and the time of other time zones are calculated accordingly/

Flight time: It is the total time consumed by an air craft in flight, from the point of take off to landing this includes run way time also.

Elapse time: It is the amount of time that passes from the start of an event to its finish. In aviation it is the extra time. Taken by the aircraft over flying time (including stopover and connecting time) plus the time between the departure time, actual departure time of flight.

Booking familiarisation: The entry of computer in the tourism. Industry made all sort of tourism activities in a simple and effective way. The transparent functioning with the individual's option to choose the style of travel. By clicking the respective website of the travel company it shows the way to book by user friendly method.

List of Licensed Aerodrome (Updated as on 27th May 2014)

'Public use' Category

S.No.	Aerodrome
1	Aizwal (Lengpui) Aerodrome, Aizwal, Mizoram
2	Cochin International Airport, Cochin, Kerala
3	Indira Gandhi International Airport, Delhi
4	Chhatrapati Shivaji International Airport, Mumbai, Maharashtra
5	Trivandrum International Airport, Thiruvananthapuram, Kerala
6	Netaji Subash Chandra Bose International Airport, Kolkata, West Bengal
7	Chennai International Airport, Chennai Tamil Nadu
8	Jindal Vijaynagar Aerodrome, Vijaynagar Karnataka
9	Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel International Airport, Ahmedabad, Gujarat
10	Hyderabad International Airport. Begumpet Hyderabad, Andhra Pradesh
11	Coimbatore Airport, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu
12	Lucknow Airport. Lucknow. Uttar Pradesh
13	Jaipur Airport, Jaipur, Rajasthan
14	Lokpriya Gopinath Bordoloi International Airport, Guwahati, Assam
15	Lal Bahadur Shastri Airport, Varanasi, Uttar Pradesh
16	Amritsar International Airport, Amritsar, Punjab
17	Dr. Babasaheb Ambedkar International Airport, Nagpur, Maharashtra
18	Calicut Airport, Calicut, Kerala
19	Sonari Aerodrome, Jamshedpur Jharkhand
20	Rajiv Gandhi International Airport, Shamshabad, Andhra Pradesh
21	Bangalore International Airport, Oevenahalli, Karnataka
22	Mangalore Airport, Mangalore, Karnataka
23	Shri Guru Gobind Singh Ji Airport, Nanded, Maharashtra
24	Raja Bhoj Airport, Bhopal, Madhya Pradesh
25	Tiruchirappalli Airport, Tiruchirappalli. Tamil Nadu
26	Mysore Airport, Mysore, Karnataka
27	Vadodara Airport, Vadodara, Gujarat
28	Oevi Ahilya Bai Holkar Airport, Indore, Madhya Pradesh
29	Maharana Pratap Airport, Udaipur, Rajasthan
30	Raipur Airport, Raipur, Chhattisgarh
31	Coach Behar Airport, Cooch Behar, West Bengal
32	Biju Patnaik Airport. Bhubaneswar, Orissa 1
33	Aurangabad Airport, Aurangabad, Maharashtra
34	Madurai Airport, Madurai, Tamil Nadu
35	Dimapur Airport, Dimapur, Assam
36	Dibrugarh Airport, Dibrugarh, Assam
37	Khajuraho Airport, Khajuraho, Madhya Pradesh
38	Birsa Munda Airport, Ranchi, Jharkhand

39	Rajkot Airport, Rajkot, Gujarat
40	Imphal Airport, Imphal, Nagaland
41	Tirupati Airport, Tirupati, Andhra Pradesh
42	Tuticorin Airport, Tuticorin, Tamilnadu
43	Barapani Airport, Barapani, Shillong, Meghalaya
44	Jabalpur Airport, Jabalpur, Madhya Pradesh
45	Hubli Airport, Hubli, Karnataka
46	Lilabari Airport, Lilabari, Assam
47	Agartala Airport, Agartala, Tripura
48	Salem Airport, Salem, Tamilnadu
49	Jolly Grant Airport, Dehradun, Uttarakhand
50	Belgaum Airport, Belgaum, Karnataka
51	Rajahmundry Airport, Rajahmundry, Andhra Pradesh
52	Bhavnagar Airport, Bhavnagar, Gujarat
53	Kandla Airport, Kandla, Gujarat
54	Kangra Airport, Kangra, Himachal Pradesh
55	Pantnagar Airport, Pantnagar, Uttarakhand
56	Surat Airport, Surat, Gujarat
57	Gaya Airport, Gaya, Bihar
58	Puducherry Airport, Puducherry, Puducherry
59	Shimla Airport, Shimla, Himachal Pradesh
60	Vijayawada Airport, Vijayawada, Andhra Pradesh
61	Kullu- Manali Airport, Shunter, Himachal Pradesh
62	Ludhiana Airport, Ludhiana, Punjab
63	Porbandar Airport, Porbandar, Gujarat
64	Agatti Airport, Agatti, Lakshya Dweep
65	Juhu Airport, Juhu, Mumbai, Maharashtra
66	HAL Ozar Aerodrome, Nasik, Maharashtra

List Of Aerodromes Licensed Under 'Private Use' Category

S.No.	Aerodrome
1	Basant Nagar, A.P.
2	Bokaro, Jharkhand
3	Banasthali, Rajasthan
4	Birlagram Nagda, M.P.
5	Hosur, Tamilnadu
6	Burnpur, W.B.
7	Baikunth, Chattisgarh
8	Neyveli, Tamilnadu
9	Mithapur, Gujarat
10	Burhar, M.P.

List Of Aerodromes Licensed Under 'Private Use' Category

S.No.	Aerodrome
11	Rourkela, Orissa
12	JSPL Raigarh, Chhattisgarh
13	Mundra, Gujarat
14	liT Kanpur, Uttar Pradesh
15	Kankroli Airport, Kankroli (Udaipur), Rajasthan
16	Aamby Valley Airport, Aamby Valley City, Pune, Maharashtra
17	Savitri Jindal Airstrip, Angul, Orissa
18	Beas, Punjab
19	Sri Sathya Sai Baba Airport, Puttaparthi
20	Ravva Heliport, Ravva, Andhra Pradesh
21	Shirpur Aerodrome, Shirpur, Maharashtra

© NIMI
NOT TO BE REPUBLISHED

Introduction of computer, definition and generation of computers

Objectives: At the end of this lesson you shall be able to

- understand characteristics of computer
- describe about parts of computer
- learn to type with WordPad
- explain about windows operating system.

Characteristics of the computer: A computer is a machine. It helps you to do many things quickly, easily and better. Let's recall what you can do with it.

A computer can help you to...

Draw and color pictures.

Type and design letters and cards

- Do suns
- Watch cartoon; and movies
- Listen to songs
- Do homework
- Play games
- Store information
- Use the Internet
- Send E-mails to your friends.
- The computer is not an ordinary machine. It is a Smart machine.

Speed : A computer works very fast. It can do billions of sums very quickly. It saves us a lot of time.

Accuracy : A computer does not make mistakes. It is very accurate and reliable.

Computer can do the same task again and again. The computer never gets tired or bored.

Large Memory : A computer has a large memory can store many words, numbers and pictures.

Multifunctional : A computer can do a wide variety of tasks like adding numbers, drawing pictures, printing letters, playing music and sending emails.

Computer Everywhere : Now - a- days computers are used every where . let's see how they help people in different places.

At home

- To play games
- To view mails
- To listen to music/view programmes
- To use the Internet
- To look at photographs

At school

- To teach students
- To help teachers prepare results
- To prepare report cards
- To prepare fee bills
- To use the internet

In office

- To type letters and other documents
- To keep accounts & business schedules
- To send e-mails/schedules meeting
- To communicate with other offices

In shops

- To prepare bills
- To keep stock of goods in the shop

In hospitals

- To treat patients
- To help in operations/Labs
- To keep records of all the patients
- For treatment based on electronic health record.

In banks

- To keep account of money

At airports and railway stations

- To book tickets/To view time table
- To tell the arrival and departure time of trains and aero planes.
- To see various places for a destinations.

In factories

- To make different things/Optimise the level of twenty
- To do work automatically/Analyse data

In aero planes

- To guide the pilots in flying/Assistant in auto landing view programme/play games

Parts of a Computer : We commonly see the following parts in a computer;

- Central Processing Unit (CPU)
- Monitor
- Keyboard
- Mouse

The following picture shows all these parts.

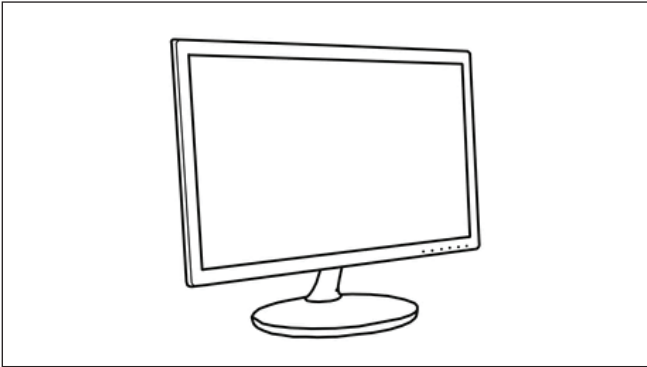
1 Central Processing Unit (CPU) : A computer has a Central Processing Unit (CPU) which acts like the brain and remembers everything we tell it. Thus, a CPU can

- Process and perform various operations
- Store data and information

A CPU has two buttons

- On/Off
- Restart

2 Monitor



- Looks like a TV screen
- Displays whatever we type
- Has an On/Off button

Do you know?

Monitor is also known as Visual Display Unit (VDU)

- Monitors come in different shapes and sizes
- 3 Keyboard :** A keyboard has keys like a Typewriter. It is used to
- Type words and numbers
 - Give instructions or commands to a computer

The numbers of keys on a keyboard can vary from one keyboard to another. Some keyboards have 104 keys while others many have more.



4 Mouse : Students, by now, we know that commands can be given to a computer with the help of a keyboard. Now, let us introduce ourselves to another part of the computer system, i.e. Mouse.

A Mouse also helps us to give commands to a computer. It is also a pointing device. We use a mouse because

- It is easy to use
- There are different types of mice
- It reduces the task of remembering the commands



A Mouse has three buttons

- a Right Mouse Button
- b Left Mouse Button
- c Scroll Button

Do you know?

The mouse was invented by Dr. Engelbart

Each button of a mouse performs specific function as given in the table below:

Button	Function
Left Mouse Button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To select a file by Single click • To open a file by Double click • To draw by Click and Drag
Right Mouse Button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To open a special menu
Scroll Button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To move a page Up and Down

A mouse is connected to the CPU with the help of a Cable. Now—a-days, cordless mouse has also come in use.

Optical mouse : A mouse always rests on a Mouse Pad.

Note: The act of 'pressing' and 'releasing' the mouse buttons is known as Click.

Switch on the computer: Students, we are now familiar with all the parts of a computer. Let us now learn how to Switch On the computer.

Following the given steps

- Step 1.** Switch on the **UPS** or the main **Power Switch**
- Step 2.** Switch on the **CPU** by pressing On/Off button

Step 3. Switch on the **Monitor** by pressing the On/Off button.

The generation of computer are

- 1st generation (1940 - 1956)
- 2nd generation (1956 - 1963)
- 3rd generation (1964-1971)
- 4th generation (1972-2010)
- 5th generation (2010-till date)
- 6th generation (Future generation) upto 2017
- 7th generation (Core i3, core i5, and core i7 & Desktop processors consume as little as 35W of power - 2018).

Uses of a computer : Computers assist us in various fields like schools, homes banks, hospitals, offices etc. With the help of computers

- 1 Tickets are booked at the railway stations and airports.
- 2 Records and data are maintained in offices.
- 3 Banking and accounts are done easily.
- 4 Classroom teaching is made interesting.
- 5 Cartoons and graphics are designed for books and other purposes.
- 6 Animated movies are prepared
- 7 Projects and presentations are prepared
- 8 Scientific researches and inventions, etc..., are done.

Note: All the magical things in movies like Main Hoon Na, Krissh, Little Stuart, Jurassic Park, etc., were created with the help of computers.

- 8 Artificial intelligence
- 10 Govt services
- 11 Marketing services

Computer: Common operating machine popularly used to technological & educational research.

Learning to Type with WordPad : You can use WordPad to write letters, stories or even do your homework **Starting WordPad**

To start the WordPad program you should follow these steps.

Wordpad is a program in the computer which lets you type documents.

Can you see the **Ribbon?** It contains all the tools you need to write the long white space is called the **Workspace.**

You can see the **Cursor** blinking on the top left hand corner of the workspace. Type this in the Workspace. Look at the keyboard carefully. It helps you to type text.

- 1 Use the Alphabets keys to type the letters and numbers and number keys to type the numbers.
- 2 Use the Caps Lock key to type in capital letters
- 3 Use the Spacebar key to make a gap between words.
- 4 This is the key to type the full stop.
- 5 Use the Enter key to move the cursor to the next line.

Making corrections: If you have made a mistake while typing you can make changes or corrections by using the **Backspace** or Delete key.

Inserting Text: If you want to insert a letter or a word in between. Use the Spacebar key.

Using Word Pad to type letters, poems or even your homework is so much fun. Making corrections is so easy, no eraser required!!

You can even make your text colorful and use different sized letters.

Formatting text : You can make your lines attractive by using the tools in the Font group on the Ribbon.

Creating bold text : You can make a letter, word or line thick and heavy by making it **Bold**

- 1 Select the line by dragging the pointer over it.
- 2 Click on the **Bold** button.
- 3 Click anywhere on the workspace. This removes the selection.
- 4 The letters have become thicker and darker. They are now in Bold type.

Creating Italics text : You can also create words or lines in slanting style or in **Italics**

Creating Underlining text : A word with a line under it is called an **underlined word.**

To make a Bold, Italic or Underlined text normal, select the line again and press the button meant for each. The text changes to normal type.

Coloring text : You can also **color** the text to make it look beautiful.

Positioning text

- **Centre Align** is to move the text to the centre of the page. The text shifts to the center.
- **Right Align** is to move the text to the right of the page.
- **Left Align** is to move the text to the left of the page.

You can preview the text by clicking preview button before portion.

Windows Operating System : Students, now we all are familiar with the parts, characteristics and uses of a computer. A computer needs a **program** to function. Let us study about it in this chapter.

Note: In Computers, the term 'Program' refers to a set of instructions that a computer understands and executes.

An **Operating system** is a basic program which acts as a link between a user and a computer. **Microsoft Windows** is the most popular and universal operating system. It has the following features.

- 1 It helps us to do a variety of tasks like writing a letter, watching movies, playing games, doing calculations, making drawings, listening to music, etc.
- 2 It is easy to operate.
- 3 It can do many things at a time.
- 4 It provides help for almost all the topics.

Note: Windows has been developed by the company named Microsoft Corporation, USA, which is owned by Mr Bill Gates.

Starting Windows : When we switch on a computer, it itself checks all the devices in it or connected to it. After a few seconds, the flag of windows appears on the screen. This is called the **booting process**. Now, the computer is ready for use.

With the up gradation of technology, many versions of windows Operating System have been launched in the market. These are **Windows 98, Windows NT, Windows 2000, Windows XP and Windows 7**, which is the latest one. In this chapter, we will learn about Windows XP, Windows 10 various 21 H1

Components of desktop : When the Windows XP is located on a computer, we see the screen as shown in the picture below. This screen is known as the **Desktop**.

There are various components of the Desktop. Let us learn about each one of them.

- 1 **Wallpaper:** The background of the desktop is called the wallpaper.
- 2 **Icons:** The small pictures which we see on the desktop are the icons. They represent programs, files and folders. By double clicking an icon, we can start a program, file. Some common icons in Windows XP are
 - a **My Computer:** It is used to see the disk drives and other devices connected to a computer.
 - b **My Documents:** It stores data in the form of files and folders
 - c **Recycle Bin:** It is the dustbin of a computer which keeps all the deleted files
 - d **Internet Explorer:** It is used for browsing internet.
 - e **My Network Places:** it is used to access other computers connected in a network.
- 3 **Taskbar:** It is a long blue bar at the bottom of the desktop. It has-

- **Start button** on the left side and is used to display various programs installed in a computer. In order to run a program, we first click this button.
- **Clock** on the right side. It tells the time.
- Indication for net connection at the Right side.

Opening a program: A computer has many programs like paint, WordPad, LOGO, etc., stored in it. In order to run a program, we need to open it. Let us now learn to open a program Paint.

The steps to open the Paint are

Step 1. Click the **Start** Button.

Step 2. Go to **All programs**

Step 3. Go to **Accessories**

Step 4. Go to **Paint** and click.

As we follow these steps, the **Paint** will open in a new window. We will learn about this program in detail in Chapter 5 of this book.

Turning off a computer: After using Windows, it is necessary to turn off a computer properly. Let us learn three steps-

Step 1. Click **Start** button

Step 2. Click the **Turn Off Computer** option.

Step 3. A **dialog box** will appear having options-

- **Stand By-** It is a power saving mode.
- **Turn Off-** It turns the computer off.
- **Restart** – It will turn off and restart the computer.

Step 4. Click the **Turn Off** option. The computer will start shutting down and CPU power switch will turn off.

Step 5. Switch off the **UPS** or **Power source**.

Remember

Never close a computer by turning the Power off directly.

WordPad: Students, how about writing a story or a letter to your friend in beautiful handwriting and without any spelling mistake with the help of Windows Wordpad program? It would surely be exciting.

WordPad is a basic **word processor** program. It helps to process the words, compose, edit and format the text matter.

Note: Notepad, Wordstar, WordPerfect are some other Word Processors.

Starting wordpad : We can start WordPad on a computer by following these steps-

Step 1. Click the **Start** button.

Step 2. Go to **All Programs** .

Step 3. Go to Accessories

Step 4. Click the WordPad

Components of Wordpad Window : The following screen appears when Wordpad is opened. Let us study its components. In the above screen, we have -

- 1 **Title Bar** – It displays the name of the current document. By default, a file is titled as ‘Document’.
- 2 **Menu Bar** – It is just below the Title Bar and has different menus like File, Edit, View, Etc. Each menu has a list of different options.
- 3 **Tool Bar** – It contains icons of various tools, such as New, Open, Save, Print, Print Preview etc.
- 4 **Format Bar**- It contains options like Font Style, Font Style, Font Size, Font color, Bullets ,etc., for formatting the text.
- 5 **Ruler** – It is like a scale which shows the width of a paper. We can change the width of a paper using the ruler.
- 6 **Working Area** – It is the place for creating a document.
- 7 **Cursor** – It is a blinking line on the screen where we type.
- 8 **Status Bar** – It is at Bottom of the window. It is at the bottom of the window. It shows the information for each option we point at.

Now, we are familiar with the components of WordPad window. Let us learn how we can use them.

For the Teacher

Encourage the students to explore WordPad

Creating a document: When we open WordPad, a document gets opened in its window. We find a cursor blinking in the working area. A document can be created by typing at the cursor position. Look carefully at the given. In the above screen -

- We see the text typed at the **Cursor position**
- A new line or paragraph can be started by pressing the **Enter Key**.
- The Enter key is not required to be pressed at the end of the line if text is to be typed continuously. The Cursor **automatically** comes to the next line.

Remember

While typing, we use the keys like CapsLock, Shift, Tab, Spacebar, Backspace and delete as per our requirement.

Activity

Open WordPad and type the given text -

Computer - A machine

Computer is an electronic machine which takes

input from a user, processes, it and given the output. It helps us to do many different things.

We can listen to music, watch movies, play games, make drawings and solve questions with its help. Computers are used everywhere.

Editing a document

Editing is the process of in which we make desired changes in a document. It is do after creating a document. We can edit a document using the various function available in the WordPad. While editing, we can-

- 1 Delete text
- 2 Cut, Copy and Paste the text

Selecting the text : For doing any action in WordPad, first we need to select the text.

The steps to select the text are-

- Step1.** Bring the **cursor** to the left side of the word or line that we to select.
- Step 2.** Press the **Left mouse button** and keep on pressing
- Step 3.** Move slowly over that **word** or **line**.

Remember

- **To select**
- **The whole document, press Ctrl+A**
- **One word, double click on that word.**
- **A line, click at the start of the line when an arrow comes.**

Let us learn about the editing option

1 Deleting text : We can delete a letter or word or line or paragraph by following the given steps-

Step 1. Select the desired **text**.

Step 2. Press the **Delete** key from the keyboard.

2 Cut, Copy and Paste the text : **Cut** command cuts the selected word or line from its position, while **Copy** command creates a copy of the word or line that has been selected. The Copy command does not erase the word or line at the original position. We always use the command **Paste** after both these commands.

The steps to Cut and Paste the text are-

Step 1. Select the desired **text**.

Step 2. Click the **Cut** option from the **toolbar**

Step 3. Place the **cursor** where the text is to be placed.

Step 4. Choose the Paste option from the **Toolbar**.

The steps to Copy and Paste the text are-

Step 1. Select the desired **text**.

Step 2. Click the **Copy** option from the **Toolbar**

Step 3. Place the **cursor** where the text is to be placed.

Step 4. Choose the **Paste** option from the **Toolbar**.

Formating the text : Formatting means changing the appearance of the text. It is done to make the text more attractive and interesting.

- 1 Font Style, Size and Color
- 2 Bold, Italic, Underline
- 3 Alignment- Left, Center, and Right
- 4 Bullets

Remember

All format options are available on the Format Bar.

Let us learn them one by one.

1 Font Style, Size and Color

The steps to change the Font Style, Size and Color are-

Step 1. Select the **text** to be formatted.

Step 2. Go to the **Format Bar**.

Step 3. Choose and click the desired **font style/size/color**.

The selected text is changed accordingly as shown in the screen.

2 Bold, Italic and Underline

The steps to make the text Bold, Italic or Underline are-

Step 1. Select the desired **text**.

Step 2. Go to the **Format Bar**.

Step 3. Click the respective **option**.

The selected text is changed accordingly as shown in the screen.

3 Alignment options are - Left, Center and Right

Alignment is the placement of text on a page.

The steps to align the text Left, Center or Right are-

Step 1. Select the **text** to be aligned.

Step 2. Go to the **Format Bar**.

Step 3. Click the respective **option**.

The selected text is aligned accordingly as shown in the screen.

4 Bullets : We can insert Bullets in our document Bullets are mainly used to prepare lists.

The steps to insert Bullets are-

Step 1. Place the **cursor** in the document where we want a list to start.

Step 2. Click the **Bullets** option on the **Format Bar**.

Step 3. A **bullet** is inserted in the document. Type the desired **text**.

Step 4. Press the **Enter key**. Another **Bullet** gets inserted. Type the **text** and so on.

Step 5. Click the **Bullets** option again to end the insertion.

Saving a document

The steps to save a created document are-

Step 1. Click the **Save** button on the **Toolbar**.

Step 2. A **Save As** dialog box opens.

Step 3. Type a name in the **File Name** box.

Step 4. Click the **Save** button.

Remember

By default, a WordPad document will get saved with. RTF extension.

Opening a saved document

The steps to open a saved document are-

Step 1. Click the **Open** button on the **Toolbar**.

Step 2. An **Open** dialog box opens.

Step 3. Select the **document** to be opened by clicking it.

Step 4. Click the **Open** button.

Printing a Document

The steps to take a print out of a document are -

Step 1. Go to the **Toolbar**.

Step 2. Click the **Print** option. A **Print** dialog box opens. Choose -

- Page Range
- Number of Copies.

Step 3. Click the **Print** button.

Remember

It is a good habit to preview a document before printing using Print Preview option on the Toolbar.

Exiting Wordpad

The steps to exit the WordPad are-

Step 1. Go to the **File** menu.

Step 2. Click the **Exit** option.

Remember

After saving, we can directly close the WordPad by clicking the Close button.

Basic understanding of Hard ware

- 1 Central processing unit - CPU
- 2 Printer
- 3 Mouse

4 Key board

Software

- Window - Linux
- Coral draw & Photoshop

Input device : Keyboard, Mouse, Scanner, Joystick & Micro phone.

Output device : Monitor, Printer, Computer speakers, Sound card & Video card.

Operating system : Anroid, IOS, MacOS & Windows.

Data base: It is a data structure for organised information. For ex. A company can have a data base with products, employees, financial records etc. All these different fields are stored in one form of data.

Search engine: Goole, Internet Explorer, Chrome, Firefox & Edge.

Chatting: Google chat, WhatsApp, Skype, Ms Team.

MS word and MS excel : Word processor: A word processor is a device/Computer programme that provides for input, editing formatting, and output of text, often with some additional features. The present word processor are word processors programmes running on general purpose computers.

Spread sheet: It is a computer application for organisation analysis, and storage of data in Tabular form. Spread sheets were developed as computerized analogs of paper accounting work sheets. The programme operates on data entered in cells of a table.

Internet is the short form of Inter connected network of all the web servers worldwide.

Microsoft Excel 2007: Excel is an integrated electronic worksheet (spreadsheet) program developed by Microsoft Corporation. It performs different kinds of calculations and displays the results on the screen in the form of figures or graphs. Excel helps in the preparation of data in an organized, orderly, and meaningful format.

Components Of Microsoft Excel: The Excel window has the following parts

- 1 Title Bar: It shows the name of the Application (Excel) and the name of the workbook, and is situated at the top of the window.
- 2 Toolbar: It is a collection of shortcut buttons, represented by icon, for the option under the Menu Bar.
- 3 Menu Bar: It contains commands under different topic to perform special tasks and is located below the Title Bar.
- 4 Status Bar: It displays and allows editing the formula in the current cell.
- 6 Name Box: It displays the row number and the column name of the cell.
- 7 Help Box: It allow us to type a topic and search for help.

8 Scroll Bars: They allow movement of the worksheet in and out of the window view. Horizontal and vertical scroll bars are present.

9 Worksheet Tabs: They make the desired worksheet active.

10 Task Pane: It displays commands that are currently available.

Features Of Spreadsheet : A spreadsheet is a user friendly electronic worksheet application package in MS Office. The following are the main features of spreadsheet:

- 1 Object linking and embedding: Using the OLE facility, graphical objects from other application can be embedded or linked in the spreadsheet.
- 2 State-of-the-Art Editing features: This feature offers timesharing advantages while creating, moving or copying formulae and references.
- 3 Use of Graphical objects and charts: Using this tool, a graphical object, chart, or comment box can be easily inserted into a worksheet.
- 4 Inbuilt functions: Several types of mathematical, trigonometric, financial, and statistical functions are inbuilt in a spreadsheet package.
- 5 Accuracy: With the electronic worksheet program, we can easily and quickly produce reports and get answers by means of the "what-if" facility so as to generate accurate results.

MS PowerPoint 2007 : A presentation is powerful managerial communication tool through which we can compile and deliver ideas, concepts, plants, or products to the audience in a structured, effective, and impressive manner. The presentation may include slides, printed handouts, notes, outlines, graphics, and animations.

A slide in MS PowerPoint is a combination of images, graphics, charts, and text that is used to convey information. MS PowerPoint presentations are currently used for business, schools, colleges, and training programmes.

Components of MS Powerpoint : The following are the components of a MS Office PowerPoint Window:

- 1 Title Bar: Found at the top of the PowerPoint Window, it shows the name of the current presentation.
- 2 Menu Bar: It is located under the title bar contains various types of PowerPoint commands, functions, and options.
- 3 Standard toolbar: This is found just below the Menu Bar and contains buttons for easy access to Standard commands of the software.
- 4 Formatting Tool Bar: This tool bar contains buttons and list boxes, and is located under the Menu Bar.
- 5 View Buttons: The three kinds of view buttons are slide view, Slide sorter view and show view.
- 6 Drawing Toolbar: It is located just above the status

Bar. Using this toolbar, we can create and manipulate text, graphics, shapes, and pictures.

- 7 Status Bar: The Status Bar is located at the bottom of the window and contains a message area indicating the current slide number and total number of slides in the presentation.
- 8 Slide Area: It is the Working area for creating and editing a slide.
- 9 Task Pane: It displays the commands that are currently available.

Features of MS Powerpoint : The following are the main features of MS PowerPoint:

- 1 It consist of templates that are helpful in designing presentations
2. It provides four views - Slide view, outline view, normal view, and slide sorter view - that are very useful during the presentation.
3. Graphics, charts, audio, video and text can be added in a single presentation.
- 4 Presentations prepared using PowerPoint can be directly projected as a Slide show.
- 5 Different transitions and building effects may be included in the Slide to make the presentation attractive.
- 6 An entire presentation can be printed on paper using the printing features.
- 7 Different colours can be added to columns and text from a large palette of colour schemes.

Preparing and selecting the data source : The data source is the file where the addresses and other information is kept. Step 3 of the mail-merge procedure calls for you to name your data source, and before you name it, make sure that it is in good working order.

The data source can be any number of things, as mentioned above. Word also offers a special dialogue box for creating a data source from scratch and storing it in Microsoft Access.

Caution: After you create the data source, do not move it to a different folder or rearrange the merge fields/columns. If you do so, the document can't read the data source correctly and you can't complete the mail-merge.

Note: A field is one category of information (like last name, or zip code). A record comprises all the data about one person or thing. The field is the heading of a table, while records are all of the data.

Using a word table as the data source : For people who aren't familiar with database, the easiest type of data source to mange is a word table. Either creates an address table from scratch or copy a table you have already created and save the table by itself in a document. Save the table under a name you will recognize.

When you merge the data sources table with the starting document, you will be asked to locate and select the

document that holds you addresses or other to-be-merged information.

To use a word table as the data source, the table must meet these standards:

- A descriptive heading must appear across the top each column. The row of descriptive headings across the top of a table is called the header row, or sometimes the heading row. The names in the header row doubles as merge field names when you insert merge fields in the starting document. When you tell Word where to plug data into the starting document, you choose a column name from your table.
- No text or blank lines can appear above the table in the document. To be on the safe side, save the table in a document by itself.

Advantages : The advantages of using mail merge are:

- 1 Only one document needs to be composed for communicating to an extensive list of interested people, clients or customers.
- 2 Each document can be personalised i.e. it appears to be have been written specifically to each recipient. It contains details only relevant to the receiver.
- 3 Many document formats can be developed to another are eliminated.
- 4 Errors in transcribing details from one document to another are eliminated.

This advantage, of course, depends upon the accuracy of data entry into individual records in the first place!

Database : A database is a list with specific structure, defined by the fields. Field is the information of the category. For example an individual detail in the phone directory is a record in the database, containing single set of the fields.

Each field must have a unique field name. In the case of Telephone directory, Name, Address, and Telephone Number are individual fields.

Excel's database has capability to create and manage the list. List in excel is a group of rows and columns which stores a unique types of data. Excel fields are columns and each record is an individual row.

For example the Fig 1 shows a worksheet of company sales which is an Excel database. Each field is a spate column. The field names (Age, Sex, Salary etc.) are based as column labels. The individual row in record

Creating the database in an Excel Package is very simple. Worksheet which has been created earlier can be used as a database directly or with minor changes.

User should follow, simple rulers for worksheets that are intend to use as database.

- Do not leave a blank row between column heading and data records since it indicates the end of database.
- Field names must be in a single cell and unique at the top of column with in a worksheet.

Automatically Sorting as You Enter Information:

When entering information into a worksheet, you may want it to always be in a correctly sorted order. Excel allows you to manually sort information, but automatic sorting takes the use of some macros.

Controlling Sorting Order : When you sort information in a worksheet, you have control over the order in which that information is sorted. Here's a quick discussion of the ways that you can affect the sorting order.

Creating a Sort Order : Excel is very flexible in how it can sort your data. You can even create your own custom sort order that is helpful when typing to get non-sequential information sorted in a unique order.

Determining Sorting Criteria : If you need to know how a range of data is sorted, the task is not as easy as you might at first think. This tip examines why such determinations are difficult and how you can go about trying to figure out the criteria.

Fixing Odd Sorting Behaviour : When you sort data that contains both numbers and text, you may not get exactly the result that you expected. To know what is going on, you have to know how Excel views your data.

Ignoring Selected Words when Sorting : If you use Excel to maintain a list of text strings (such as movie, book, or product titles), you may want the program to ignore certain words when sorting that list. This can't be done automatically, but there are ways to get your list in the order you want.

Importing Custom Lists : Custom lists are handy ways to enter recurring data in a worksheet. Here's show you can import your own custom lists from a range of cells.

Incomplete and Corrupt Sorting : Using the sorting tools, on the toolbar, may result in some unwanted results, such as jumbled data. If this happens to you, the best thing to do (as described in this tip) is to figure out exactly what is being sorted by Excel.

Moving Cell Borders when Sorting : Sort your data and you may be surprised at what Excel does to your formatting. (Some formatting may be moved in the sort and some may not be.) Here's an easy way to make sure that the formatting you apply is moved whenever you sort.

Non-standard Sorting : Information in a cell can be entered using line feeds, which results in multiple lines of data in the same cell. If you later want to sort that information, there are a couple of ways you can approach the problem.

Performing Complex Sorts : One way you can easily work with data in a worksheet is to sort it into whatever order you find most helpful. Excel allows you to perform sorting based on the criteria you determine, as discussed in the tip.

Recognizing a Header Row when Sorting : When you sort data in a worksheet, there are a couple of ways you can do it. Using the simple way can result in unsatisfactory results if you aren't careful with how your data is organized.

Sorting a Range of Cells : When you sort data in a worksheet, you don't need to sort everything at once. You can sort just a portion of your data by using the techniques in this tip.

Sorting an Entire List : Need to sort all the data in a table? Here's the fastest and easiest way to do it.

Sorting by Colours : Need to sort your data based on the colour of the cell? Excel doesn't include this capability, but you can still do the sorting if you rely upon a macro to do the work.

Sorting by columns : When you think of sorting Excel data, it is likely that you think of sorting rows. Excel also allows you to sort by column, however, as described in this tip.

Sorting by Fill Colour : Sorting data in a worksheet is easy, unless you want to sort by the colour used to fill a range of cells. There are ways to do the sorting, however, as illustrated in this tip.

Sorting by Five Columns : Excel allows you to sort but up to the three columns, but you may want to sort by more than that. This tip provides ways you can get the desired sorted data.

Sorting Data Containing Merged Cells : When formatting the layout of your worksheet, Excel allows you to easily merge adjacent cells together. This can cause havoc later, however, since you can't sort ranges that contain merged cells. This tip provides some guidance on how you can get around this limitation.

Sorting Data on Projected Worksheets : Project a worksheet and you limit exactly what can be done with the data in the worksheet. One of the things that could be limited is the ability to sort the data. This tip explains how you can allow that data to be sorted.

Sorting Dates by Month : Sorting by dates is easy, and you end up with a list that is in chronological order. However, things become a bit more tricky when you need to sort by month. Here are several approaches you can use.

Sorting Decimal Values : Government and industrial organizations often use a numbering system that relies upon a number both before and after a decimal point. Sorting these numbers properly can be a bother; here's some ideas.

Sorting for a Walking Tour : Want to sort addresses by even and odd numbers? By using a formula and doing a little sorting, Excel can return the addresses in the order you need.

Sorting Huge Lists : Got a huge amount of data you need to sort in a worksheet, but Excel doesn't seem to be sorting it correctly? Here's some great information on why this may be happening and what you can do about it.

Sorting Letters and Numbers : Sorting information in a worksheet can be confusing when Excel applies sorting rules of which you are unaware. This is especially true when you are sorting a mixture of letters and numbers.

Sorting or Filtering by Conditional Format Results

Conditional formatting is a great feature in Excel. Unfortunately, you can't sort or filter by the results of that formatting. Here's why.

Sorting while ignoring Leading Characters : Want to ignore some characters at the beginning of each cell when sorting? The easiest way is to simply create other cells that hold only the characters you want to use in the sorting.

Sorting Worksheets : As you get more and more worksheets into a workbook, you'll find yourself moving them around into different sequences. You may even want to put the worksheets into alphabetic order. This tip provides a macro that does the sorting for you.

Sorting ZIP Codes : Sorting ZIP Codes can be painless, provided all the codes are formatted the same. Here's how to do the sorting if you have different types of ZIP Codes all in the same list.

Storing Sorting Criteria : Need to do the same sorting operation over and over again? Excel doesn't provide a way to save your sorting criteria, but there are a couple of workarounds you can try.

Too Many Formats when Sorting : Sorting is one of the basic operations done in a worksheet. If your sorting won't work and you inserted get an error message, it could be because of the number of custom formats in your workbook. This tip provides information to help get rid of this problem.

Internet

Internet can be compared with a library. Like a library, the Internet is also a source of enjoyable, important and varied information that can be obtained and used by millions of people across the world. The Internet also, like our library contains different forms, like text sound and graphics.

Super library does not allow just anybody to browse books or cassettes; this facility is available only for authorized members of the library. In a similar way only authorized users of the Internet can access it to obtain information.

Internet is a worldwide collection of computer networks. Internet is a cooperative effort of many people and organization.

Internet is also known as cloud or the information super highway. When you access the Internet, you become the part of the electronic community that encompasses most of the work.

The Internet community includes several million people. Vast libraries advanced medical and technical research centres, and thousands of business large and small.

Function of Internet

The Internet is like a vast transportation system for data. The system includes and connects local, regional, nation and international networks. This Internet expands daily as more networks and computers connect to it.

Let's say that a person in Hyderabad wants to get information from another person in Tokyo, Japan. Now if these two people are in the same company, using some corporate wide e-mail system, the first person as it is known to the corporate e-mail system- usually, a user name.

This server as an address on the electronic message, and the send command has the email systems deliver the message to the second person.

In the Internet community, people believe in sharing their ideas and opinions with others. This is so mainly because it is an open forum that has government and no restrictions at all.

This policy of openness has led Internet-citizens to put up an enormous variety of hypertext document on the web. This has led to information of very kind being available to anybody who wants it.

World Wide Web

The World Wide Web is an information retrieval system based on hypertext. In hypertext selected words or areas on the screen are expandable, leading to more details about subject. A hypertext allows you to view information without using complex commands and without even using source of information. When a hyperlink is attached to text it is called hypertext.

A browser is a client application on www. The browser displays web pages and makes the connection necessary to follow hypertext links. Www is a global hypertext system that uses the Internet as its transmission medium. The www enables you to access information on the Internet without the use of complicated commands. By linking resources throughout the Internet, the web brings a world of information to your doorstep.

The www could be very simply defined as a universal database of knowledge. Information that is easily to accessible to people around the world and likes easily to other pieces of information. This allows any user to quickly find the things most important to themselves. It is an Internet one can get information about different topics such as the latest trends in programming languages.

URL's : Every web pages or Internet resources accessible through the www has a unique name, this is URL (Uniform Resources Locator). The URL identifies and locates a resource so that a web browser can access it directly. A URL is type of Internet address.

File Transfer Protocol (FTP) : File Transfer Protocol is a method of transferring files from one computer to another. A protocol is a rule or set of rules that have to be followed by both the client and the server computers so that communication can take place between them.

It is the same in case of FTP, the computer that is the requesting for a file is the FTP client, while the computer, which services the request, is the FTP server and both of them follow the FTP protocol. Advantages of FTP are speed, Cost and Choice.

Introduction to e-mails : A hundred years ago a message took 7 days to travel from coast to coast and even longer to cross the ocean. With the advent of airmail, that time was cut to 3 or 4 days.

Today overnight mail delivery is available in certain areas, for a hefty surcharge. But faxing and electronic mail provide faster and inexpensive delivery of messages.

Internet Service Provider : An Internet service provider is an organization that maintains a high speed networks of cables connected to the Internet. This organization usually owns more than one powerful computer that is directly connected to the network forming the Internet.

Browsing : The process of navigating among the document is called browsing. The users need to have client software (web browser) such as Netscape navigator to actually retrieve and browse the information on the www. www supports many kinds of documents such as text, pictures, video and audio. Sometimes it is referred to as net surfing.

Browser : It is basically a program that runs on an Internet connected computer and provides access to www resources.

Client : The computer that is requesting for some service from another computer is called client.

Web Server : A web browser is a program that accepts requests for information framed according to the hypertext transport protocol (http). The server processes these requests and sends the requested document. When you access a www server, the document is transferred

to your computer and then the connection is terminated. This reduces network traffic by not having to hold on to a line, which you read a document.

Hyper Text Markup Language (HTML)

A markup language is a set of formatting codes that affects that the way present information will be displayed. It is used to create Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) documents. It is not a programming language. Only the presentation but not the contents. The information remains static all the documents that you view on the www are created using HTML.

Home Page : Home page is the document that servers as the initial point of entry to a web of related documents. It contains introductory information, hyperlinks to related resources and navigation buttons to help users find their way among the various documents.

Tips for preparing your e-mail mailing list

No matter how clever your e-mail messages are, it will have little impact if you send it to the wrong people. The more you target your mailing at a customer segment that is likely to be interested in a specific offer, the greater your e-mail campaign's rate of success.

Plan on devoting between a third and a half of your e-mail campaign time and budget to refining your mailing list for targeting appropriate customer segments.

You can limit your mailing list to names and e-mail addresses, or you can include more details about each customer so that you can categorize the customers into segments that make sense for your business.